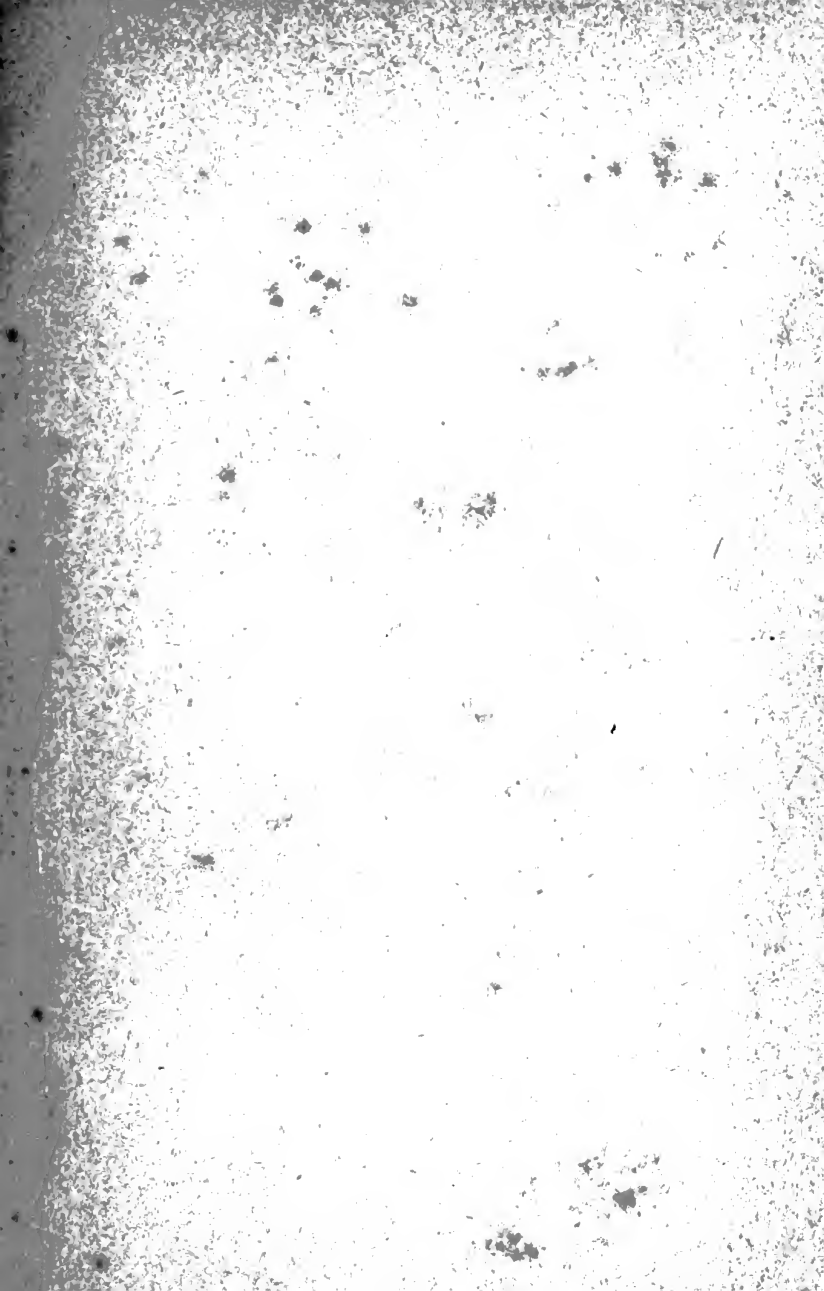




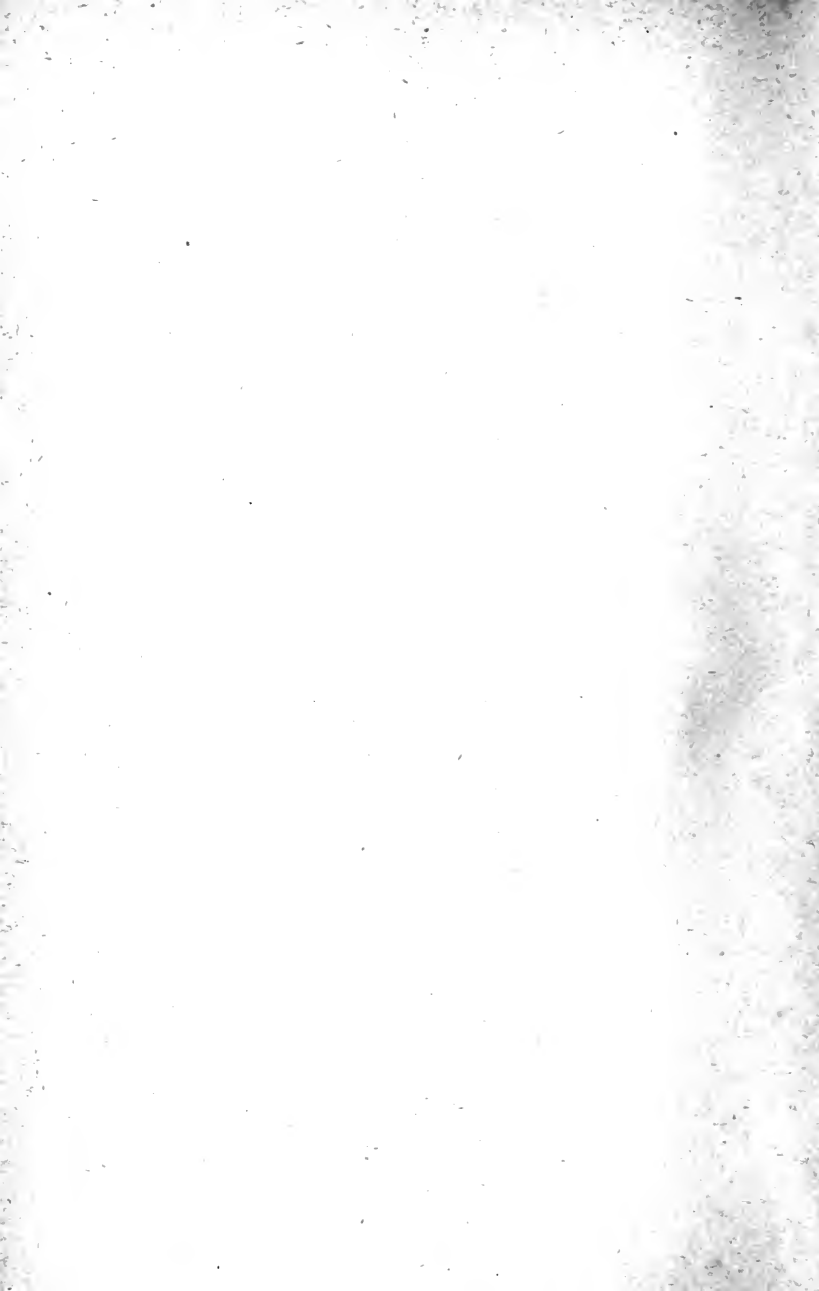


BERKELEY  
LIBRARY  
UNIVERSITY OF  
CALIFORNIA





**THE PILGRIM'S PROGRESS**



THE  
PILGRIM'S PROGRESS

BY  
JOHN BUNYAN

EDITED, WITH INTRODUCTION AND NOTES

BY THE  
REV. JOHN BROWN, B.A.  
OF BEDFORD

AUTHOR OF "THE LIFE OF BUNYAN," ETC.

London:  
HODDER AND STOUGHTON,  
27, PATERNOSTER ROW.

---

MDCCCLXXXVII.

Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation



935  
B942  
P  
1887

## INTRODUCTION.

NOT merely among the Prison-books of the world, but in literature at large, a high place of honour has by common consent been assigned to the *Pilgrim's Progress*. Taking all the facts of the case into account, we are led to the conclusion that the First Part was written in the Town Gaol on Bedford Bridge during a brief confinement of six months, to which Bunyan was subjected in the winter of 1675-76, and therefore three years after his long imprisonment of twelve years in the County Gaol was ended. The book is thus entered in the Register of the Stationers' Company: "22nd December 1677, Nathaniel Ponder entered then for his Cobby by vertue of a licence under the hand of Mr. Turner, and which is subscribed by Mr. Warden Vere, One Book or Cobby Intituled The Pilgrim's Progress from this world to that which is to come, delivered in y<sup>e</sup> Similitude of a Dream, by John Bunyan."

The book was further licensed 18th February 1678, and was announced in a General Catalogue of Books published in Hilary Term, 1677-78, as "price, bound,

1s. 6d." It was printed in small octavo, on yellowish gray paper, from apparently new type, and extended to 232 pages in addition to title, author's apology, and conclusion.

This first edition was followed by a second in the autumn of the same year, and by a third in 1679, the three editions virtually completing the First Part. For there were substantial additions made to the story after its first appearance. In the first edition there was no description of Christian breaking his mind to his wife and children; no appearance of Mr. Worldly-Wiseman; no second meeting with Evangelist; no account given by Christian to Good-will at the wicket-gate of his own turning aside. Christian's discourse with Charity at the Palace Beautiful was added afterwards, as were the four lines on his leaving the palace. The other additions were, the third appearance of Evangelist as the Pilgrims were nearing Vanity Fair; the further account of Mr. By-ends' rich relations, with the conversation which took place between him and the Pilgrims; the sight of Lot's wife turned to a pillar of salt, with the talk it occasioned; the whole account of Diffidence, the wife of Giant Despair; and finally, the description of the Pilgrims being met on the farther side of the river by the King's trumpeters in white and shining raiment. The most important addition made to the second edition was the introduction of Mr. Worldly-Wiseman, and to the third the enlargement of the story of Mr. By-ends. It was to this third edition of 1679 there was first added an illustrative

engraving in the shape of a portrait of the author by Robert White.

It would seem that Bunyan's first intention was to complete the work by the contrasted *Life and Death of Mr. Badman*. In his preface to the latter he says: "As I was considering with myself what I had written concerning the Progress of the Pilgrim from this world to glory: and how it had been acceptable to many in this nation: It came again into my mind to write, as then, of him that was going to Heaven, so now of the Life and Death of the Ungodly, and of their travel from this world to Hell." This contrast sent forth in 1680 was, however, never accepted as a completion of the idea by the public at large. In 1683 a writer who signs himself T. S. went so far as to try to complete Bunyan's work for him by publishing a work entitled, *The Second Part of the Pilgrim's Progress*, a copy of which, once belonging to Robert Southey, is now in the library of the Baptist Union. Other writers also seem to have followed in the wake of T. S., for when Bunyan issued his own genuine Second Part he tells us in his preface—

"Some have of late, to Counterfeit  
My Pilgrim, to their own, my Title set;  
Yea others, half my Name and Title too  
Have stitched to their Book to make them do:  
But yet they by their Features do declare  
Themselves not mine to be, whose'er they are."

The genuine Second Part appeared with this note on the reverse of the title: "I appoint Mr. *Nathaniel*

*Ponder*, But no other to Print this Book. John Bunyan, January 1st 1684." [New style, 1685.] This Second Part supplemented the story of Christian's pilgrimage by that of his wife and children, the record of the religious life in man by the story of that same life as it shows itself in the more susceptible nature of woman. This continuation, as continuations usually are, is inferior to the original story; has more incongruities, is less powerfully sustained, and presents dialogues of mediocre type such as its predecessor does not. Still between the two there is vital relation, and after all deductions have been made we feel that this Second Part carries with it sufficient impress of Bunyan's genius, enough of charm and individuality all its own, to entitle Christiana to go hand in hand with Christian on his pilgrimage through time.

The originality of the *Pilgrim's Progress* has more than once been called in question, and similarities have been pointed out between it and the *Pèlerinage de l'Homme* of Guillaume de Guileville of the fourteenth century, and the *Faëry Queen* of Spenser, and other allegorical creations of the sixteenth century. The similarities, however, are comparatively trivial, while the differences are vital and fundamental. It must be borne in mind, moreover, that Bunyan was in prison when his great conception dawned upon him, and therefore mediæval chroniclers, *trouvères*, and sixteenth century poets, if ever within his reach, would certainly be inaccessible then. It is equally certain that he had not been gathering materials beforehand, for the work which was to immortalise his name.

He tells us that when he first took up his pen he had no thought that he at all "should make a little book in such a mode." When the originality of his *Dream* was challenged, as it was, in his own time, he utterly repudiated any attempt on his part to "shine in name and fame by the worth of another." Matter and manner alike, he says, were his own, nor was the work to any mortal known till all was done—

"Nor did any then  
By Books, by wits, by tongues or hand, or pen,  
Add five words to it, or wrote half a line  
Thereof : the whole and every whit is mine."

Other dreamers, no doubt, had sent forth other allegories in an age when allegorical poems and allegorical pageants were the fashion of the day ; but no previous or subsequent writer has ever set forth the pilgrim life with the same completeness, unity, force, and beauty as Bunyan, whose *Dream* stands alone and unrivalled in the literature to which it belongs. The secret of the power of this book is not hard to find. Its perfect spontaneity and simple freedom of life ; its dramatic unity and the rapidity and power with which its characters are drawn ; its simple humanness and sweet purity ; its large catholicity ; its insight into the real greatness of the lowliest life ; the true pathos with which it describes the heart-discipline through which we all have to pass ; and finally, the fair picture it holds up to view at last of that City of God where the weary are at rest and the conquerors are crowned—all these together have given to it the heart-

power it has ever had over simple and cultured alike, and secured for it the high place in literature accorded of all.

The popularity of the book dates from its first appearance, and has continued down to our own day. A hundred thousand copies were sold in the ten years Bunyan lived after he gave his *Dream* to the world. During those ten years also it was translated into Dutch, Flemish, French, Welsh, Gaelic, and Erse, and was reprinted in English at Boston in America. Copies of the earlier editions have naturally become somewhat scarce. When Southey sent forth a new edition in 1830, he tells that at that time no copy of the first edition was known to exist; there was a second edition in the British Museum, but the earliest besides which his publishers had been able to obtain for him was the eighth edition of 1682. Since then five copies of the first edition have come to light; there are also four copies of the second edition, and three of the third. Besides these three editions, which show the book in its three stages of growth, there are existing copies of all the editions down to our own times except the seventeenth. Of the five copies of the first edition of the *First Part*, the one which came first to light is that in the possession of Mr. Holford of Park Lane, which was purchased with the rest of the books in Lord Vernon's library, where it had apparently lain undisturbed since its first publication; the second is in the Lenox Library, New York; the third is the property of Mr. Elliot Stock, the publisher; the fourth was acquired by the British Museum in 1884

for the sum of £65 ; and the fifth is in the possession of Mr. Nash of Langley, near Slough. There are copies of the second and third editions in the British Museum, the Bodleian and the Lenox Libraries, and of the second edition only in the University Library, Cambridge, and in Regent's Park College Library. Of the first edition of the Second Part there are only two copies known, one being in the Lenox Library, the other in the possession of Mr. Elliot Stock.

The *Pilgrim's Progress* continued to be issued only in the small octavo form in which it first appeared till 1728, when there was published in larger octavo, and on good paper, the "two-and-twentieth edition, adorned with twenty-two copper-plates engraven by J. Sturt." From that time to this the work has been illustrated by many artists, and in great variety of form. Besides the Dutch engravers, who were earliest at work upon the book, following in the wake of Strutt we have Stothard, Woolley, and Corbould, Isaac Taylor, Thomas Bewick and his pupil, Luke Clennell ; Richard Westall, John Martin, and J. M. W. Turner ; William Harvey, David Scott, and Sir John Gilbert ; H. C. Selous, Charles H. Bennett, and W. Holman Hunt. It has received admirable illustration too at the hands of J. D. Watson, Frederick Barnard, and Sir J. D. Linton. A series of original illustrations, executed by Chinese artists, was also published in Canton in 1870-71.

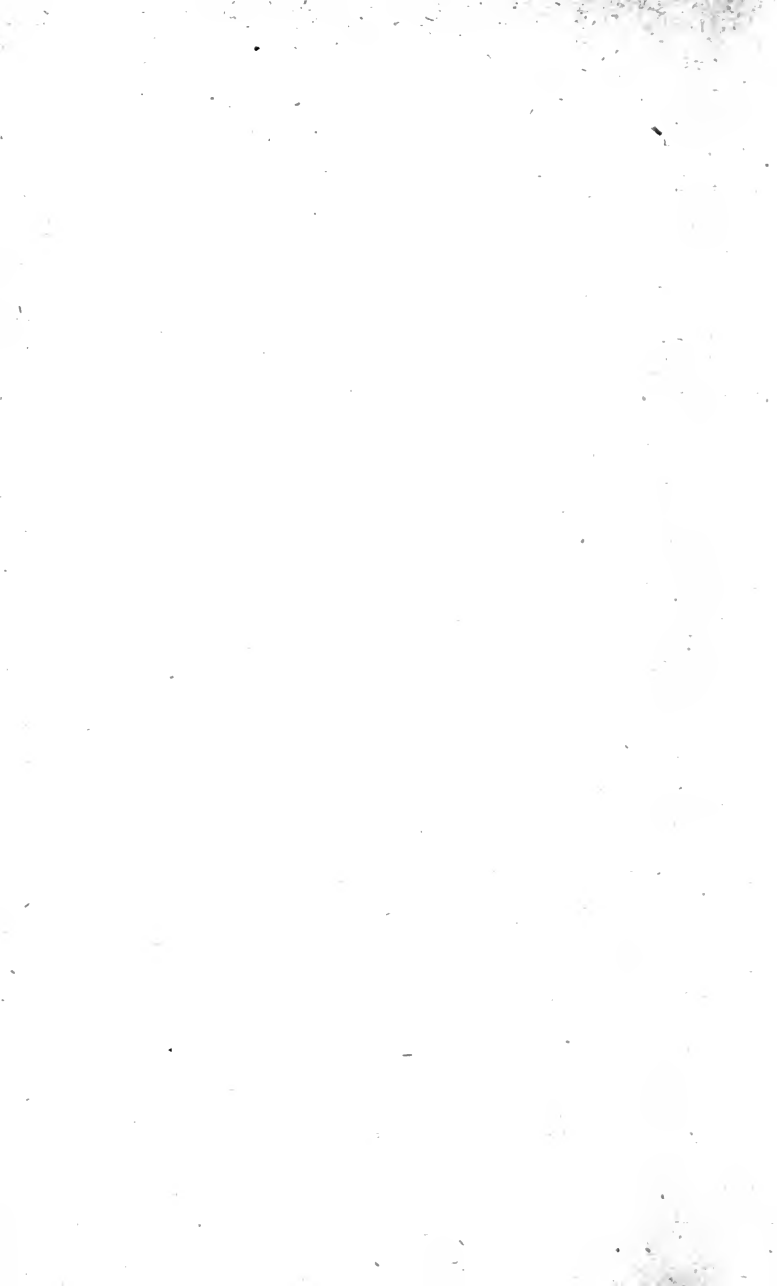
The wide interest felt in the *Pilgrim's Progress* is not only seen in the great variety of artistic power by

which it has been illustrated, but also by the number of Foreign Versions into which it has been translated. Besides the Dutch and Flemish versions already referred to, Bunyan's allegory was translated into German from the Dutch in 1703, into Swedish in 1743, and into Polish in 1728. Other translations came later, and were the product of the missionary movement of the nineteenth century. Altogether, it has been translated into between seventy and eighty languages and dialects. In addition to the versions already mentioned, it is found in *Northern Europe*, in Danish, Icelandic, Norwegian, Lithuanian, Finnish, Lettish, Esthonian, and Russ ; in *Eastern Europe*, in Servian, Bulgarian, Bohemian, and Hungarian ; in *Southern Europe*, in French, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, and Romaic or Modern Greek. In *Asia*, it may be met with in Hebrew, Arabic, Modern Syriac, Armeno-Turkish, Greco-Turkish, and Armenian. Farther to the south, also, it is seen in Pushtu or Afghani, and in the great Empire of India it has been translated into Hindustani or Urdu, Bengali, Uriya or Orissa, Hindi, Sindhi, Panjabi or Sikh, Telugu, Canarese, Tamil, Malayalim, Marathi-Balbodh, Gujarati, and Singhalese. In Indo-Chinese countries there are versions of it in Assamese, Khasi, Burmese, and Sgau-Karen. It has been given to the Dyaks of Borneo, to the Malays, to the Malagasy, to the Japanese, and to the Chinese in their various dialects, both classical and colloquial. It has found its way into *Western Africa* in Efik, Othshi or Ashanti, Otyiherero, Yoruba, and Dualla ; and in the southern regions of that



continent in Kaffir, Sechuana, and Sesuto. Among the *Pacific Islands* it has been translated into Raratongan, Samoan, Tahitian, Maori, Fijian, Hawaiian, and Aneityumese. And finally, if we pass to the *American* continent, we find it printed recently in a new form among the Mexicans of the South, and given to the Cree Indians, and to those also of Dakota in the North.

With regard to the present edition, it may be well to say that care has been taken to furnish the reader with a reliable text. The ten editions of the *Pilgrim's Progress* published in Bunyan's lifetime have been collated, and the emendations made by him, many of which were distinct improvements in expression, have for the most part been adopted. The object has not been to produce a facsimile of any one edition, but while such mere illiteracies as *bin* for *been*, *dy* for *die*, and such variations as *Pliable* and *Plyable*, *Slough* and *Slow*, have not been pedantically adhered to, care has been taken to present the book as Bunyan left it, retaining his latest touches but rejecting all subsequent additions and professed emendations.



THE  
PILGRIM'S PROGRESS

FROM THIS WORLD  
TO THAT WHICH IS TO COME

DELIVERED UNDER THE SIMILITUDE OF A  
DREAM

WHEREIN IS DISCOVERED  
THE MANNER OF HIS SETTING OUT  
HIS DANGEROUS JOURNEY, AND SAFE ARRIVAL  
AT THE DESIRED COUNTRY

*I have used similitudes.*—Hos. xii. 10

By *JOHN BUNYAN*

---

Licensed and Entred according to Order

---

LONDON

Printed for *Nath. Ponder*, at the *Peacock*, in the  
*Poultry* near *Cornhil*, 1678



THE  
AUTHOR'S APOLOGY  
FOR HIS BOOK.

*WHEN at the first I took my Pen in hand,  
Thus for to write ; I did not understand  
That I at all should make a little Book  
In such a mode ; Nay, I had undertook  
To make another, which when almost done ;  
Before I was aware, I this begun.*

*And thus it was : I writing of the Way  
And Race of Saints, in this our Gospel-Day,  
Fell suddenly into an Allegory  
About their Journey, and the way to Glory,  
In more than twenty things, which I set down ;  
This done, I twenty more had in my Crown,  
And they again began to multiply,  
Like sparks that from the coals of fire do fly.  
Nay then, thought I, if that you breed so fast,  
I'll put you by yourselves, lest you at last  
Should prove ad infinitum, and eat out  
The Book that I already am about.*

*Well, so I did ; but yet I did not think*

*To shew to all the World my Pen and Ink  
In such a mode ; I only thought to make  
I knew not what : nor did I undertake  
Thereby to please my Neighbour ; no not I ;  
I did it mine own self to gratify.*

*Neither did I but vacant seasons spend  
In this my Scribble ; nor did I intend  
But to divert myself in doing this,  
From worser thoughts, which make me do amiss.*

*Thus I set Pen to Paper with delight,  
And quickly had my thoughts in black and white.  
For having now my Method by the end,  
Still as I pull'd, it came ; and so I penn'd  
It down, until at last it came to be  
For length and breadth the bigness which you see.*

*Well, when I had thus put mine ends together,  
I shew'd them others, that I might see whether  
They would condemn them, or them justify :  
And some said, let them live ; some, let them die.  
Some said, John, print it ; others said, Not so :  
Some said, It might do good ; others said, No.*

*Now was I in a straight, and did not see  
Which was the best thing to be done by me :  
At last I thought, Since you are thus divided,  
I print it will ; and so the case decided.*

*For, thought I ; Some, I see, would have it done,  
Though others in that Channel do not run ;  
To prove then who advised for the best,  
Thus I thought fit to put it to the test.*

*I further thought, If now I did deny  
Those that would have it thus, to gratify,  
I did not know but hinder them I might  
Of that which would to them be great delight.*

*For those that were not for its coming forth,  
I said to them, Offend you I am loth ;  
Yet since your Brethren pleased with it be,  
Forbear to judge, till you do further see.*

*If that thou wilt not read, let it alone ;  
Some love the meat, some love to pick the bone :  
Yea, that I might them better palliate,  
I did too with them thus Expostulate.*

*May I not write in such a stile as this ?  
In such a method too, and yet not miss  
My end, thy good ? why may it not be done ?  
Dark Clouds bring Waters, when the bright bring none,  
Yea, dark, or bright, if they their Silver drops  
Cause to descend, the Earth, by yielding Crops,  
Gives praise to both, and carpeth not at either,  
But treasures up the Fruit they yield together :  
Yea, so commixes both, that in her Fruit  
None can distinguish this from that, they suit  
Her well, when hungry : but if she be full,  
She spues out both, and makes their blessings null.*

*You see the ways the Fisher-man doth take  
To catch the Fish ; what Engines doth he make ?  
Behold how he engageth all his Wits,  
Also his Snares, Lines, Angles, Hooks, and Nets.  
Yet Fish there be, that neither Hook, nor Line,  
Nor Snare, nor Net, nor Engine can make thine ;  
They must be grop'd for, and be tickled too,  
Or they will not be catcht, whate'r you do.*

*How doth the Fowler seek to catch his Game,  
By divers means, all which one cannot name ?  
His Gun, his Nets, his Lime-twigs, light, and bell :  
He creeps, he goes, he stands ; yea who can tell  
Of all his postures, Yet there's none of these*

*Will make him master of what Fowls he please,  
Yea, he must Pipe, and Whistle to catch this ;  
Yet if he does so, that Bird he will miss.*

*If that a Pearl may in a Toad's head dwell,  
And may be found too in an Oyster-shell ;  
If things that promise nothing, do contain  
What better is than Gold ; who will disdain,  
(That have an inkling of it,) there to look,  
That they may find it. Now my little Book,  
(Tho' void of all those paintings that may make  
It with this or the other Man to take,)  
Is not without those things that do excel  
What do in brave, but empty notions dwell.*

Well, yet I am not fully satisfied,  
That this your Book will stand ; when soundly try'd.

*Why, what's the matter ! it is dark, what tho ?  
But it is feigned. What of that I tro ?  
Some men by feigning words as dark as mine,  
Make truth to spangle, and its rays to shine.*

But they want solidness : *Speak man thy mind,*  
They drown'd the weak ; Metaphors make us blind.

*Solidity, indeed becomes the Pen  
Of him that writeth things Divine to men :  
But must I needs want solidness, because  
By Metaphors I speak ; Were not God's Laws,  
His Gospel-Laws, in olden time held forth  
By Types, Shadows and Metaphors ? Yet loth  
Will any sober man be to find fault  
With them, lest he be found for to assault  
The highest Wisdom. No, he rather stoops,  
And seeks to find out what by pins and loops,  
By Calves ; and Sheep ; by Heifers, and by Rams ;  
By Birds, and Herbs, and by the blood of Lambs,*



*God speaketh to him. And happy is he  
That finds the light, and grace that in them be.*

*Be not too forward therefore to conclude,  
That I want solidness, that I am rude :  
All things solid in shew, not solid be ;  
All things in parables despise not we,  
Lest things most hurtful lightly we receive,  
And things that good are, of our souls bereave.*

*My dark and cloudy words they do but hold  
The Truth, as Cabinets inclose the Gold.*

*The Prophets used much by Metaphors  
To set forth Truth ; Yea, whoso considers  
Christ, his Apostles too, shall plainly see,  
That Truths to this day in such Mantles be.*

*Am I afraid to say that holy Writ,  
Which for its Stile, and Phrase puts down all Wit,  
Is every where so full of all these things,  
(Dark Figures, Allegories,) yet there springs  
From that same Book that lustre, and those rays  
Of light, that turns our darkest nights to days.*

*Come, let my Carper, to his Life now look,  
And find There darker lines than in my Book  
He findeth any. Yea, and let him know,  
That in his best things there are worse lines too.*

*May we but stand before impartial men,  
To his poor One, I dare adventure Ten,  
That they will take my meaning in these lines  
Far better than his Lies in Silver Shrines.  
Come, Truth, although in Swaddling clouts, I find  
Informs the Judgment, rectifies the Mind,  
Pleases the Understanding, makes the Will  
Submit ; the Memory too it doth fill  
With what doth our Imagination please ;*

*Likewise, it tends our troubles to appease.*

*Sound words, I know Timothy is to use ;  
And old Wives' Fables he is to refuse,  
But yet grave Paul, him nowhere did forbid  
The use of Parables ; in which lay hid  
That Gold, those Pearls, and precious stones that were  
Worth digging for ; and that with greatest care.*

*Let me add one word more, O man of God !  
Art thou offended ? dost thou wish I had  
Put forth my matter in another dress,  
Or that I had in things been more express ?  
Three things let me propound, then I submit  
To those that are my betters, (as is fit,)*

1. *I find not that I am denied the use  
Of this my method, so I no abuse  
Put on the Words, Things, Readers, or be rude  
In handling Figure, or Similitude,  
In application ; but, all that I may,  
Seek the advance of Truth, this or that way :  
Denied, did I say ? Nay, I have leave,  
(Example too, and that from them that have  
God better pleased by their words or ways,  
Then any man that breatheth now a days,)  
Thus to express my mind, thus to declare  
Things unto thee, that excellentest are.*

2. *I find that men (as high as Trees) will write  
Dialogue-wise ; yet no man doth them slight  
For writing so : Indeed if they abuse  
Truth, cursed be they, and, the craft they use.  
To that intent ; But yet let Truth be free  
To make her Sallies upon Thee, and Me,  
Which way it pleases God. For who knows how,  
Better than he that taught us first to Plow,*

*To guide our Mind and Pens for his Design?  
And he makes base things usher in Divine.*

3. *I find that holy Writ in many places  
Hath semblance with this method, where the cases  
Do call for one thing, to set forth another:  
Use it I may then, and yet nothing smother  
Truth's golden Beams; Nay, by this method may  
Make it cast forth its rays as light as day.*

*And now, before I do put up my Pen,  
I'll shew the profit of my Book, and then  
Commit both thee, and it unto that hand  
That pulls the strong down, and makes weak ones stand.*

*This Book it chalketh out before thine eyes  
The man that seeks the everlasting Prize:  
It shews you whence he comes, whither he goes,  
What he leaves undone; also what he does:  
It also shews you how he runs, and runs  
Till he unto the Gate of Glory comes.*

*It shews too, who set out for life amain,  
As if the lasting Crown they would attain:  
Here also you may see the reason why  
They lose their labour, and like Fools do die.*

*This Book will make a Traveller of thee,  
If by its Counsel thou wilt ruled be;  
It will direct thee to the Holy Land,  
If thou wilt its Directions understand:  
Yea, it will make the slothful active be;  
The Blind also, delightful things to see.*

*Art thou for something rare, and profitable?  
Wouldest thou see a Truth within a Fable?  
Art thou forgetful? wouldest thou remember  
From New-years-day to the last of December?  
Then read my fancies, they will stick like Burs,*

*And may be to the Helpless, Comforters.*

*This Book is writ in such a Dialect,  
As may the minds of listless men affect:  
It seems a Novelty, and yet contains  
Nothing but sound, and honest Gospel-strains.*

*Would'st thou divert thyself from Melancholy?  
Would'st thou be pleasant, yet be far from folly?  
Would'st thou read Riddles, & their Explanation?  
Or else be drowned in thy Contemplation?  
Dost thou love picking meat? or would'st thou see  
A man i'th Clouds, and hear him speak to thee?  
Would'st thou be in a Dream, and yet not sleep?  
Or would'st thou in a moment laugh, and weep?  
Wouldest thou lose thyself, and catch no harm?  
And find thyself again without a charm?  
Would'st read thyself, and read thou know'st not what  
And yet know whether thou art blest or not,  
By reading the same lines? O then come hither,  
And lay my Book, thy Head, and Heart together.*

JOHN BUNYAN.

THE  
PILGRIM'S PROGRESS:

IN THE SIMILITUDE OF A

DREAM.

As I walked through the wilderness of this world, I lighted on a certain place, where was a Den; And I laid me down in that place to sleep: And as I slept I dreamed a dream. I dreamed, and behold *I saw a Man clothed with Rags, standing in a certain place, with his face from his own House, a Book in his hand, and a great burden upon his back.* I looked, and saw him open the Book, and read therein; and as he read, he wept and trembled: and not being able longer to contain, he brake out with a lamentable cry; saying, *what shall I do?*

*The Gaol.*

Isa. 64. 6.  
Lu. 14. 33.  
Ps. 38. 4.  
Hab. 2. 2.  
Acts 16. 31.

*His Outcry.*  
Acts 2. 37.

In this plight therefore he went home, and refrained himself as long as he could, that his Wife and Children should not perceive his distress; but he could not be silent long, because that his trouble increased: wherefore at length he brake his mind to his Wife and Children; and thus he began to talk to them, *O my dear Wife, said he, and you the Children of my bowels, I your dear*

*friend am in myself undone, by reason of a burden that lieth hard upon me : moreover, I am for certain informed, that this our City will be burned with fire from Heaven, in which fearful overthrow, both myself, with thee, my Wife, and you my sweet babes, shall miserably come to ruin ; except (the which, yet I see not) some way of escape can be found, whereby we may be delivered. At this his Relations were sore amazed ; not for that they believed, that what he had said to them was true, but because they thought, that some frenzy distemper had got into his head : therefore, it drawing towards night, and they hoping that sleep might settle his brains, with all haste they got him to bed ; but the night was as troublesome to him as the day : wherefore instead of sleeping, he spent it in sighs and tears. So when the morning was come, they would know how he did ; he told them, *Worse and worse*. He also set to talking to them again, but they began to be hardened ; they also thought to drive away his distemper by harsh and surly carriages to him : sometimes they would deride, sometimes they would chide, and sometimes they would quite neglect him : wherefore he began to retire himself to his Chamber to pray for, and pity them ; and also to condole his own misery : he would also walk solitarily in the Fields, sometimes reading, and sometimes praying : and thus for some days he spent his time.*

*This World.*

*He knew  
no way of  
escape as  
yet.*

*Carnal  
Physic for a  
Sick Soul.*

*Acts 16. 30.  
31.*

Now, I saw upon a time, when he was walking in the Fields, that he was (as he was wont) reading in his Book, and greatly distressed in his mind ; and as he read, he burst out, as he had done before, crying, *What shall I do to be saved ?*

I saw also that he looked *this* way, and *that* way, as if he would run ; yet he stood still, because as I perceived, he could not tell which way to go. I looked

then, and saw a Man named *Evangelist* coming to him,<sup>1</sup> and asked, *Wherefore dost thou cry?* He answered, Sir, I perceive, by the Book in my hand, that I am Condemned to die, and after that to come to Judgment; and I find that I am not willing to do the first, nor able to do the second.

Heb. 9. 27.  
Job 16. 21.  
22.  
Ezek. 22. 14.

Then said *Evangelist*, Why not willing to die, since this life is attended with so many evils? The Man answered, Because I fear that this burden that is upon my back, will sink me lower than the Grave; and I shall fall into *Tophet*. And Sir, if I be not fit to go to Prison, I am not fit (I am sure) to go to Judgment, and from thence to Execution; And the thoughts of these things make me cry.

Isa. 30. 33.

Then said *Evangelist*, If this be thy condition, why standest thou still? He answered, Because I know not whither to go. Then he gave him a *Parchment-Roll*, and there was written within, *Fly from the wrath to come*.

Conviction  
of the ne-  
cessity of  
flying.  
Mat. 3. 7.

The Man therefore Read it, and looking upon *Evangelist* very carefully; said, Whither must I fly? Then said *Evangelist*, pointing with his finger over a very wide Field, Do you see yonder *Wicket-gate*? The Man said, No. Then said the other, Do you see yonder shining light? He said, I think I do. Then said *Evangelist*, Keep that light in your eye, and go up directly thereto, so shalt thou see the Gate; at which when thou knockest, it shall be told thee what thou shalt do.

Mat. 7. 13,  
14.  
Psal. 119.  
105.  
2 Pe. 1. 19.

Christ & the  
way to him  
cannot be  
found with-  
out the Word.

So I saw in my Dream, that the Man began to run; Now he had not run far from his own door, but his Wife

<sup>1</sup> *Christian*, no sooner leaves the world, but meets *Evangelist*, who lovingly him greets,  
With Tidings of another; And doth show  
Him how to mount to that from this below.

and Children perceiving it, began to cry after him to return : but the Man put his fingers in his Ears, and ran on crying, Life, Life, Eternal Life : so he looked not behind him, but fled towards the middle of the Plain.

Luk. 14. 26.

Gen. 19. 17.

*They that fly from the wrath to come, are a Gazing-Stock to the world.*

Jer. 20. 10.

*Obstinate and Pliable follow him.*

The Neighbours also came out to see him run, and as he ran, some mocked, others threatened ; and some cried after him to return : And among those that did so, there were two that were resolved to fetch him back by force : The name of the one was *Obstinate*, and the name of the other *Pliable*. Now by this time the Man was got a good distance from them ; But however they were resolved to pursue him ; which they did, and in a little time they overtook him. Then said the Man, Neighbours, *Wherefore are you come ?* They said, To perswade you to go back with us ; but he said, That can by no means be ; You dwell, said he, in the City of *Destruction* (the place also where I was born,) I see it to be so ; and dying there, sooner or later, you will sink lower than the Grave, into a place that burns with Fire and Brimstone ; Be content good Neighbours, and go along with me.

*Obstinate.*

Obst. *What !* said *Obstinate*, and leave our *Friends*, and our *comforts behind us !*

*Christian.*

Chr. Yes, said *Christian*, (for that was his name) because that *all* which you shall forsake is not worthy to be compared with a *little* of that that I am seeking to enjoy, and if you will go along with me, and hold it, you shall fare as I myself ; for there where I go, is enough, and to spare ; Come away, and prove my words.

2 Cor. 4. 18.

Luk. 15. 17.

Obst. *What are the things you seek, since you leave all the World to find them ?*

1 Pet. 1. 4.

Chr. I seek an *Inheritance*, *incorruptible*, *undefiled*, and that *fadeth not away* ; and it is laid up in Heaven,



and safe there, to be bestowed at the time appointed, on Heb. 11. 16. them that diligently seek it. Read it so if you will in my Book.

Obst. *Tush*, said *Obstinate*, *away with your Book; will you go back with us, or no?*

Ch. No, not I, said the other; because I have laid my hand to the Plow. Luk. 9. 62.

Obst. *Come then, Neighbour Pliable, let us turn again, and go home without him; There is a Company of these Craz'd-headed Coxcombs, that when they take a fancy by the end, are wiser in their own eyes than seven men that can render a Reason.*

Pli. Then said *Pliable*, Don't revile; if what the good *Christian* says is true, the things he looks after, are better than ours: my heart inclines to go with my Neighbour.

Obst. *What! more Fools still? be ruled by me and go back; who knows whither such a brain-sick fellow will lead you? Go back, go back, and be wise.*

Chr. Nay but do thou come with me Neighbour Christian and Obstinate pull for Pliable's soul. *Pliable*; there are such things to be had which I spoke of, and many more Glories besides. If you believe not me, read here in this Book; and for the truth of what is exprest therein, behold all is confirmed by the blood of Heb. 9. 17-21; 13. 20. 21. him that made it.

Pli. *Well Neighbour Obstinate (said Pliable) I begin to come to a point; I intend to go along with this good man, and to cast in my lot with him: But my good Companion, do you know the way to this desired place?* Pliable contented to go with Christian.

Ch. I am directed by a man whose name is *Evangelist*, to speed me to a little Gate that is before us, where we shall receive instruction about the way.

Pli. *Come then good Neighbour, let us be going.*

Then they went both together.

Obstinate  
goes railing  
back.

*Obst.* And I will go back to my place, said *Obstinate*.  
I will be no Companion of such mis-led fantastical  
Fellows.

Talk between  
Christian,  
and Pliable.

Now I saw in my Dream, that when *Obstinate* was  
gone back, *Christian* and *Pliable* went talking over the  
Plain ; and thus they began their discourse,

*Chr.* Come Neighbour *Pliable*, how do you do ? I  
am glad you are perswaded to go along with me ; had even  
*Obstinate* himself, but felt what I have felt of the Powers  
and Terrors of what is yet unseen, he would not thus  
lightly have given us the back.

*Pli.* Come Neighbour *Christian*, since there is none  
but us two here, tell me now further, what the things are,  
and how to be enjoyed, whither we are going ?

God's things  
unspeakable.

*Chr.* I can better conceive of them with my Mind,  
than speak of them with my Tongue : But yet since you  
are desirous to know, I will read of them in my Book.

*Pli.* And do you think that the words of your Book  
are certainly true ?

Tit. 1. 2.

*Chr.* Yes verily, for it was made by him that cannot  
lye.

*Pli.* Well said ; what things are they ?

Isa. 45. 17.  
John 10. 27,  
28, 29.

*Chr.* There is an endless Kingdom to be Inhabited,  
and everlasting life to be given us ; that we may Inhabit  
that Kingdom for ever.

*Pli.* Well said ; and what else ?

2 Tim. 4. 8.  
Rev. 3. 4.  
Mat. 13. 43.

*Chr.* There are Crowns of Glory to be given us ; and  
Garments that will make us shine like the Sun in the  
Firmament of Heaven.

*Pli.* This is excellent ; And what else ?

Isa. 25. 8.  
Rev. 7. 16,  
17.  
Cap. 21. 4.

*Chr.* There shall be no more crying, nor sorrow ; For  
he that is owner of the place, will wipe all tears from our  
eyes.

Pli. *And what company shall we have there ?*

Chr. There we shall be with *Seraphims*, and *Cherubins*, Isa. 6. 2.  
 Creatures that will dazzle your eyes to look on them :  
 There also you shall meet with thousands and ten  
 thousands that have gone before us to that place ; none  
 of them are hurtful, but loving, and holy : every one  
 walking in the sight of God ; and standing in his presence  
 with acceptance for ever : In a word, there we shall see  
 the Elders with their Golden Crowns : There we shall  
 see the Holy Virgins with their Golden Harps. There 1 Thess. 4.  
16, 17.  
Rev. 5. 11.  
 we shall see Men that by the World were cut in pieces,  
 burned in flames, eaten of Beasts, drowned in the Seas,  
 for the love that they bare to the Lord of the place ; all  
 well, and cloathed with Immortality, as with a Garment. Rev. 4. 4.  
Chap. 14. 1-5.  
Joh. 12. 25.  
2 Cor. 5. 2,  
3, 5.

Pli. *The hearing of this is enough to ravish ones heart ; but are these things to be enjoyed ? how shall we get to be Sharers thereof ?*

Ch. The Lord, the Governor of that Country, hath recorded *that* in this Book : The substance of which is, If we be truly willing to have it, he will bestow it upon us freely. Isa. 55. 1, 2  
John 7. 37.  
Chap. 6. 37.  
Rev. 21. 6.  
Chap. 22. 17.

Pli. *Well, my good Companion, glad am I to hear of these things : Come on, let us mend our pace.*

Ch. I cannot go so fast as I would, by reason of this burden that is upon my back.

Now I saw in my Dream, that just as they had ended this talk, they drew near to a very *Miry Slough*, that was in the midst of the Plain, and they being heedless, did both fall suddenly into the bog. The name of the Slough was *Dispond*. Here therefore they wallowed for a time, being grievously bedaubed with the dirt ; And *Christian*, because of the burden that was on his back, began to sink in the Mire. The Slough of Despond.

Pli. *Then said Pliable, Ah, Neighbour Christian, where are you now?*

Ch. Truly, said *Christian*, I do not know.

Pli. At that, *Pliable* began to be offended; and angrily said to his Fellow, *Is this the happiness you have told me all this while of? if we have such ill speed at our first setting out, what may we expect, 'twixt this, and our Journey's end? May I get out again with my life, you shall possess the brave Country alone for me.* And with that he gave a desperate struggle or two, and got out of the Mire, on that side of the Slough which was next to his own House: So away he went, and *Christian* saw him no more.

*It is not enough to be Pliable.*

*Christian in trouble, seeks still to get further from his own House.*

Wherefore *Christian* was left to tumble in the Slough of *Despond* alone, but still he endeavoured to struggle to that side of the Slough, that was still further from his own House, and next to the Wicket-gate; the which he did, but could not get out, because of the burden that was upon his back. But I beheld in my Dream, that a Man came to him, whose name was *Help*, and asked him, *What he did there?*

Chr. Sir, said *Christian*, I was bid go this way by a Man called *Evangelist*; who directed me also to yonder Gate, that I might escape the wrath to come: And as I was going thither, I fell in here.

*The Promises.*

*Help. But why did you not look for the steps?*

Ch. *Fear* followed me so hard, that I fled the next way, and fell in.

*Help lifts him out. Ps. 40. 2.*

*Help. Then said he, Give me thy hand.* So he gave him his hand, and he drew him out, and set him upon sound ground, and bid him go on his way.

Then I stepped to him that pluckt him out; and said; Sir, Wherefore (since over this place, is the way from the

City of *Destruction*, to yonder *Gate*) is it, that *this* Plat is not mended, that poor Travellers might go thither with more security? And he said unto me, this *Miry slough* is such a place as cannot be mended: It is the descent whither the scum and filth that attends conviction for sin, doth continually run, and therefore it is called the *Slough of Dispond*: for still as the sinner is awakened about his lost condition, there ariseth in his soul many fears, and doubts, and discouraging apprehensions, which all of them get together, and settle in this place: And this is the reason of the badness of this ground.

*What makes  
the Slough of  
Dispond.*

It is not the pleasure of the King, that this place should remain so bad; his Labourers also, have by the direction of His Majesties Surveyors, been for above this sixteen hundred years, imploy'd about this patch of ground, if perhaps it might have been mended: yea, and to my knowledge, said he, *Here* hath been swallowed up, at least Twenty thousand Cart Loads; Yea Millions, of wholesome Instructions, that have at all seasons been brought from all places of the Kings Dominions; (and they that can tell, say, they are the best Materials to make good ground of the place;) If so be it might have been mended, but it is the *Slough of Dispond* still; and so will be, when they have done what they can.

Isa. 35. 3, 4.

True, there are by the direction of the Law-giver, certain good and substantial Steps, placed even through the very midst of this *Slough*; but at such time as this place doth much spue out its filth, as it doth against change of weather, these steps are hardly seen; or if they be, Men through the dizziness of their heads, step besides; and then they are bemired to purpose, notwithstanding the steps be there; but the ground is good when they are once got in at the Gate.

*The Promises  
of forgiveness  
and accep-  
tance to life  
by faith in  
Christ.*

I Sa. 12. 23.

*Pliable got home and is visited of his neighbours.*

*His entertainment by them at his return.*

Now I saw in my Dream, that by this time *Pliable* was got home to his House again. So his Neighbours came to visit him; and some of them called him wise Man for coming back; and some called him Fool, for hazarding himself with *Christian*; others again did mock at his Cowardliness; saying, Surely since you began to venture, I would not have been so base to have given out for a few difficulties. So *Pliable* sat sneaking among them. But at last he got more confidence, and then they all turned their tales, and began to deride poor *Christian* behind his back. And thus much concerning *Pliable*.

*Mr. Worldly-Wiseman meets with Christian.*

Now as *Christian* was walking solitarily by himself, he espied one afar off come crossing over the field to meet him; and their hap was to meet *just as they were crossing the way of each other*. The Gentleman's name that met him was, *Mr. Worldly-Wiseman*, he dwelt in the Town of *Carnal-Policy*, a very great Town, and also hard by from whence *Christian* came. This man then meeting with *Christian*, and having some inkling of him, for *Christian's* setting forth from the City of *Destruction*, was much noised abroad, not only in the Town, where he dwelt, but also it began to be the *Town-talk* in some other places. Master *Worldly-Wiseman* therefore, having some guess of him, by beholding his laborious going, by observing his sighs and groans, and the like, began thus to enter into some talk with *Christian*.

*Talk betwixt Mr. Worldly-Wiseman and Christian.*

*World.* How now, good fellow, whither away after this burdened manner?

*Chr.* A burdened manner indeed, as ever I think poor creature had. And whereas you ask me, *Whither away*, I tell you, Sir, I am going to yonder Wicket-gate before me; for there, as I am informed, I shall be put into a way to be rid of my heavy burden.

World. *Hast thou a Wife and Children?*

Chr. Yes, but I am so laden with this burden, that I cannot take that pleasure in them as formerly : methinks, 1 Cor. 7. 29. I am as if I had none.

World. *Wilt thou hearken to me, if I give thee counsel?*

Chr. If it be good, I will ; for I stand in need of good counsel.

World. *I would advise thee then, that thou with all speed get thyself rid of thy burden ; for thou wilt never be settled in thy mind till then : nor canst thou enjoy the benefits of the blessing which God hath bestowed upon thee till then.*

Mr. Worldly-  
Wiseman's  
Counsel to  
Christian.

Chr. That is that which I seek for, even to be rid of this heavy burden ; but get it off myself I cannot : nor is there a man in our Country that can take it off my shoulders ; therefore am I going this way, as I told you, that I may be rid of my burden.

World. *Who bid thee go this way to be rid of thy burden?*

Chr. A man that appeared to me to be a very great and honorable person ; his name, as I remember is *Evangelist*.

World. *I beshrow him for his counsel ; there is not a more dangerous and troublesome way in the world, than is that unto which he hath directed thee ; and that thou shalt find if thou wilt be ruled by his counsel : Thou hast met with something (as I perceive) already ; for I see the dirt of the Slough of Dispond is upon thee ; but that Slough is the beginning of the sorrows that do attend those that go on in that way : hear me, I am older than thou ! thou art like to meet with in the way which thou goest, Wearisomeness, Painfulness, Hunger, Perils, Nakedness, Sword, Lions, Dragons, Darkness, and in a word, death, and what not ? These things are certainly*

Mr. Worldly-  
Wiseman  
Condemned  
Evangelist's  
Counsel.

*true, having been confirmed by many testimonies. And why should a man so carelessly cast away himself, by giving heed to a stranger.*

*The frame of the heart of young Christians.*

*Chr.* Why, Sir, this burden upon my back is more terrible to me than are all these things which you have mentioned : nay, methinks I care not what I meet with in the way, so be I can also meet with deliverance from my burden.

*World.* *How camest thou by thy burden at first ?*

*Chr.* By reading this Book in my hand.

*Worldly-Wiseman does not like that Men should be Serious in reading the Bible.*

*World.* *I thought so ; and it is happened unto thee as to other weak men, who meddling with things too high for them, do suddenly fall into thy distractions ; which distractions do not only unman men, (as thine I perceive has done thee) but they run them upon desperate ventures, to obtain they know not what.*

*Chr.* I know what I would obtain ; it is ease for my heavy burden.-

*Whether Mr. Worldly prefers Morality before the Strait Gate.*

*World.* *But why wilt thou seek for ease this way, seeing so many dangers attend it, especially, since (hadst thou but patience to hear me,) I could direct thee to the obtaining of what thou desirest, without the dangers that thou in this way wilt run thyself into : yea, and the remedy is at hand. Besides, I will add, that instead of those dangers, thou shalt meet with much safety, friendship, and content.*

*Chr.* Pray Sir open this secret to me.

*World.* *Why, in yonder Village, (the Village is named Morality) there dwells a Gentleman, whose name is Legality, a very judicious man (and a man of a very good name) that has skill to help men off with such burdens as thine are, from their shoulders : yea, to my knowledge he hath done a great deal of good this way :*



*Ay, and besides, he hath skill to cure those that are somewhat crazed in their wits with their burdens. To him, as I said, thou mayest go, and be helped presently. His house is not quite a mile from this place; and if he should not be at home himself, he hath a pretty young man to his Son, whose name is Civility, that can do it (to speak on) as well as the old Gentleman himself: There, I say, thou mayest be eased of thy burden, and if thou art not minded to go back to thy former habitation, as indeed I would not wish thee, thou mayest send for thy Wife and Children to thee to this Village, where there are houses now stand empty, one of which thou mayest have at reasonable rates: Provision is there also cheap and good, and that which will make thy life the more happy, is, to be sure there thou shalt live by honest neighbors, in credit and good fashion.*

Now was *Christian* somewhat at a stand, but presently he concluded; if this be true which this Gentleman hath said, my wisest course is to take his advice, and with that he thus farther spoke.

*Christian  
Snares by  
Mr. Worldly-  
Wiseman's  
Words.*

*Chr.* Sir, which is my way to this honest man's house?

*World.* Do you see yonder high hill?

*Mount Sinai.*

*Chr.* Yes, very well.

*World.* By that *Hill* you must go, and the first house you come at is his.

So *Christian* turned out of his way to go to Mr. *Legality's* house for help: but behold, when he was got now hard by the *Hill*, it seemed so high, and also that side of it that was next the way side, did hang so much over, that *Christian* was afraid to venture further, lest the *Hill* should fall on his head: wherefore there he stood still, and he wot not what to do. Also his burden, now, seemed heavier to him, than while he was in his

*Christian  
afraid that  
Mount Sinai  
would fall on  
his head.*

Exod. 19. 18 way. There came also flashes of fire out of the Hill,  
 Ver. 16. that made *Christian* afraid that he should be burned :  
 Heb. 12. 21. here therefore he sweat, and did quake for fear. And  
 now he began to be sorry that he had taken Mr. *Worldly-  
 Wisemans* counsel ; and with that he saw *Evangelist*  
 coming to meet him ; at the sight also of whom he began  
 to blush for shame. So *Evangelist* drew nearer, and  
 nearer, and coming up to him, he looked upon him with  
 a severe and dreadful countenance : and thus began to  
 reason with *Christian*.

*Evangelist  
 findeth  
 Christian  
 under Mount  
 Sinai, and  
 looketh  
 severely upon  
 him.*

*Evangelist  
 reasons  
 afresh with  
 Christian.*

Evan. What doest thou here, *Christian* ? said he, at  
 which words *Christian* knew not what to answer : where-  
 fore, at present he stood speechless before him. Then  
 said *Evangelist* farther, *Art not thou the man that I found  
 crying without the walls of the City of Destruction ?*

*Chr.* Yes, dear Sir, I am the man.

Evan. *Did not I direct thee the way to the little Wicket-  
 gate ?*

*Chr.* Yes, dear Sir, said *Christian*.

Evan. *How is it then that thou art so quickly turned  
 aside, for thou art now out of the way ?*

*Chr.* I met with a Gentleman, so soon as I had got  
 over the *Slough of Dispond*, who perswaded me, that I  
 might in the *Village* before me, find a man that could  
 take off my burden.

Evan. *What was he ?*

*Chr.* He looked like a Gentleman, and talked much to  
 me, and got me at last to yield ; so I came hither : but  
 when I beheld this Hill, and how it hangs over the way,  
 I suddenly made a stand, lest it should fall on my head.

Evan. *What said that Gentleman to you ?*

*Chr.* Why, he asked me whither I was going, and I  
 told him.

Evan. *And what said he then ?*

*Chr.* He asked me if I had a Family, and I told him : but, said I, I am so loaden with the burden that is on my back, that I cannot take pleasure in them as formerly.

Evan. *And what said he then ?*

*Chr.* He bid me with speed get rid of my burden, and I told him 'twas ease that I sought : And said I, I am therefore going to yonder *Gate* to receive further direction how I may get to the place of deliverance. So he said that he would shew me a better way, and short, not so attended with difficulties, as the way, Sir, that you set me : which way, said he, will direct you to a Gentleman's house that hath skill to take off these burdens : So I believed him, and turned out of that way into this, if haply I might be soon eased of my burden : but when I came to this place, and beheld things as they are, I stopped for fear, (as I said) of danger : but I now know not what to do.

Evan. *Then (said Evangelist) stand still a little, that I may shew thee the words of God.* So he stood trembling.

*Then (said Evangelist) See that ye refuse not him that speaketh ; for if they escaped not who refused him that spake on Earth, much more shall not we escape, if we turn away from him that speaketh from Heaven.* He said moreover, *Now the just shall live by faith ; but if any man draws back, my soul shall have no pleasure in him.* He also did thus apply them, *Thou art the man that art running into this misery, thou hast begun to reject the counsel of the most high, and to draw back thy foot from the way of peace, even almost to the hazarding of thy perdition.*

Heb. 12. 25.

Evangelist convinces Christian of his error.

Chap. 10. 38.

Then *Christian* fell down at his foot as dead, crying, Woe is me, for I am undone : at the sight of which

Matt. 12. 31.  
Mark 3. 28. *Evangelist* caught him by the right hand, saying, all manner of sin and blasphemies shall be forgiven unto men; be not faithless, but believing; then did *Christian* again a little revive, and stood up trembling, as at first, before *Evangelist*.

Then *Evangelist* proceeded, saying, *Give more earnest heed to the things that I shall tell thee of.* I will now shew thee who it was that deluded thee, and who 'twas also to whom he sent thee. The man that met thee, is one *Worldly-Wiseman*, and rightly is he so called; partly, because he favoureth only the Doctrine of this world (therefore he always goes to the Town of *Morality* to Church) and partly because he loveth that Doctrine best, for it saveth him from the Cross; and because he is of this carnal temper, therefore he seeketh to pervert my ways, though right. Now there are three things in this man's counsel that thou must utterly abhor.

Mr. Worldly-  
Wiseman  
described by  
Evangelist.

1 John 4. 5.

Gal. 6. 12.

Evangelist  
discovers the  
deceit of Mr.  
Worldly-  
Wiseman.

1. His turning thee out of the way.
2. His labouring to render the Cross odious to thee.
3. And his setting thy feet in that way that leadeth unto the administration of Death.<sup>1</sup>

Luke 13. 24.  
Matt. 7. 13,  
14.

First, Thou must abhor his turning thee out of the way; yea, and thine own consenting thereto: because this is to reject the counsel of God, for the sake of the counsel of a *Worldly-Wiseman*. The Lord says, *Strive to enter in at the strait gate, the gate to which I sent thee; for strait is the gate that leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.* From this little wicket-gate, and from the way thereto hath this wicked man turned thee; to the

<sup>1</sup> When Christians unto carnal Men give ear,  
Out of their way they go, and pay for't dear,  
For Master *Worldly-Wiseman* can but shew  
A Saint the way to Bondage and to Woe.

bringing of thee almost to destruction; hate therefore his turning thee out of the way, and abhor thyself for hearkening to him.

Secondly, Thou must abhor his labouring to render the Cross odious unto thee; for thou art to *prefer it before the treasures in Egypt*: besides, the King of Glory hath told thee, that he that will save his life shall lose it: and *he that comes after him, and hates not his father and mother, and wife, and children, and brethren, and sisters; yea, and his own life also, he cannot be my Disciple*. I say therefore, for a man to labour to perswade thee, that that shall be thy death, without which the truth hath said, thou canst not have eternal life, This Doctrine thou must abhor.

Heb. 11. 25, 26.

Mark 8. 35.

John 12. 25.

Mat. 10. 39.

Luke 14. 26

Thirdly, Thou must hate his setting of thy feet in the way that leadeth to the ministration of death. And for this thou must consider to whom he sent thee, and also how unable that person was to deliver thee from thy burden.

He to whom thou wast sent for ease being by name *Legality*, is the son of the Bond-woman which now is, and is in bondage with her children, and is in a mystery this Mount *Sinai*, which thou hast feared will fall on thy head. Now if she with her children are in bondage, how canst thou expect by them to be made free? This *Legality* therefore is not able to set thee free from thy burden. No man was as yet ever rid of his burden by him, no, nor ever is like to be: ye cannot be justified by the Works of the Law; for by the deeds of the Law no man living can be rid of his burden: therefore Mr. *Worldly-Wiseman* is an alien, and Mr. *Legality* a cheat: and for his Son *Civility*, notwithstanding his simpering looks, he is but a hypocrite, and cannot help thee. Believe me,

Gal. 4. 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27.

The Bond-Woman.

there is nothing in all this noise, that thou hast heard of these sottish men but a design to beguile thee of thy Salvation, by turning thee from the way in which I had set thee. After this *Evangelist* called aloud to the Heavens for confirmation of what he had said; and with that there came words and fire out of the Mountain under which poor Christian stood, that made the hair of his flesh stand up. The words were thus pronounced, *As many as are of the works of the Law, are under the curse; for it is written, Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the Book of the Law to do them.*

Gal. 3. 10.

Now *Christian* looked for nothing but death, and began to cry out lamentably, even cursing the time in which he met with Mr. *Worldly-Wiseman*, still calling himself a thousand fools for hearkening to his counsel: he also was greatly ashamed to think that this Gentleman's arguments, flowing only from the flesh, should have that prevalency with him, to forsake the right way. This done, he applied himself again to *Evangelist* in words and sense as follows.

Christian  
enquired  
if he may yet  
be Happy.

*Chr.* Sir, what think you? is there hopes? may I now go back, and go up to the *Wicket-gate*, shall I not be abandoned for this, and sent back from thence ashamed. I am sorry I have hearkened to this man's counsel, but may my sin be forgiven.

Evangelist  
comforts him.

Ps. 2. last.

*Evang.* Then said *Evangelist* to him, Thy sin is very great, for by it thou hast committed two evils; thou hast forsaken the way that is good, to tread in forbidden paths: yet will the man at the Gate receive thee, for he has good will for men; only, said he, take heed that thou turn not aside again, lest thou perish from the way when his wrath is kindled but a little. Then did *Christian* address him-

self to go back, and *Evangelist*, after he had kissed him, gave him one smile, and bid him God speed : so he went on with haste, neither spake he to any man by the way ; nor if any asked him, would he vouchsafe them an answer. He went like one that was all the while treading on forbidden ground, and could by no means think himself safe, till again he was got into the way which he left to follow Mr. *Worldly-Wiseman's* counsel. So in process of time, *Christian* got up to the Gate. Now over the Gate there was Written, *Knock and it shall be opened unto you.* He Matt. 7. 8. knocked therefore, more than once or twice,<sup>1</sup> saying,

*May I now enter here ? will he within  
Open to sorry me, though I have been  
An undeserving Rebel ? then shall I  
Not fail to sing his lasting praise on high.*

At last there came a grave Person to the Gate, named *Good-will*, who asked *Who was there ? and whence he came ? and what he would have ?*

*Ch.* Here is a poor burdened sinner, I come from the City of *Destruction*, but am going to Mount *Zion*, that I may be delivered from the wrath to come ; I would therefore, Sir, since I am informed that by this Gate is the way thither, know if you are *willing* to let me in.

*Good Will.* I am *willing* with all my heart, said he ; and with that he opened the Gate. The Gate will be opened to broken-hearted sinners.

So when *Christian* was stepping in, the other gave him a pull ; Then said *Christian*, What means that ? The other told him, A little distance from this Gate, there is

<sup>1</sup> He that will enter in must first without Stand knocking at the Gate, nor need he doubt That is a knocker but to enter in ; For God can love him and forgive his sin.

*Satan envies those that enter the straight Gate.*

erected a strong Castle, of which *Beelzebub* is the Captain: from thence both he, and them that are with him shoot Arrows at those that come up to this Gate; if haply they may die before they can enter in. Then said *Christian*, I rejoice and tremble. So when he was got in, the Man of the Gate asked him, Who directed him thither?

*Christian entered the Gate with joy and trembling.*

*Ch.* *Evangelist* bid me come hither and knock, (as I did;) And he said, that you, Sir, would tell me what I must do.

*Talk between Goodwill and Christian.*

*Good Will.* *An open Door is set before thee, and no man can shut it.*

*Ch.* Now I begin to reap the benefits of my hazards.

*Good Will.* *But how is it that you came alone?*

*Ch.* Because none of my Neighbours saw their danger, as I saw mine.

*Good Will.* *Did any of them know of your coming?*

*Ch.* Yes, my Wife and Children saw me at the first, and called after me to turn again: Also some of my Neighbours stood crying, and calling after me to return; but I put my Fingers in my Ears, and so came on my way.

*Good Will.* *But did none of them follow you, to persuade you to go back?*

*Ch.* Yes, both *Obstinate*, and *Pliable*: But when they saw that they could not prevail, *Obstinate* went railing back; but *Pliable* came with me a little way.

*Good Will.* *But why did he not come through?*

*Ch.* We indeed came both together, until we came at the Slough of *Dispond*, into the which, we also suddenly fell. And then was my Neighbour *Pliable* discouraged, and would not adventure further. Wherefore getting out again, on that side next to his own House; he told me, I should possess the brave Country alone for him: So he

*A Man may have Company when he sets out for*



went his way, and I came mine. *He* after *Obstinate*, and I to this Gate. Heaven, and yet go thither alone.

*Good Will*. Then said *Good Will*, Alas poor Man, is the Coelestial Glory of so small esteem with him, that he counteth it not worth running the hazards of a few difficulties to obtain it?

*Chr.* Truly, said *Christian*, I have said the truth of *Pliable*, and if I should also say all the truth of myself, it will appear there is no betterment 'twixt him and myself. 'Tis true, he went back to his own house, but I also turned aside to go in the way of death, being persuaded thereto by the carnal arguments of one Mr. *Worldly-Wiseman*. Christian accuseth himself before the man at the Gate.

*Good Will*. Oh, did he light upon you! what, he would have had you a sought for ease at the hands of Mr. *Legality*; they are both of them a very cheat: but did you take his counsel?

*Chr.* Yes, as far as I durst, I went to find out Mr. *Legality*, until I thought that the Mountain that stands by his house, would have fallen upon my head: wherefore there I was forced to stop.

*Good Will*. That Mountain has been the death of many, and will be the death of many more: 'tis well you escaped being by it dasht in pieces.

*Chr.* Why, truly I do not know what had become of me there, had not *Evangelist* happily met me again as I was musing in the midst of my *dumps*: but 'twas God's mercy that he came to me again, for else I had never come hither. But now I am come, such a one as I am, more fit indeed for death by that Mountain, than thus to stand talking with my Lord: But Oh what a favour is this to me, that yet I am admitted entrance here.

*Good Will*. We make no objections against any, not-

Christian  
comforted  
again.  
John 6. 37.

withstanding all that they have done before they come hither, they in no wise are cast out and therefore, good *Christian*, come a little way with me, and I will teach thee about the way thou must go. Look before thee; dost thou see this narrow way? THAT is the way thou must go. It was cast up by the Patriarchs, Prophets, Christ, and his Apostles; and it is as straight as a Rule can make it: This is the way thou must go.

Christian  
directed yet  
on his way.

Christian  
afraid of los-  
ing his way.

*Ch.* But said *Christian*, Are there no turnings nor windings by which a Stranger may lose the way?

Matt. 7. 14.

*Good Will.* Yes, there are many ways BUTT down upon this; and they are Crooked and Wide: But *thus* thou mayest distinguish the right from the wrong, The right only being straight and narrow.

Christian  
weary of his  
burden.

Then I saw in my dream, That *Christian* asked him further, If he could not help him off with his burden that was upon his back; For as yet he had not got rid thereof, nor could he by any means get it off without help.

There is no  
deliverance  
from the  
guilt, and  
burden of  
sin, but  
by the death  
and blood of  
Christ.

He told him; As to thy burden, be content to bear it, until thou comest to the place of Deliverance; for there it will fall from thy back itself.

Then *Christian* began to gird up his loins, and to address himself to his Journey. So the other told him, that by that he was gone some distance from the Gate, he would come at the House of the *Interpreter*; at whose Door he should knock; and he would shew him excellent things. Then *Christian* took his leave of his Friend, and he again bid him, God speed.

Christian  
comes to the  
House of the  
Interpreter.

Then he went on, till he came at the house of the *Interpreter*, where he knocked over and over: at last one came to the Door, and asked *Who was there?*

*Ch.* Sir, here is a Traveller, who was bid by an acquaintance of the Good-man of this House, to call here

for my profit: I would therefore speak with the Master of the House: so he called for the Master of the House; who after a little time came to *Christian*, and asked him what he would have?

*Ch.* Sir, said *Christian*, I am a Man that am come from the City of *Destruction*, and am going to the Mount *Zion*, and I was told by the Man that stands at the Gate, at the head of this way, That if I called here, you would shew me excellent things, such as would be a help to me in my Journey. *He is entertained.*

*Inter.* Then said the *Interpreter*, Come in, I will shew thee that which will be profitable to thee. So he commanded his Man to light the Candle, and bid *Christian* follow him; so he had him into a private Room, and bid his Man open a Door; the which when he had done, *Christian* saw the Picture of a very grave Person hang up against the Wall, and this was the fashion of it. *It had eyes lifted up to Heaven, the best of Books in his hand, the Law of Truth was written upon his lips, the World was behind his back; it stood as if it Pleaded with Men, and a Crown of Gold did hang over its head.* *Illumination.*

*Ch.* Then said *Christian*, What means this?

*Inter.* The Man whose Picture this is, is one of a thousand, he can beget Children, Travel in birth with Children, and Nurse them himself, when they are born. And whereas thou seest him with his eyes lift up to Heaven, the best of Books in his hand, and the Law of Truth writ on his lips: it is to shew thee, that his work is to know and unfold dark things to sinners; even as also thou seest him stand as if he Pleaded with Men: And whereas thou seest the World as cast behind him, and that a Crown hangs over his head; that is, to shew thee that slighting and despising the things that are

*Christian sees a brave Picture.*

*The fashion of the Picture.*

1 Cor. 4. 15.

Gal. 4. 19.

2 Thes. 2. 7.

*The meaning of the Picture.*

Why he  
shewed him  
the Picture  
first.

present, for the love that he hath to his Master's service, he is sure in the World that comes next to have Glory for his Reward: Now, said the *Interpreter*, I have shewed thee this Picture, first, because the Man whose Picture this is, is the only Man, whom the Lord of the Place whither thou art going, hath Authorized, to be thy Guide in all difficult places thou mayest meet with in the way: wherefore take good heed to what I have shewed thee, and bear well in thy mind what thou hast seen; lest in thy Journey, thou meet with some that pretend to lead thee right, but their way goes down to death.

Then he took him by the hand, and led him into a very large *Parlour* that was full of dust, because never swept; the which, after he had reviewed a little while, the *Interpreter* called for a man to *sweep*: Now when he began to sweep, the dust began so abundantly to fly about, that *Christian* had almost therewith been choaked: Then said the *Interpreter* to a *Damsel* that stood by, Bring hither the Water, and sprinkle the Room; the which when she had done, it was swept and cleansed with pleasure.

Ch. *Then said Christian, What means this?*

In. The *Interpreter* answered; this Parlour is the heart of a Man that was never sanctified by the sweet Grace of the Gospel: The *dust*, is his Original Sin, and inward Corruptions that have defiled the whole Man; He that began to sweep at first, is the Law; but She that brought water, and did sprinkle it, is the Gospel: Now, whereas thou sawest that so soon as the first began to sweep, the dust did so fly about that the Room by him could not be cleansed, but that thou wast almost choaked therewith, This is to shew thee, that the Law, instead of cleansing the heart (by its working) from sin,

doth revive, put strength into, and increase it in the soul, even as it doth discover and forbid it, but doth not give power to subdue. 1 Cor. 15. 56.  
Ro. 5. 20.

Again, as thou sawest the *Damsel* sprinkle the Room with Water, upon which it was cleansed with pleasure: This is to shew thee, that when the Gospel comes in the sweet and precious influences thereof to the heart, then I say, even as thou sawest the *Damsel* lay the dust by sprinkling the Floor with Water, so is sin vanquished and subdued, and the soul made clean, through the Faith of it; and consequently fit for the King of Glory to inhabit. Joh. 15. 3.  
Eph. 5. 26.  
Acts 15. 9  
Rom. 16. 25,  
26.  
Joh. 15. 13.

I saw moreover in my Dream, that the *Interpreter* took him by the hand, and had him into a little Room; where sat two little Children, each one in his Chair: The name of the eldest was *Passion*, and the name of the other *Patience*; *Passion* seemed to be much discontent, but *Patience* was very quiet. Then *Christian* asked, What is the reason of the discontent of *Passion*? The *Interpreter* answered, The Governor of them would have him stay for his best things till the beginning of the next year; but he will have all now: But *Patience* is willing to wait. He sheweth  
him Passion  
and Pa-  
tience.  
Passion will  
have all now.  
Patience is  
for waiting.

Then I saw that one came to *Passion*, and brought him a Bag of Treasure, and poured it down at his feet; the which he took up, and rejoiced therein; and withal, laughed *Patience* to scorn: But I beheld but a while, and he had lavished all away, and had nothing left him but Rags. Passion has  
his desire.  
And quickly  
lavishes all  
away.

Ch. Then said *Christian* to the *Interpreter*, *Expound this matter more fully to me.* The matter  
expounded.

In. So he said, These two Lads are Figures; *Passion*, of the Men of *this* World; and *Patience*, of the Men of *that* which is to come: For as here thou seest, *Passion*

*will have all now, this year; that is to say, in this World; So are the Men of this World: they must have all their good things now, they cannot stay till next Year; that is, until the next World, for their Portion of good. That Proverb, A Bird in the Hand is worth two in the Bush, is of more Authority with them, then are all the Divine Testimonies of the good of the World to come. But as thou sawest, that he had quickly lavished all away, and had presently left him, nothing but Rags; So will it be with all such Men at the end of this World.*

*The Worldly Man for a Bird in the hand.*

*Patience had the best Wisdom.*

Ch. *Then said Christian, Now I see that Patience has the best Wisdom; and that upon many accounts.*

1. *Because he stays for the best things.* 2. *And also because he will have the Glory of His, when the other hath nothing but Rags.*

*In.* Nay, you may add another; to wit, The glory of the *next World* will never wear out; but these are suddenly gone. Therefore *Passion* had not so much reason to laugh at *Patience*, because he had his good things first, as *Patience* will have to laugh at *Passion*, because he had his best things *last*; for *first* must give place to *last*, because *last* must have his time to come, but *last* gives place to *nothing*; for there is not another to succeed: he therefore that hath his Portion *first*, must needs have a time to spend it; but he that has his Portion *last*, must have it lastingly. Therefore it is said of *Dives*, *In thy lifetime thou receivedest thy good things, and likewise Lazarus evil things; But now he is comforted, and thou art tormented.*

*Things that are first must give place, but things that are last, are lasting.*

Luk. 16. *Dives had his good things first.*

Ch. *Then I perceive, 'tis not best to covet things that are now; but to wait for things to come.*

2 Cor. 4. 18. *In.* You say Truth; *For the things that are seen, are*

Temporal ; *but the things that are not seen, are Eternal* : The first things are but Temporal.  
 But though this be so ; yet since things present, and our fleshly appetite, *are such near Neighbours one to another* ; and again, because things to come, and carnal sense, are such strangers one to another : therefore it is, that the first of these so suddenly fall into *amity*, and that *distance* is so continued between the second.

Then I saw in my Dream, that the *Interpreter* took *Christian* by the hand, and led him into a place, where was a Fire burning against a Wall, and one standing by it always, casting much Water upon it to quench it : Yet did the Fire burn higher and hotter.

*Then said Christian, What means this ?*

The *Interpreter* answered, This fire is the work of Grace that is wrought in the heart ; he that casts Water upon it, to extinguish and put it out, is the *Devil* : but in that thou seest the fire notwithstanding burn higher and hotter, thou shalt also see the reason of that : So he had him about to the back side of the Wall, where he saw a Man with a Vessel of Oil in his hand, of the which he did also continually cast, but secretly, into the fire. Then said *Christian, What means this ?* The *Interpreter* answered, This is *Christ*, who continually with the Oil of his Grace, maintains the work already begun in the heart ; By the means of which, notwithstanding what the Devil can do, the souls of his People prove gracious still. 2 Cor. 12. 9.  
 And in that thou sawest, that the Man stood behind the Wall to maintain the fire ; this is to teach thee, that it is hard for the tempted to see how this work of Grace is maintained in the soul.

I saw also that the *Interpreter* took him again by the hand, and led him into a pleasant place, where was builded a stately Palace, beautiful to behold ; at the

sight of which, *Christian* was greatly delighted ; he saw also upon the top thereof, certain Persons walking who were cloathed all in Gold. Then said *Christian*, May we go in thither ? Then the *Interpreter* took him, and led him up toward the door of the Palace ; and behold, at the door stood a great Company of men, as desirous to go in, but durst not. There also sat a Man, at a little distance from the door, at a Table-side, with a Book, and his Inkhorn before him, to take the Name of him that should enter therein : He saw also that in the doorway, stood many Men in Armour to keep it ; being resolved to do to the Men that enter, what hurt and mischief they could. Now was *Christian* somewhat in a maze : at last, when every Man started back for fear of the Armed Men ; *Christian* saw a Man of a very stout countenance come up to the Man that sat there to write ; saying, Set down my name, Sir ; the which when he had done, he saw the Man draw his Sword, and put an Helmet upon his Head, and rush toward the door upon the Armed Men, who laid upon him with deadly force ; but the Man, not at all discouraged, fell to cutting and hacking most fiercely ;

so, after he had received and given many wounds to those that attempted to keep him out, he cut his way through them all, and pressed forward into the Palace ; at which there was a pleasant voice heard from those that were within, even of those that walked upon the top of the Palace, saying,

*Come in, Come in ;  
Eternal Glory thou shalt win.*

So he went in, and was cloathed with such Garments as they. Then *Christian* smiled, and said, I think verily I know the meaning of this.

The *Valiant  
Man.*

Acts 14. 22.



Now, said *Christian*, let me go hence : Nay stay (said the *Interpreter*,) till I have shewed thee a little more, and after that thou shalt go on thy way. So he took him by the hand again, and led him into a very dark Room, where there sat a Man in an Iron Cage.

*Despair Like  
an Iron Cage.*

Now the Man, to look on, seemed very sad : he sat with his eyes looking down to the ground, his hands folded together ; and he sighed as if he would break his heart. Then said *Christian*, What means this ? At which the *Interpreter* bid him talk with the Man.

*Chr.* Then said *Christian* to the Man, *What art thou ?* The Man answered, *I am what I was not once.*

*Chr.* *What wast thou once ?*

*Man.* The *Man* said, I was once a fair and flourishing Professor, both in mine own eyes, and also in the eyes of others : I once was, as I thought, fair for the Cœlestial City, and had then even joy at the thoughts that I should get thither. Luke 8. 13.

*Chr.* *Well, but what art thou now ?*

*Man.* I am *now* a Man of Despair, and am shut up in it, as in this Iron Cage. I cannot get out ; O *now* I cannot.

*Chr.* *But how camest thou in this condition ?*

*Man.* I left off to watch, and be sober ; I laid the reins upon the neck of my lusts ; I sinned against the light of the Word, and the goodness of God : I have grieved the Spirit, and he is gone ; I tempted the Devil, and he is come to me ; I have provoked God to anger, and he has left me ; I have so hardened my heart, that I cannot repent.

Then said *Christian* to the *Interpreter*, But is there no hopes for such a Man as this ? Ask him, said the *Interpreter* ?

*Chr.* Then said Christian, *Is there no hope but you must be kept in this Iron Cage of Despair?*

*Man.* No, none at all.

*Chr.* *Why? the Son of the Blessed is very pitiful.*

Heb. 6. 6.  
Luke 19. 14.

*Man.* I have Crucified him to myself, afresh. I have despised his Person, I have despised his Righteousness, I have counted his Blood an unholy thing, I have done despite to the Spirit of Grace: Therefore I have shut myself out of all the Promises; and there now remains to me nothing but threatnings, dreadful threatnings, fearful threatnings of certain Judgement, and fiery Indignation, which shall devour me as an Adversary.

Heb. 10. 28,  
29.

*Chr.* *For what did you bring yourself into this condition?*

*Man.* For the Lusts, Pleasures, and Profits of this World; in the enjoyment of which, I did then promise myself much delight: but now every one of those things also bite me, and gnaw me like a burning worm.

*Chr.* *But canst thou not now repent and turn?*

*Man.* God hath denied me repentance; his Word gives me no encouragement to believe; yea, himself hath shut me up in this Iron Cage; nor can all the men in the World let me out. O Eternity! Eternity! how shall I grapple with the misery that I must meet with in Eternity!

*Inter.* Then said the *Interpreter* to *Christian*, Let this man's misery be remembered by thee, and be an everlasting caution to thee.

*Chr.* Well, said *Christian*, this is fearful; God help me to watch and be sober; and to pray, that I may shun the cause of this man's misery. Sir, is it not time for me to go on my way now?

*Inter.* Tarry till I shall shew thee one thing more, and then thou shalt go on thy way.

So he took *Christian* by the hand again, and led him into a Chamber, where there was one rising out of Bed ; and as he put on his Raiment, he shook and trembled. Then said *Christian*, Why doth this Man thus tremble ? The *Interpreter* then bid him tell to *Christian* the reason of his so doing, So he began, and said : This night as I was in my sleep, I Dreamed, and behold the Heavens grew exceeding black ; also it thundred and lightned in most fearful wise, that it put me into an Agony. So I looked up in my Dream, and saw the Clouds rackt at an unusual rate ; upon which I heard a great sound of a Trumpet, and saw also a Man sit upon a Cloud, attended with the thousands of Heaven ; they were all in flaming fire, also the Heavens were on a burning flame. I heard then a voice, saying, *Arise ye Dead, and come to Judgment* ; and with that, the Rocks rent, the Graves opened, and the Dead that were therein, came forth ; some of them were exceeding glad, and looked upward ; and some sought to hide themselves under the Mountains : Then I saw the Man that sat upon the Cloud, open the Book ; and bid the World draw near. Yet there was by reason of a fierce flame that issued out and came from before him, a convenient distance betwixt him and them, as betwixt the Judge and the Prisoners at the Bar. I heard it also proclaimed to them that attended on the Man that sat on the Cloud ; *Gather together the Tares, the Chaff, and Stubble, and cast them into the burning Lake* ; and with that, the Bottomless pit opened, just whereabout I stood ; out of the mouth of which there came in an abundant manner Smoak, and Coals of fire, with hideous noises. It was also said to the same persons ; *Gather*

1 Cor. 15. 52.  
1 Thess. 4. 16.  
Jude 15.  
2 Thes. 1. 8.  
Joh. 5. 28.  
Rev. 20. 11,  
12, 13, 14.  
Is. 26. 21.  
Mic. 7. 16, 17.  
Ps. 50. 1, 2, 3.  
Dan. 7. 10.

Mal. 3. 2, 3.  
Dan. 7. 9, 10.  
Mat. 3. 12.  
Ch. 13. 30.  
Mal. 4. 1.

Luke 3. 17. *my Wheat into the Garner.* And with that I saw many  
 1 Thes. 4. 16, 17. catch't up and carried away into the Clouds, but I was  
 left behind. I also sought to hide myself, but I could  
 Ro. 2. 14, 15. not ; for the Man that sat upon the Cloud, still kept his  
 eye upon me : my sins also came into my mind, and my  
 Conscience did accuse me on every side. Upon this I  
 awaked from my sleep.

Chr. *But what was it that made you so afraid of this sight ?*

Man. Why I thought that the day of Judgement was come, and that I was not ready for it : but this frightened me most, that the Angels gathered up several, and left me behind ; also the pit of Hell opened her mouth just where I stood : my Conscience too afflicted me ; and as I thought, the Judge had always his eye upon me, shewing indignation in his countenance.

Then said the *Interpreter* to *Christian*, *Hast thou considered all these things ?*

Chr. Yes, and they put me in *hope* and *fear*.

*Inter.* Well, keep all things so in thy mind, that they may be as a *Goat* in thy sides, to prick thee forward in the way thou must go. Then *Christian* began to gird up his loins, and to address himself to his Journey. Then said the *Interpreter*, The Comforter be always with thee good *Christian*, to guide thee in the way that leads to the City.

So *Christian* went on his way, saying,

*Here I have seen things rare, and profitable ;  
 Things pleasant, dreadful, things to make me stable  
 In what I have begun to take in hand :  
 Then let me think on them, and understand  
 Wherefore they shewed me was, and let me be  
 Thankful, O good Interpreter, to thee.*

Now I saw in my Dream, that the highway up which *Christian* was to go, was fenced on either side with a Wall, and that Wall is called *Salvation*. Up this way therefore did burdened *Christian* run, but not without great difficulty, because of the load on his back. Isa. 26. 1.

He ran thus till he came at a place somewhat ascending; and upon that place stood a *Cross*, and a little below in the bottom, a Sepulchre. So I saw in my Dream, that just as *Christian* came up with the *Cross*, his burden loosed from off his Shoulders, and fell from off his back; and began to tumble, and so continued to do, till it came to the mouth of the Sepulchre, where it fell in, and I saw it no more.<sup>1</sup>

Then was *Christian* glad and lightsome, and said with a merry heart, *He hath given me rest, by his sorrow; and life, by his death*. Then he stood still a while, to look and wonder; for it was very surprizing to him, that the sight of the *Cross* should thus ease him of his burden. He looked therefore, and looked again, even till the springs that were in his head sent the waters down his cheeks. Now as he stood looking and weeping, behold three shining ones came to him, and saluted him, with *Peace be to thee*: so the first said to him, *Thy sins be forgiven*. The second, stript him of his Rags, and cloathed him with change of Raiment. The third also set a mark in his fore-head, and gave him a Roll with a Seal upon it, which he bid him look on as he ran, and that he should give it in at the *Cœlestial Gate*: so they When God releases us of our guilt and burden, we are as those that leap for joy.

Mark 2. 5.  
Zech. 12. 10.  
Zech. 3. 4.  
Eph. 1. 13.

<sup>1</sup> Who's this; the Pilgrim. How! 'tis very true  
Old things are past away, all's become new.  
Strange! he's another Man upon my word,  
They be fine Feathers that make a fine Bird.

went their way. Then *Christian* gave three leaps for joy, and went on singing,

*A Christian  
can sing tho'  
alone, when  
God doth  
give him the  
joy of his  
heart.*

*Thus far did I come loaden with my sin ;  
Nor could ought ease the grief that I was in,  
Till I came hither : What a place is this !  
Must here be the beginning of my bliss ?  
Must here the burden fall from off my back ?  
Must here the strings that bound it to me, crack ?  
Blest Cross ! blest Sepulchre ! blest rather be  
The Man that there was put to shame for me.*

I saw then in my Dream that he went on thus, even until he came at a bottom, where he saw, a little out of the way, three men fast asleep with Fetters upon their heels. The name of the one was *Simple*, another *Sloth*, and the third *Presumption*.

*Simple, Sloth,  
and Pre-  
sumption.*

*Christian* then seeing them lie in this case, went to them, if peradventure he might awake them. And cried, You are like them that sleep on the top of a Mast, for the dead Sea is under you, a Gulf that hath no bottom : Awake therefore and come away, be willing also, and I will help you off with your Irons. He also told them, If he that goeth about like a roaring Lion comes by, you will certainly become a prey to his teeth. With that they lookt upon him, and began to reply in this sort : *Simple* said, *I see no danger ;* *Sloth* said, *Yet a little more sleep :* and *Presumption* said, *Every Fatt must stand upon his own bottom.* And so they lay down to sleep again, and *Christian* went on his way.

1 Pet. 5. 8.

*There is no  
persuasion  
will do, if  
God openeth  
not the eyes.*

Yet was he troubled to think, That men in that danger should so little esteem the kindness of him that so freely offered to help them ; both by awakening of them, counselling of them, and proffering to help them off with their Irons. And as he was troubled thereabout, he

espied two Men come tumbling over the Wall, on the left hand of the narrow way; and they made up apace to him. The name of the one was *Formalist*, and the name of the other *Hypocrisy*. So, as I said, they drew up unto him, who thus entered with them into discourse.

Chr. *Gentlemen, Whence came you, and whither do you go?* Christian talked with them.

*Form.* and *Hyp.* We were born in the Land of Vain-glory, and are going for praise to Mount *Sion*.

Chr. *Why came you not in at the Gate which standeth at the beginning of the way? Know you not that it is written, That he that cometh not in by the door, but climbeth up some other way, the same is a thief and a robber?* Joh. 10. 1.

*Form.* and *Hyp.* They said, That to go to the Gate for entrance, was by all their Country-men counted too far about; and that therefore their usual way was to make a short cut of it, and to climb over the wall as they had done.

Chr. *But will it not be counted a Trespass against the Lord of the City whither we are bound, thus to violate his revealed will?*

*Form.* and *Hyp.* They told him, That as for that, he needed not to trouble his head thereabout: for what they did, they had custom for; and could produce, if need were, Testimony that would witness it, for more then a thousand years. They that come into the way, but not by the door, think that they can say something in vindication of their own Practice.

Chr. *But, said Christian, Will your Practice stand a Trial at Law?*

*Form.* and *Hyp.* They told him, That Custom, it being of so long a standing, as above a thousand years, would doubtless now be admitted as a thing legal, by an Impartial Judge. And besides, said they, if we get into

the way, what's matter which way we get in ; if we are in, we are in : thou art but in the way, who, as we perceive, came in at the Gate ; and we are also in the way, that came tumbling over the wall : Wherein now is thy condition better than ours ?

*Chr.* I walk by the *Rule* of my Master, you walk by the rude working of your fancies. You are counted thieves already, by the Lord of the way ; therefore I doubt you will not be found true men at the end of the way. You come in by yourselves without his direction, and shall go out by yourselves without his mercy.

To this they made him but little answer ; only they bid him look to himself. Then I saw that they went on every man in his way, without much conference one with another ; save that these two men told *Christian*, That, as to *Laws and Ordinances*, they doubted not but they should as conscientiously do them as he. Therefore said they, We see not wherein thou differest from us, but by the Coat that is on thy back, which was, as we tro, given thee by some of thy Neighbours, to hide the shame of thy nakedness.

Gal. 2. 16.

*Chr.* By Laws and Ordinances, you will not be saved, since you came not in by the door. And as for this Coat that is on my back, it was given me by the Lord of the place whither I go ; and that, as you say, to cover my nakedness with. And I take it as a token of his kindness to me, for I had nothing but rags before. And besides, thus I comfort myself as I go : Surely, think I, when I come to the Gate of the City, the Lord thereof will know me for good, since I have his Coat on my back ; a Coat that he gave me freely in the day that he stript me of my rags. I have moreover a mark in my forehead, of which perhaps you have taken no notice,

*Christian has got his Lords Coat on his back, and is comforted therewith, he is comforted also with his Mark, and his Roll.*



which one of my Lord's most intimate Associates, fixed there in the day that my burden fell off my shoulders. I will tell you moreover, that I had then given me a Roll sealed to comfort me by reading, as I go on in the way ; I was also bid to give it in at the Cœlestial Gate, in token of my certain going in after it : all which things I doubt you want, and want them, because you came not in at the Gate.

To these things they gave him no answer, only they looked upon each other and *laughed*. Then I saw that they went on all, save that *Christian* kept before, who had no more talk but with himself, and that sometimes sighingly, and sometimes comfortably : also he would be often reading in the Roll that one of the shining ones gave him, by which he was refreshed.

*Christian has  
talk with  
himself,*

I beheld then, that they all went on till they came to the foot of the Hill Difficulty, at the bottom of which was a Spring. There was also in the same place two other ways besides that which came straight from the Gate ; one turned to the left hand, and the other to the right, at the bottom of the Hill : but the narrow way lay right up the Hill (and the name of the going up the side of the Hill, is called *Difficulty*). *Christian* now went to the Spring and drank thereof to refresh himself, and then began to go up the Hill ; saying,

*He comes to  
the hill Diffi-  
culty. ,*

*Isa. 49. 10*

*The Hill though high, I covet to ascend ;  
The difficulty will not me offend ;  
For I perceive the way to life lies here ;  
Come, pluck up, Heart ; lets neither faint nor fear :  
Better, tho' difficult, th'right way to go,  
Than wrong, though easy, where the end is wo.*

The other two also came to the foot of the Hill. But when they saw that the Hill was steep and high, and that

there were two other ways to go; and supposing also, that these two ways might meet again, with that up which *Christian* went, on the other side of the Hill: Therefore they were resolved to go in those ways (now the name of one of those ways was *Danger*, and the name of the other *Destruction*.) So the one took the way which is called *Danger*, which led him into a great Wood; and the other took directly up the way to *Destruction*, which led him into a wide field full of dark Mountains, where he stumbled and fell, and rose no more.<sup>1</sup>

*The danger of turning out of the way.*

I looked then after *Christian*, to see him go up the Hill, where I perceived he fell from running to going, and from going to clambering upon his hands and his knees, because of the steepness of the place. Now about the midway to the top of the Hill, was a pleasant *Arbour*, made by the Lord of the Hill, for the refreshing of weary Travellers. Thither therefore *Christian* got, where also he sat down to rest him. Then he pull'd his Roll out of his bosom and read therein to his comfort; he also now began afresh to take a review of the Coat or Garment that was given him as he stood by the Cross. Thus pleasing himself a while, he at last fell into a slumber, and thence into a fast sleep, which detained him in that place until it was almost night, and in his sleep his Roll fell out of his hand. Now as he was sleeping, there came one to him and awaked him saying, *Go to the Ant, thou sluggard, consider her ways and be wise:* and with that *Christian* suddenly started up, and sped him on his way, and went apace till he came to the top of the Hill.

*A ward of grace.*

*He that sleeps is a loser.*

Prov. 6. 6.

<sup>1</sup> Shall they who wrong begin yet rightly end?  
 Shall they at all have safety for their friend?  
 No, no, in head-strong manner they set out,  
 And headlong will they fall at last no doubt.

Now when he was got up to the top of the Hill, there came two Men running against him amain; the name of the one was *Timorous*, and the other *Mistrust*. To whom *Christian* said, Sirs, what's the matter you run the wrong way? *Timorous* answered, That they were going to the City of *Zion*, and had got up that *difficult* place; but, said he, the further we go, the more danger we meet with, wherefore we turned, and are going back again.

*Christian meets with Mistrust and Timorous.*

Yes, said *Mistrust*, for just before us lie a couple of Lions in the way, whether sleeping or waking we know not; and we could not think, if we came within reach, but they would presently pull us in pieces.

*Chr.* Then said *Christian*, You make me afraid, but whither shall I fly to be safe? If I go back to mine own Country, *That* is prepared for Fire and Brimstone; and I shall certainly perish there. If I can get to the *Cœlestial* City, I am sure to be in safety there. I must venture: To go back is nothing but death, to go forward is fear of death, and life everlasting beyond it. I will yet go forward. So *Mistrust* and *Timorous* ran down the Hill; and *Christian* went on his way. But thinking again of what he heard from the men, he felt in his bosom for his Roll, that he might read therein and be comforted; but he felt and found it not. Then was *Christian* in great distress, and knew not what to do, for he wanted that which used to relieve him, and that which should have been his Pass into the *Cœlestial* City. Here therefore he began to be much perplexed, and knew not what to do; at last he bethought himself that he had slept in the *Arbour* that is on the side of the Hill: and falling down upon his knees, he asked God forgiveness for that his foolish Fact; and then went back to look for his Roll. But all the way he went back, who can sufficiently set forth the sorrow of *Christian's*

*Christian shakes off fear.*

*Christian missed his Roll, wherein he used to take Comfort.*

*He is perplexed for his Roll.*

heart? sometimes he sighed, sometimes he wept, and often times he chid himself, for being so foolish to fall asleep in that place which was erected only for a little refreshment for his weariness. Thus therefore he went back; carefully looking on this side, and on that, all the way as he went, if happily he might find his Roll, that had been his comfort so many times in his Journey. He went thus till he came again within sight of the *Arbour*, where he sat and slept; but that sight renewed his sorrow the more, by bringing again, even afresh, his evil of sleeping into his mind. Thus therefore he now went on bewailing his sinful sleep, saying, *O wretched man that I am, that I should sleep in the daytime! that I should sleep in the midst of difficulty! that I should so indulge the flesh, as to use that rest for ease to my flesh, which the Lord of the Hill hath erected only for the relief of the spirits of Pilgrims! How many steps have I took in vain! (Thus it happened to Israel for their sin, they were sent back again by the way of the Red-Sea) and I am made to tread those steps with sorrow, which I might have trod with delight, had it not been for this sinful sleep. How far might I have been on my way by this time! I am made to tread those steps thrice over, which I needed not to have trod but once: Yea now also I am like to be benighted, for the day is almost spent. O that I had not slept! Now by this time he was come to the Arbour again, where for a while he sat down and wept, but at last (as Christian would have it) looking sorrowfully down under the Settle, there he espied his Roll; the which he with trembling and haste catch't up, and put it into his bosom; but who can tell how joyful this Man was, when he had gotten his Roll again! For this Roll was the assurance of his life and acceptance at the desired*

Christian  
bewails his  
foolish sleep-  
ing.

Rev. 2. 5.

1 Thess. 5. 7.

8.

Christian  
findeth his  
Roll where he  
lost it.

Haven. Therefore he laid it up in his bosom, gave thanks to God for directing his eye to the place where it lay, and with joy and tears betook himself again to his Journey. But Oh how nimbly now, did he go up the rest of the Hill! Yet before he got up, the Sun went down upon *Christian*; and this made him again recall the vanity of his sleeping to his remembrance, and thus he again began to condole with himself: *Oh thou sinful sleep! how for thy sake am I like to be benighted in my Journey! I must walk without the Sun, darkness must cover the path of my feet, and I must hear the noise of doleful Creatures, because of my sinful sleep!* Now also he remembered the story that *Mistrust* and *Timorous* told him of, how they were frightened with the sight of the Lions. Then said *Christian* to himself again, These Beasts range in the night for their prey, and if they should meet with me in the dark, how should I shift them? how should I escape being by them torn in pieces? Thus he went on his way, but while he was thus bewailing his unhappy miscarriage, he lift up his eyes, and behold there was a very stately Palace before him, the name of which was *Beautiful*, and it stood just by the High-way side.

So I saw in my Dream, that he made haste and went forward, that if possible he might get Lodging there; now before he had gone far, he entered into a very narrow passage, which was about a furlong off of the Porter's Lodge, and looking very narrowly before him as he went, he espied two Lions in the way. Now, thought he, I see the dangers that *Mistrust* and *Timorous*, were driven back by. (The Lions were Chained, but he saw not the Chains.) Then he was afraid, and thought also himself to go back after them, for he thought nothing but death was before him: But the *Porter* at the Lodge,

Mar. 13. 34. whose Name is *Watchful*, perceiving that *Christian* made a halt, as if he would go back, cried unto him, saying, Is thy strength so small? fear not the Lions, for they are Chained: and are placed there for trial of faith where it is; and for discovery of those that have none: keep in the midst of the Path, and no hurt shall come unto thee.<sup>1</sup>

Then I saw that he went on, trembling for fear of the Lions; but taking good heed to the directions of the *Porter*; he heard them roar, but they did him no harm. Then he clapt his hands, and went on, till he came and stood before the Gate where the *Porter* was. Then said *Christian* to the *Porter*, Sir, What house is this? and may I lodge here to night? The *Porter* answered, This House was built by the Lord of the Hill: and he built it for the relief and security of Pilgrims. The *Porter* also asked whence he was, and whither he was going?

*Chr.* I am come from the City of *Destruction*, and am going to Mount *Zion*, but because the Sun is now set, I desire, if I may, to lodge here to-night.

*Por.* What is your name?

Gen. 9. 27. *Chr.* My name is now *Christian*; but my name at the first was *Graceless*: I came of the Race of *Japhet*, whom God will perswade to dwell in the Tents of *Shem*.

*Por.* But how doth it happen you come so late, the Sun is set?

*Chr.* I had been here sooner, but that, wretched man that I am! I slept in the *Arbour* that stands on the

<sup>1</sup> Difficulty is behind, Fear is before,  
Though he's got on the Hill, the Lions roar;  
A Christian man is never long at ease,  
When one fright's gone, another doth him seize.

Hill side ; nay, I had notwithstanding that, been here much sooner, but that in my sleep I lost my Evidence, and came without it to the brow of the Hill ; and then feeling for it, and finding it not, I was forced with sorrow of heart, to go back to the place where I slept my sleep, where I found it, and now I am come.

*Por.* Well, I will call out one of the Virgins of this place, who will, if she likes your talk, bring you in to the rest of the Family, according to the Rules of the House. So *Watchful* the *Porter* rang a Bell, at the sound of which, came out at the door of the House, a Grave and Beautiful Damsel, named *Discretion*, and asked why she was called.

The *Porter* answered, This Man is in a Journey from the City of *Destruction* to Mount *Zion*, but being weary, and benighted, he asked me if he might lodge here to night ; so I told him I would call for thee, who after discourse had with him, mayest do as seemeth thee good, even according to the Law of the House.

Then she asked him whence he was, and whither he was going, and he told her. She asked him also, how he got into the way, and he told her ; Then she asked him, What he had seen, and met with in the way, and he told her ; and last, she asked his name, so he said, It is *Christian* ; and I have so much the more a desire to lodge here to night, because, by what I perceive, this place was built by the Lord of the Hill, for the relief and security of Pilgrims. So she smiled, but the water stood in her eyes : And after a little pause, she said, I will call forth two or three more of the Family. So she ran to the door, and called out *Prudence*, *Piety*, and *Charity*, who after a little more discourse with him, had him in to the Family ; and many of them meeting him at the

threshold of the House, said, Come in thou blessed of the Lord ; this House was built by the Lord of the Hill, on purpose to entertain such Pilgrims in. Then he bowed his head, and followed them into the House. So when he was come in, and set down, they gave him something to drink ; and consented together that until supper was ready, some of them should have some particular discourse with *Christian*, for the best improvement of time : and they appointed *Piety*, and *Prudence*, and *Charity* to discourse with him ; and thus they began.

*Piety dis-  
courses him.*

*Piety.* Come good *Christian*, since we have been so loving to you, to receive you into our House this night ; let us, if perhaps we may better ourselves thereby, talk with you of all things that have happened to you in your Pilgrimage.

*Chr.* With a very good will, and I am glad that you are so well disposed.

*Piety.* What moved you at first to betake yourself to a Pilgrim's life.

*How  
Christian  
was driven  
out of his  
own Country.*

*Chr.* I was driven out of my Native Country, by a dreadful sound that was in mine ears, to wit, That unavoidable destruction did attend me, if I abode in that place where I was.

*Piety.* But how did it happen that you came out of your Country this way ?

*How he got  
into the Way  
to Sion.*

*Chr.* It was as God would have it, for when I was under the fears of destruction, I did not know whither to go ; but by chance there came a Man, even to me, (as I was trembling and weeping) whose name is *Evangelist*, and he directed me to the Wicket-Gate, which else I should never have found ; and so set me into the way that hath led me directly to this House.

*Piety.* But did you not come by the House of the Interpreter ?



*Chr.* Yes, and did see such things there, the remembrance of which will stick by me as long as I live; specially three things, *to wit*, How Christ, in despite of Satan, maintains his work of Grace in the heart; how the Man had sinned himself quite out of hopes of God's mercy; and also the Dream of him that thought in his sleep the day of Judgment was come.

*A rehearsal of what he saw in the way.*

*Piety.* *Why? Did you hear him tell his Dream?*

*Chr.* Yes, and a dreadful one it was. I thought it made my heart ake as he was telling of it, but yet I am glad I heard it.

*Piety.* *Was that all you saw at the House of the Interpreter?*

*Chr.* No, he took me and had me where he shewed me a stately Palace, and how the People were clad in Gold that were in it; and how there came a venturous Man, and cut his way through the armed men that stood in the door to keep him out; and how he was bid to come in, and win eternal Glory. Methought those things did ravish my heart; I would have staid at that good Man's house a twelve-month, but that I knew I had further to go.

*Piety.* *And what saw you else in the way?*

*Chr.* Saw! Why I went but a little further, and I saw one, as I thought in my mind, hang bleeding upon the Tree; and the very sight of him made my burden fall off my back (for I groaned under a very heavy burden) but then it fell down from off me. 'Twas a strange thing to me, for I never saw such a thing before: Yea, and while I stood looking up, (for then I could not forbear looking) three shining ones came to me: one of them testified that my sins were forgiven me; another stript me of my Rags, and gave me this Broidered Coat which you see;

and the third set the mark which you see, in my forehead, and gave me this sealed Roll (and with that he plucked it out of his bosom.)

Piety. *But you saw more than this, did you not?*

Chr. The things that I have told you were the best: yet some other matters I saw, as namely I saw three Men, *Simple*, *Sloth*, and *Presumption*, lie asleep a little out of the way as I came, with Irons upon their heels; but do you think I could awake them! I also saw *Formality* and *Hypocrisy* come tumbling over the wall, to go, as they pretended, to *Sion*, but they were quickly lost; even as I myself did tell them, but they would not believe: but, above all, I found it *hard* work to get up this Hill, and as *hard* to come by the Lions' mouth; and truly if it had not been for the good Man, the Porter that stands at the Gate, I do not know, but that after all, I might have gone back again: but now I thank God I am here, and I thank you for receiving of me.

Then *Prudence* thought good to ask him a few questions, and desired his answer to them.

Pru. *Do you not think sometimes of the Country from whence you came?*

Chr. Yes, but with much shame and detestation; Truly, if I had been mindful of that Country from whence I came out, I might have had opportunity to have returned, but now I desire a better Country, that is, a Heavenly.

Pru. *Do you not yet bear away with you some of the things that then you were conversant withal?*

Chr. Yes, but greatly against my will; especially my inward and carnal cogitations; with which all my Country-men, as well as myself, were delighted; but now all those things are my grief: and might I but chuse

Prudence  
discourses  
him.

Christian's  
thoughts of  
his Native  
Country.  
Heb. 11. 15,  
16.

Christian  
distasted  
with carnal  
cogitations.

mine own things, I would chuse never to think of those things more; but when I would be doing of that which is best, that which is worst is with me.

Christian's choice. Rom. 7. 21.

*Pru. Do you not find sometimes, as if those things were vanquished, which at other times are your perplexity.*

*Chr. Yes, but that is but seldom; but they are to me Golden hours, in which such things happen to me.*

Christian's golden hours.

*Pru. Can you remember by what means you find your annoyances at times, as if they were vanquished?*

*Chr. Yes, when I think what I saw at the Cross, that will do it; and when I look upon my Broidered Coat, that will do it; also when I look into the Roll that I carry in my bosom, that will do it; and when my thoughts wax warm about whither I am going, that will do it.*

How Christian gets power against his corruptions.

*Pru. And what is it that makes you so desirous to go to Mount Zion?*

*Chr. Why, there I hope to see him alive, that did hang dead on the Cross; and there I hope to be rid of all those things, that to this day are in me, an annoyance to me; there they say there is no death, and there I shall dwell with such Company as I like best. For to tell you truth, I love him, because I was by him eased of my burden, and I am weary of my inward sickness; I would fain be where I shall die no more, and with the Company that shall continually cry *Holy, Holy, Holy.**

Why Christian would be at Mount Zion. Isa. 25. 8. Rev. 21. 4.

*Then said Charity to Christian, Have you a family? are you a married man?*

Charity discourses him.

*Chr. I have a Wife and four small Children.*

*Cha. And why did you not bring them along with you?*

*Chr. Then Christian wept, and said, Oh how willingly would I have done it, but they were all of them utterly averse to my going on Pilgrimage.*

Christian's love to his Wife and Children.

Cha. *But you should have talked to them, and have endeavoured to have shewn them the danger of being behind.*

Gen. 19. 14.

Chr. So I did, and told them also what God had shewed to me of the destruction of our City; but I seemed to them as one that mocked, and they believed me not.

Cha. *And did you pray to God that he would bless your counsel to them?*

Chr. Yes, and that with much affection; for you must think that my Wife and poor Children were very dear unto me.

Cha. *But did you tell them of your own sorrow, and fear of destruction? for I suppose that destruction was visible enough to you?*

Christian's fears of perishing might be read in his very countenance.

Chr. Yes, over, and over, and over. They might also see my fears in my countenance, in my tears, and also in my trembling under the apprehension of the Judgment that did hang over our heads; but all was not sufficient to prevail with them to come with me.

Cha. *But what could they say for themselves why they came not?*

The cause why his Wife and Children did not go with him.

Chr. Why, my Wife was afraid of losing this World; and my Children were given to the foolish delights of youth: so what by one thing, and what by another, they left me to wander in this manner alone.

Cha. *But did you not with your vain life, damp all that you by words used by way of perswasion to bring them away with you?*

Chr. Indeed I cannot commend my life; for I am conscious to myself of many failings: therein, I know also that a man by his conversation, may soon overthrow what by argument or perswasion he doth labour to fasten

upon others for their good : Yet, this I can say, I was very wary of giving them occasion, by any unseemly action, to make them averse to going on Pilgrimage. Yea, for this very thing, they would tell me I was too precise, and that I denied myself of things (for their sakes) in which they saw no evil. Nay, I think I may say, that, if what they saw in me did hinder them, it was my great tenderness in sinning against God, or of doing any wrong to my Neighbour.

*Christian's good conversation before his Wife and Children.*

Cha. *Indeed Cain hated his Brother, because his own works were evil, and his Brother's righteous ; and if thy Wife and Children have been offended with thee for this, they thereby shew themselves to be implacable to good ; and thou hast delivered thy soul from their blood.*

*1 John 3. 12. Christian clear of their blood if they perish. Ezek. 3. 19.*

Now I saw in my Dream, that thus they sat talking together until supper was ready. So when they had made ready, they sat down to meat ; Now the Table was furnished with fat things, and with Wine that was well refined ; and all their talk at the Table, was about the LORD of the Hill : As namely, about what He had done, and wherefore He did what He did, and why He had builded that House : and by what they said, I perceived that He had been a *great Warrior*, and had fought with and slain him that had the power of death, but not without great danger to himself, which made me love him the more.

*What Christian had to his supper.*

*Their talk at supper-time.*

*Heb. 2. 14, 15.*

For, as they said, and as I believe (said *Christian*) he did it with the loss of much blood ; but that which put Glory of Grace into all he did, was, that he did it out of pure love to his Country. And besides, there were some of them of the Household that said, they had seen and spoke with him since he did die on the Cross ; and they have attested, that they had it from his own lips, that

he is such a lover of poor Pilgrims, that the like is not to be found from the East to the West.

They moreover gave an instance of what they affirmed, and that was, He had stript himself of his glory that he might do this for the Poor ; and that they heard him say and affirm, That he would not dwell in the Mountain of *Zion* alone. They said moreover, That he had made many Pilgrims Princes, though by nature they were Beggars born, and their original had been the *Dung-hill*.

*Christ makes  
Princes of  
Beggars.  
1 Sam. 2. 8.  
Ps. 113. 7.*

Thus they discoursed together till late at night, and after they had committed themselves to their Lord for Protection, they betook themselves to rest. The Pilgrim they laid in a large upper Chamber, whose window opened towards the Sun rising ; the name of the Chamber was *Peace*, where he slept till break of day ; and then he awoke and sang,

*Christian's  
bed-chamber.*

*Where am I now ! is this the love and care  
Of Jesus, for the men that Pilgrims are !  
Thus to provide ! That I should be forgiven !  
And dwell already the next door to Heaven !*

So in the Morning they all got up, and after some more discourse, they told him that he should not depart, till they had shewed him the *Rarities* of that place. And first they had him into the Study, where they shewed him Records of the greatest Antiquity ; in which, as I remember my Dream, they shewed him first the Pedigree of the Lord of the Hill, that he was the Son of the Ancient of Days, and came by an eternal Generation. Here also was more fully recorded the Acts that he had done, and the names of many hundreds that he had taken into his service ; and how he had placed them in

*Christian  
had into the  
Study, and  
what he saw  
there.*

such Habitations that could neither by length of Days nor decays of Nature, be dissolved.

Then they read to him some of the worthy Acts that some of his Servants had done. As how they had subdued Kingdoms, wrought Righteousness, obtained Promises, stopped the mouths of Lions, quenched the violence of Fire, escaped the edge of the Sword ; out of weakness were made strong, waxed valiant in fight, and turned to flight the Armies of the *Aliens*. Heb. 11. 33, 34.

Then they read again in another part of the Records of the House, where it was shewed how willing their Lord was to receive into his favour any, even any, though they in time past had offered great affronts to his Person and proceedings. Here also were several other Histories of many other famous things, of all which *Christian* had a view. As of things both Ancient and Modern ; together with Prophecies and Predictions of things that have their certain accomplishment, both to the dread and amazement of enemies, and the comfort and solace of Pilgrims.

The next day they took him and had him into the Armory ; where they shewed him all manner of Furniture, which their Lord had provided for Pilgrims, as Sword, Shield, Helmet, Breast plate, *All-Prayer*, and Shoes that would not wear out. And there was here enough of this to harness out as many men for the service of their Lord, as there be Stars in the Heaven for multitude. Christian had into the Armory.

They also shewed him some of the Engines with which some of his Servants had done wonderful things. They shewed him *Moses' Rod*, the Hammer and Nail with which *Jael* slew *Sisera*, the Pitchers, Trumpets, and Lamps too, with which *Gideon* put to flight the Armies of *Midian*. Then they shewed him the Ox's goad where-with *Shamgar* slew six hundred men. They shewed him Christian is made to see Ancient things.

also the Jaw bone with which *Samson* did such mighty feats ; they shewed him moreover the Sling and Stone with which *David* slew *Goliath* of *Gath* : and the Sword also with which their Lord will kill the Man of Sin, in the day that he shall rise up to the prey. They shewed him besides many excellent things, with which *Christian* was much delighted. This done, they went to their rest again.

Christian  
shewed the  
delectable  
Mountains.

Isa. 33. 16, 17.

Then I saw in my Dream, that on the morrow he got up to go forwards, but they desired him to stay till the next day also, and then said they, we will, if the day be clear, shew you the delectable Mountains ; which they said, would yet further add to his comfort ; because they were nearer the desired Haven, than the place where at present he was. So he consented and stayed. When the Morning was up, they had him to the top of the House, and bid him look South, so he did ; and behold at a great distance he saw a most pleasant Mountainous Country, beautified with Woods, Vineyards, Fruits of all sorts, Flowers also ; with Springs and Fountains, very delectable to behold. Then he asked the name of the Country, they said it was *Immanuel's Land* : and it is as common, said they, as this *Hill* is, to and for all the Pilgrims. And when thou comest there, from thence, thou mayest see to the Gate of the Cœlestial City, as the Shepherds that live there will make appear.

Christian  
sets forward.

Christian  
sent away  
Armed.

Now he bethought himself of setting forward, and they were willing he should : but first, said they, let us go again into the Armory, so they did ; and when he came there, they harnessed him from head to foot, with what was of proof, lest perhaps he should meet with assaults in the way. He being therefore thus accoutred walketh out with his friends to the Gate, and there he asked the



*Porter* if he saw any Pilgrims pass by,<sup>1</sup> Then the *Porter* answered, Yes.

*Chr.* Pray did you know him? said he.

*Por.* I asked his name, and he told me it was *Faithful*.

*Chr.* O, said *Christian*, I know him, he is my Townsman, my near Neighbour, he comes from the place where I was born: how far do you think he may be before?

*Porter.* He is got by this time below the Hill.

*Chr.* Well, said *Christian*, good *Porter* the Lord be with thee, and add to all thy blessings much increase, for the kindness that thou hast shewed to me.

*How Christian and the Porter greet at parting.*

Then he began to go forward, but *Discretion*, *Piety*, *Charity*, and *Prudence*, would accompany him down to the foot of the Hill. So they went on together, reiterating their former discourses till they came to go down the Hill. Then said *Christian*, As it was difficult coming up, so (so far as I can see) it is dangerous going down. Yes, said *Prudence*, so it is; for it is a hard matter for a man to go down into the valley of *Humiliation*, as thou art now, and to catch no slip by the way; therefore, said they, are we come out to accompany thee down the Hill. So he began to go down, but very warily, yet he caught a slip or two.

*The Valley of Humiliation.*

Then I saw in my Dream, that these good Companions, when *Christian* was gone down to the bottom of the Hill, gave him a loaf of Bread, a bottle of Wine, and a cluster of Raisins; and then he went on his way.

But now in this Valley of *Humiliation* poor *Christian* was hard put to it, for he had gone but a little way before he espied a foul *Fiend* coming over the field to

<sup>1</sup> Whilst *Christian* is among his godly friends,  
Their golden mouths make him sufficient 'mends,  
For all his griefs, and when they let him go,  
He's clad with northern steel from top to toe.

Christian no  
Armour for  
his back.

Christian's  
resolution  
on the ap-  
proach of  
Apollyon.

meet him ; his name is *Apollyon*. Then did *Christian* begin to be afraid, and to cast in his mind whether to go back, or to stand his ground. But he considered again, that he had no Armour for his back, and therefore thought that to turn the back to him, might give him greater advantage with ease to pierce him with his Darts ; therefore he resolved to venture, and stand his ground. For thought he, had I no more in mine eye, than the saving of my life, 'twould be the best way to stand.

So he went on, and *Apollyon* met him ; now the Monster was hideous to behold, he was cloathed with scales like a Fish (and they are his pride) he had Wings like a Dragon, feet like a Bear, and out of his belly came Fire and Smoke, and his mouth was as the mouth of a Lion. When he was come up to *Christian*, he beheld him with a disdainful countenance, and thus began to question with him.

*Apol.* *Whence come you and whither are you bound ?*

*Chr.* I am come from the City of *Destruction*, which is the place of all evil, and am going to the City of *Zion*.

*Apol.* *By this I perceive thou art one of my Subjects, for all that Country is mine ; and I am the Prince and God of it. How is it then that thou hast run away from thy King ? Were it not that I hope thou mayest do me more service, I would strike thee now at one blow to the ground.*

*Chr.* I was born indeed in your Dominions, but your service was hard, and your wages such as a man could not live on, *for the Wages of Sin is death ;* therefore when I was come to years, I did as other considerate persons do, look out, if perhaps I might mend myself.

*Apol.* *There is no Prince that will thus lightly lose his Subjects ; neither will I as yet lose thee. But since thou complainest of thy service and wages be content to go*

Discourse  
betwixt  
Christian  
and Apol-  
lyon.

*back ; what our Country will afford, I do here promise to give thee.* Apollyon's flattery.

*Chr.* But I have let myself to another, even to the King of Princes, and how can I with fairness go back with thee ?

*Apol.* *Thou hast done in this, according to the Proverb,* Apollyon undervalues Christ's service. *changed a bad for a worse : but it is ordinary for those that have professed themselves his Servants, after a while to give him the slip, and return again to me : do thou so too, and all shall be well.*

*Chr.* I have given him my faith, and sworn my Allegiance to him ; how then can I go back from this, and not be hanged as a Traitor ?

*Apol.* *Thou didest the same to me, and yet I am willing to pass by all, if now thou wilt yet turn again, and go back.* Apollyon pretends to be merciful.

*Chr.* What I promised thee was in my non-age ; and besides, I count that the Prince under whose Banner now I stand, is able to absolve me ; yea, and to pardon also what I did as to my compliance with thee : and besides, (O thou destroying *Apollyon*) to speak truth, I like his Service, his Wages, his Servants, his Government, his Company, and Country better then thine : and therefore leave off to perswade me further, I am his Servant, and I will follow him.

*Apol.* *Consider again when thou art in cool blood, what thou art like to meet with in the way that thou goest. Thou knowest that for the most part, his Servants come to an ill end, because they are transgressors against me, and my ways : How many of them have been put to shameful deaths ! and besides, thou countest his service better than mine, whereas he never came yet from the place where he is, to deliver any that served him out of our hands : but* Apollyon pleads the grievous ends of Christians to dissuade Christian from persisting in his way.

*as for me, how many times, as all the World very well knows, have I delivered, either by power or fraud, those that have faithfully served me, from him and his, though taken by them, and so I will deliver thee.*

*Chr.* His forbearing at present to deliver them, is on purpose to try their love, whether they will cleave to him to the end: and as for the ill end thou sayest they come to, that is most glorious in their account: For for present deliverance, they do not much expect it; for they stay for their Glory, and then they shall have it, when their Prince comes in his, and the Glory of the Angels.

*Apol.* *Thou hast already been unfaithful in thy service to him, and how dost thou think to receive wages of him?*

*Chr.* Wherein, O *Apollyon*, have I been unfaithful to him?

*Apollyon  
pleads  
Christian's  
infirmities  
against him.*

*Apol.* *Thou didst faint at first setting out, when thou wast almost choked in the Gulf of Dispond. Thou diddest attempt wrong ways to be rid of thy burden whereas thou shouldest have stayed till thy Prince had taken it off: Thou didst sinfully sleep and lose thy choice thing: thou wast also almost perswaded to go back, at the sight of the Lions; and when thou talkest of thy Journey, and of what thou hast heard, and seen, thou art inwardly desirous of vain-glory in all that thou sayest or doest.*

*Chr.* All this is true, and much more, which thou hast left out; but the Prince whom I serve and honour, is merciful, and ready to forgive: but besides, these infirmities possessed me in thy Country, for there I sucked them in, and I have groaned under them, been sorry for them, and have obtained pardon of my Prince.

*Apol.* Then *Apollyon* broke out into a grievous rage, saying, *I am an Enemy to this Prince: I hate his Person,*

*his Laws, and People: I am come out on purpose to withstand thee.* Apollyon in a rage falls upon Christian.

*Chr.* *Apollyon* beware what you do, for I am in the King's High-way, the way of Holiness, therefore take heed to yourself.

*Apol.* Then *Apollyon* straddled quite over the whole breadth of the way, and said, I am void of fear in this matter, prepare thyself to die, for I swear by my Infernal Den thou shalt go no further, here will I spill thy soul; and with that, he threw a flaming Dart at his breast, but *Christian* had a Shield in his hand, with which he caught it, and so prevented the danger of that. Then did *Christian* draw, for he saw 'twas time to bestir him; and *Apollyon* as fast made at him, throwing Darts as thick as Hail; by the which, notwithstanding all that *Christian* could do to avoid it, *Apollyon* wounded him in his head, his hand and foot; this made *Christian* give a little back: *Apollyon* therefore followed his work amain, and *Christian* again took courage, and resisted as manfully as he could. This sore Combat lasted for above half a day, even till *Christian* was almost quite spent. For you must know that *Christian* by reason of his wounds, must needs grow weaker and weaker. Christian wounded in his understanding, faith and conversation.

Then *Apollyon* espying his opportunity, began to gather up close to *Christian*, and wrestling with him, gave him a dreadful fall; and with that, *Christian's* Sword flew out of his hand. Then said *Apollyon*, *I am sure of thee now*; and with that, he had almost prest him to death, so that *Christian* began to despair of life. But as God would have it, while *Apollyon* was fetching of his last blow, thereby to make a full end of this good Man, *Christian* nimbly reached out his hand for his Sword, and caught it, saying, *Rejoice not against me, O mine Enemy!* Apollyon casteth down to the ground Christian. Mic. 7. 8.

Christian's  
victory over  
Apollyon.

*when I fall, I shall arise*; and with that, gave him a deadly thrust, which made him give back, as one that had received his mortal wound: *Christian* perceiving that, made at him again, saying, *Nay, in all these things we are more than Conquerors*. And with that, *Apollyon* spread forth his Dragon's wings, and sped him away, that *Christian* saw him no more.<sup>1</sup>

Rom. 8. 37.

Jam. 4. 7.

A brief relation  
of the  
Combat by the  
spectator.

In this combat no man can imagine, unless he had seen and heard as I did, what yelling, and hideous roaring *Apollyon* made all the time of the fight, he spake like a Dragon: and on the other side, what sighs and groans brast from *Christian's* heart. I never saw him all the while, give so much as one pleasant look, till he perceived he had wounded *Apollyon* with his two edged Sword, then indeed he did smile, and look upward: but 'twas the dreadfullest sight that ever I saw.

Christian  
gives God  
thanks for  
deliverance.

So when the Battle was over, *Christian* said, I will here give thanks to him that hath delivered me out of the mouth of the Lion; to him that did help me against *Apollyon*: and so he did, saying,

*Great Beelzebub, the Captain of this Fiend,  
Design'd my ruin; therefore to this end  
He sent him harness out, and he with rage  
That Hellish was, did fiercely me engage:  
But blessed Michael helped me, and I  
By dint of Sword did quickly make him fly;  
Therefore to him let me give lasting praise,  
And thank and bless his holy name always.*

Then there came to him a hand, with some of the

<sup>1</sup> A more unequal match can hardly be, *Christian* must fight an Angel; but you see, The valiant man by handling Sword and Shield, Doth make him, tho' a Dragon, quit the field,

leaves of the Tree of Life, the which *Christian* took, and applied to the wounds that he had received in the Battle, and was healed immediately. He also sat down in that place to eat Bread, and to drink of the Bottle that was given him a little before; so being refreshed, he addressed himself to his Journey, with his Sword drawn in his hand, for he said, I know not but some other Enemy may be at hand. But he met with no other affront from *Apollyon*, quite through this Valley.

*Christian goes on his Journey with his Sword drawn in his hand.*

Now at the end of this Valley, was another, called the Valley of the *Shadow of Death*, and *Christian* must needs go through it, because the way to the *Cœlestial City* lay through the midst of it: Now this Valley is a very solitary place. The Prophet *Jeremiah* thus describes it, *A Wilderness, A Land of deserts, and of Pits, a Land of drought, and of the shadow of death, a Land that no Man* (but a Christian) *passeth through, and where no man dwelt.*

*The Valley of the Shadow of Death.*

*Jer. 2. 6.*

Now here *Christian* was worse put to it than in his fight with *Apollyon*, as by the sequel you shall see.

I saw then in my Dream, that when *Christian* was got to the Borders of the Shadow of Death, there met him two Men, Children of them that brought up an evil report of the good Land, making haste to go back: to whom *Christian* spake as follows.

*The children of the Spies go back. Numb. 13.*

Chr. *Whither are you going?*

Men. They said, Back, back; and we would have you to do so too, if either life or peace is prized by you.

Chr. *Why? what's the matter?* said *Christian*.

Men. Matter! said they; we were going that way as you are going, and went as far as we durst; and indeed we were almost past coming back, for had we gone a little further, we had not been here to bring the news to thee.

Chr. *But what have you met with, said Christian?*

Ps. 44. 19.  
Ps. 107. 10.

Men. Why we were almost in the Valley of the Shadow of death, but that by good hap we looked before us, and saw the danger before we came to it.

Chr. *But what have you seen, said Christian?*

Job. 3. 5.  
ch. 10. 22.

Men. Seen! why the valley itself, which is as dark as pitch; we also saw there the Hobgoblins, Satyrs, and Dragons of the Pit: we heard also in that Valley a continual howling and yelling, as of a people under unutterable misery; who there sat bound in affliction and Irons: and over that Valley hang the discouraging Clouds of confusion, death also doth always spread his wings over it: in a word, it is every whit dreadful, being utterly without Order.

Chr. *Then said Christian, I perceive not yet, by what you have said, but that this is my way to the desired Haven.*

Jer. 2. 6.

Men. Be it thy way, we will not chuse it for ours; so they parted, and *Christian* went on his way, but still with his Sword drawn in his hand, for fear lest he should be assaulted.

Ps. 69. 14.

I saw then in my Dream, so far as this Valley reached, there was on the right hand a very deep Ditch; That Ditch is it into which the blind have led the blind in all Ages, and have both there miserably perished. Again, behold on the left hand, there was a very dangerous Quag, into which, if even a good Man falls, he can find no bottom for his foot to stand on; Into that Quag *King David once did fall*, and had no doubt therein been smothered, had not He that is able, pluckt him out.

The path-way was here also exceeding narrow, and therefore good *Christian* was the more put to it; for when he sought in the dark to shun the ditch on the



one hand, he was ready to tip over into the mire on the other; also when he sought to escape the mire, without great carefulness he would be ready to fall into the ditch. Thus he went on, and I heard him here sigh bitterly: for besides the dangers mentioned above, the path-way was here so dark, that oftentimes when he lift up his foot to set forward, he knew not where, or upon what he should set it next.<sup>1</sup>

About the midst of this Valley, I perceived the mouth of Hell to be, and it stood also hard by the way side: Now thought *Christian*, what shall I do? And ever and anon the flame and smoke would come out in such abundance, with sparks and hideous noises, (things that cared not for *Christian's* Sword, as did *Apollyon* before) that he was forced to put up his Sword, and betake himself to another weapon called *All-prayer*, so he cried Eph. 6. 18. in my hearing, *O Lord I beseech thee deliver my Soul.* Ps. 116. 4. Thus he went on a great while, yet still the flames would be reaching towards him: also he heard doleful voices, and rushings to and fro, so that sometimes he thought he should be torn in pieces, or trodden down like mire in the Streets. This frightful sight was seen, and these dreadful noises were heard by him for several miles together: and coming to a place, where he thought he heard a company of *Fiends* coming forward to meet him, he stopt, and began to muse what he had best to do. Sometimes he had half a thought to go back. Then Christian put to a stand, but for a while. again he thought he might be half way through the Valley; he remembered also how he had already van-

<sup>1</sup> Poor man where art thou now, thy day is night,  
 Good man be not cast down, thou yet art right,  
 Thy way to heaven lies by the gates of hell;  
 Cheer up, hold out, with thee it shall go well.

quished many a danger : and that the danger of going back might be much more, than for to go forward, so he resolved to go on. Yet the *Fiends* seemed to come nearer and nearer, but when they were come even almost at him, he cried out with a most vehement voice, *I will walk in the strength of the Lord God*; so they gave back, and came no further.

One thing I would not let slip, I took notice that now poor *Christian* was so confounded, that he did not know his own voice : and thus I perceived it : Just when he was come over against the mouth of the burning Pit, one of the wicked ones got behind him, and stept up softly to him, and whisperingly suggested many grievous blasphemies to him, which he verily thought had proceeded from his own mind. This put *Christian* more to it than any thing that he met with before, even to think that he should now blaspheme him that he loved so much before; yet if he could have helped it, he would not have done it : but he had not the discretion neither to stop his ears, nor to know from whence those blasphemies came.

Christian made believe that he spake blasphemies, when 'twas Satan that suggested them into his mind.

When *Christian* had travelled in this disconsolate condition some considerable time, he thought he heard the voice of a man, as going before him, saying, *Though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will fear none ill, for thou art with me.*

Then was he glad, and that for these reasons :

First, Because he gathered from thence that some who feared God were in this Valley as well as himself.

Secondly, For that he perceived God was with them, though in that dark and dismal state; and why not, thought he, with me, though by reason of the impediment that attends this place, I cannot perceive it.

Ps. 23. 4.

Job. 9. 10.

Thirdly, For that he hoped (could he overtake them) to have company by and by. So he went on, and called to him that was before, but he knew not what to answer, for that he also thought himself to be alone : And by and by, the day broke ; then said *Christian*, *He hath turned the shadow of death into the morning.* Christian glad at break of day. Amos 5. 8.

Now morning being come, he looked back, not out of desire to return, but to see, by the light of the day, what hazards he had gone through in the dark. So he saw more perfectly the Ditch that was on the one hand, and the Quag that was on the other ; also how narrow the way was which led betwixt them both ; also now he saw the Hobgoblins, and Satyrs, and Dragons of the Pit, but all afar off, for after break of day, they came not nigh ; yet they were discovered to him, according to that which is written, *He discovereth deep things out of darkness,* Job 12. 22. *and bringeth out to light the shadow of death.*

Now was *Christian* much affected with his deliverance from all the dangers of his solitary way, which dangers, though he feared them more before, yet he saw them more clearly now, because the light of the day made them conspicuous to him ; and about this time the Sun was rising, and this was another mercy to *Christian* : for you must note, that though the first part of the Valley of the Shadow of Death was dangerous, yet this second part which he was yet to go, was, if possible, far more dangerous : for from the place where he now stood, even to the end of the Valley, the way was all along set so full of Snares, Traps, Gins, and Nets here, and so full of Pits, Pitfalls, deep holes and shelvings down there, that had it now been dark, as it was when he came the first part of the way, had he had a thousand souls, they had in reason been cast away ; but as I said, just The second part of this Valley very dangerous. Job 29. 3.

now the Sun was rising. Then said he, *His candle shineth on my head, and by his light I go through darkness.*

In this light therefore, he came to the end of the Valley. Now I saw in my Dream, that at the end of this Valley lay blood, bones, ashes, and mangled bodies of men, even of Pilgrims that had gone this way formerly : And while I was musing what should be the reason, I espied a little before me a Cave, where two Giants, *Pope* and *Pagan*, dwelt in old time, by whose Power and Tyranny the Men whose bones, blood, ashes, &c. lay there, were cruelly put to death. But by this place *Christian* went without much danger, whereat I somewhat wondered ; but I have learnt since, that *Pagan* has been dead many a day ; and as for the other, though he be yet alive, he is by reason of age, and also of the many shrewd brushes that he met with in his younger days, grown so crazy, and stiff in his joints, that he can now do little more then sit in his Cave's mouth, grinning at Pilgrims as they go by, and biting his nails, because he cannot come at them.

So I saw that *Christian* went on his way, yet at the sight of the *old Man*, that sat in the mouth of the *Cave*, he could not tell what to think, specially because he spake to him, though he could not go after him : saying, *You will never mend, till more of you be burned* : but he held his peace, and set a good face on't, and so went by, and catcht no hurt. Then sang *Christian*,

*O world of wonders ! (I can say no less)  
That I should be preserv'd in that distress  
That I have met with here ! O blessed be  
That hand that from it hath delivered me !  
Dangers in Darkness, Devils, Hell and Sin*

*Did compass me, while I this Vale was in :  
 Yea, Snares, and Pits, and Traps, and Nets did lie  
 My path about, that worthless silly I  
 Might have been catch't, intangled, and cast down :  
 But since I live, let JESUS wear the Crown.*

Now as *Christian* went on his way, he came to a little ascent, which was cast up on purpose that Pilgrims might see before them : up there therefore *Christian* went, and looking forward, he saw *Faithful* before him, upon his Journey. Then said *Christian* aloud, Ho, ho, So-ho ; stay and I will be your Companion. At that *Faithful* looked behind him, to whom *Christian* cried again, Stay, stay, till I come up to you : but *Faithful* answered, *No*, I am upon my life, and the Avenger of Blood is behind me. At this *Christian* was somewhat moved, and putting to all his strength, he quickly got up with *Faithful*, and did also over-run him, so the *last was first*. Then did *Christian* vain-gloriously smile, because he had gotten the start of his Brother : but not taking good heed to his feet, he suddenly stumbled and fell, and could not rise again, untill *Faithful* came up to help him.

*Christian overtakes Faithful.*

*Christian's fall, makes Faithful and he go lovingly together.*

Then I saw in my Dream, they went very lovingly on together ; and had sweet discourse of all things that had happened to them in their Pilgrimage, and thus *Christian* began.

*Chr.* *My honoured and well beloved Brother Faithful, I am glad that I have overtaken you ; and that God has so tempered our spirits, that we can walk as Companions in this so pleasant a path.*

*Faith.* I had thought dear friend, to have had your company quite from our Town, but you did get the start of me ; wherefore I was forced to come thus much of the way alone.

Chr. *How long did you stay in the City of Destruction, before you set out after me on your Pilgrimage?*

*Faith.* Till I could stay no longer; for there was great talk presently after you were gone out, that our City would in short time with Fire from Heaven be burned down to the ground.

*Their talk about the Country from whence they came.*

Chr. *What! Did your Neighbours talk so?*

*Faith.* Yes, 'twas for a while in every body's mouth.

Chr. *What, and did no more of them but you come out to escape the danger?*

*Faith.* Though there was, as I said, a great talk thereabout, yet I do not think they did firmly believe it. For in the heat of the discourse, I heard some of them deridingly speak of you, and of your desperate Journey, (for so they called this your Pilgrimage) but I did believe, and do still, that the end of our City will be with Fire and Brimstone from above: and therefore I have made mine escape.

Chr. *Did you hear no talk of Neighbour Pliable?*

*Faith.* Yes *Christian*, I heard that he followed you till he came at the Slough of *Dispond*; where, as some said, he fell in; but he would not be known to have so done: but I am sure he was soundly bedabbled with that kind of dirt.

Chr. *And what said the Neighbours to him?*

*How Pliable was accounted of when he got home.*

*Faith.* He hath since his going back been had greatly in derision, and that among all sorts of people: some do mock and despise him, and scarce will any set him on work. He is now seven times worse than if he had never gone out of the City.

Chr. *But why should they be so set against him, since they also despise the way that he forsook?*

*Faith.* Oh, they say, Hang him, he is a Turn-Coat, he

was not true to his profession. I think God has stirred up even his Enemies to hiss at him, and make him a Proverb, because he hath forsaken the way.

Jer. 29. 18,  
19.

Chr. *Had you no talk with him before you came out?*

*Faith.* I met him once in the Streets, but he leered away on the other side, as one ashamed of what he had done; so I spake not to him.

Chr. *Well, at my first setting out, I had hopes of that Man; but now I fear he will perish in the overthrow of the City, for it is happened to him, according to the true Proverb, The Dog is turned to his Vomit again, and the Sow that was Washed to her wallowing in the mire.*

*The Dog and Sow.*  
2 Peter 2. 22.

*Faith.* They are my fears of him too: But who can hinder that which will be?

Chr. Well Neighbour *Faithful*, said *Christian*, let us leave him; and talk of things that more immediately concern ourselves. *Tell me now, what you have met with in the way as you came; for I know you have met with some things, or else it may be writ for a wonder.*

*Faith.* I escaped the Slough that I perceived you fell into, and got up to the Gate without that danger; only I met with one whose name was *Wanton*, that had like to have done me a mischief.

*Faithful assaulted by Wanton.*

Chr. *'Twas well you escaped her Net; Joseph was hard put to it by her, and he escaped her as you did, but it had like to have cost him his life. But what did she do to you?*

Gen. 39.11-13

*Faith.* You cannot think (but that you know something) what a flattering tongue she had, she lay at me hard to turn aside with her, promising me all manner of content.

Chr. *Nay, she did not promise you the content of a good conscience.*

*Faith.* You know what I mean, all carnal and fleshly content.

Pro. 22. 14. Chr. *Thank God you have escaped her: The abhorred of the Lord shall fall into her Ditch.*

*Faith.* Nay, I know not whether I did wholly escape her, or no.

Pro. 5. 5. Chr. *Why, I tro you did not consent to her desires?*

Job 31. 1. *Faith.* No, not to defile myself; for I remembered an old writing that I had seen, which saith, *Her steps take hold of Hell.* So I shut mine eyes, because I would not be bewitched with her looks: then she railed on me, and I went my way.

Chr. *Did you meet with no other assault as you came?*

*Faith.* When I came to the foot of the Hill called *Difficulty*, I met with a very aged Man, who asked me, *What I was, and whither bound?* I told him, That I was a Pilgrim, going to the Cœlestial City: Then said the Old Man, *Thou lookest like an honest fellow; Wilt thou be content to dwell with me, for the wages that I shall give thee?* Then I asked him his name, and where he dwelt? He said his name was *Adam the first, and I dwell in the Town of Deceit.* I asked him then, What was his work? and what the wages that he would give? He told me, That his work was *many delights; and his wages, that I should be his Heir at last.* I further asked him, What House he kept, and what other Servants he had? so he told me, *That his House was maintained with all the dainties in the world, and that his Servants were those of his own begetting.* Then I asked, how many children he had? He said that he had but three

Eph. 4. 22. Daughters, *The lust of the flesh, the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life,* and that I should marry them, if I would. Then I asked, How long time he would have

*He is assaulted by Adam the first.*

1 Joh. 2. 16.



me live with him? And he told me, *As long as he lived himself.*

Chr. *Well, and what conclusion came the Old Man, and you to, at last?*

*Faith.* Why, at first, I found my self somewhat inclinable to go with the Man, for I thought he spake very fair; But looking in his forehead as I talked with him, I saw there written, *Put off the old Man with his deeds.*

Chr. *And how then?*

*Faith.* Then it came burning hot into my mind, whatever he said, and however he flattered, when he got me home to his House, he would sell me for a Slave. So I bid him forbear to talk, for I would not come near the door of his House. Then he reviled me, and told me that he would send such a one after me, that should make my way bitter to my soul: So I turned to go away from him: But just as I turned myself to go thence, I felt him take hold of my flesh, and give me such a deadly twitch back, that I thought he had pull'd part of me after himself; This made me cry *O wretched Man!* So I Rom. 7. 24. went on my way up the Hill.

Now when I had got about half way up, I looked behind me, and saw one coming after me, swift as the wind; so he overtook me just about the place where the Settle stands.

Chr. *Just there, said Christian, did I sit down to rest me; but being overcome with sleep, I there lost this Roll out of my bosom.*

*Faith.* But good Brother hear me out: So soon as the Man overtook me, he was but a word and a blow: for down he knockt me, and laid me for dead. But when I was a little come to myself again, I asked him wherefore he served me so? he said, Because of my secret inclining

to *Adam the first* ; and with that, he strook me another deadly blow on the breast, and beat me down backward, so I lay at his foot as dead as before. So when I came to myself again, I cried him mercy ; but he said, I know not how to show mercy, and with that knockt me down again. He had doubtless made an end of me, but that one came by, and bid him forbear.

Chr. *Who was that, that bid him forbear ?*

*Faith.* I did not know him at first, but as he went by, I perceived the holes in his hands, and in his side ; then I concluded that he was our Lord. So I went up the Hill.

*The temper of  
Moses.*

Chr. *That Man that overtook you, was Moses, he spareth none, neither knoweth he how to shew mercy to those that transgress his Law.*

*Faith.* I know it very well, it was not the first time that he has met with me. 'Twas he that came to me when I dwelt securely at home, and that told me, He would burn my House over my head, if I staid there.

Chr. *But did you not see the House that stood there on the top of that Hill, on the side of which Moses met you ?*

*Faith.* Yes, and the Lions too, before I came at it ; but for the Lions, I think they were asleep, for it was about Noon ; and because I had so much of the day before me, I passed by the Porter, and came down the Hill.

Chr. *He told me indeed that he saw you go by, but I wish you had called at the House ; for they would have shewed you so many Rarities, that you would scarce have forgot them to the day of your death. But pray tell me, did you meet nobody in the Valley of Humility ?*

*Faithful  
assaulted by  
Discontent.*

*Faith.* Yes, I met with one *Discontent*, who would willingly have perswaded me to go back again with him : his reason was, for that the Valley was altogether without

*Honour* ; he told me moreover, That there to go, was the way to disobey all my Friends, as *Pride, Arrogancy, Self-Conceit, Worldly-glory*, with others, who he knew, as he said, would be very much offended, if I made such a Fool of myself, as to wade through this Valley.

Chr. *Well, and how did you answer him ?*

*Faith.* I told him, That although all these that he named might claim kindred of me, and that rightly, (for indeed they were my Relations, *according to the flesh*) yet since I became a Pilgrim, they have disowned me, as I also have rejected them ; and therefore they were to me now, no more than if they had never been of my Lineage ; I told him moreover, That as to this Valley, he had quite misrepresented the thing : *for before Honour is Humility, and a haughty spirit before a fall.* Therefore said I, I had rather go through this Valley to the Honour that was so accounted by the wisest, than chuse that which he esteemed most worthy our affections.

Faithful's  
answer to  
Discontent.

Chr. *Met you with nothing else in that Valley ?*

*Faith.* Yes, I met with *Shame* ; But of all the Men that I met with in my Pilgrimage, he I think bears the wrong name : the other would be said nay, after a little argumentation, (and somewhat else) but this bold faced *Shame*, would never have done.

He is assault-  
ed with  
Shame.

Chr. *Why, what did he say to you ?*

*Faith.* What ! why he objected against Religion itself ; he said it was a pitiful low sneaking business for a Man to mind Religion ; he said that a tender conscience was an unmanly thing, and that for a Man to watch over his words and ways, so as to tye up himself from that hectoring liberty, that the brave spirits of the times accustom themselves unto, would make him the Ridicule of the times. He objected also, that but few of the Mighty,

1 Cor. 1. 26.  
ch. 3. 18.

Phil. 3. 7, 8. Rich, or Wise, were ever of my opinion ; nor any of them, before they were perswaded to be Fools, and to be of a  
 John 7. 48. voluntary fondness, to venture the loss of all, *for nobody else knows what.* He moreover objected the base and low estate and condition of those that were chiefly the Pilgrims of the times in which they lived, also their ignorance, and want of understanding in all natural Science. Yea, he did hold me to it at that rate also, about a great many more things than here I relate ; as, that it was a *shame* to sit whining and mourning under a Sermon, and a *shame* to come sighing and groaning home. That it was a shame to ask my Neighbour forgiveness for petty faults, or to make restitution where I had taken from any : he said also that Religion made a man grow strange to the great, because of a few vices (which he called by finer names) and made him own and respect the base, because of the same Religious fraternity. And is not this, said he, a *shame* ?

*Chr.* And what did you say to him ?

*Faith.* Say ! I could not tell what to say at first. Yea, he put me so to it, that my blood came up in my face, even this *Shame* fetch't it up, and had almost beat  
 Luke 16. 15. me quite off. But at last I began to consider, *That that which is highly esteemed among Men, is had in abomination with God.* And I thought again, This *Shame* tells me what *men* are, but it tells me nothing what *God*, or the *Word of God* is. And I thought moreover, That at the day of doom, we shall not be doomed to death or life, according to the hectoring spirits of the world ; but according to the Wisdom and Law of the Highest. Therefore thought I, what God says, is best, indeed is best, though all the Men in the world are against it. Seeing then, that God prefers his Religion, seeing God

prefers a tender Conscience, seeing they that make themselves Fools for the Kingdom of Heaven, are wisest ; and that the poor man that loveth Christ, is richer then the greatest Man in the world that hates him ; *Shame* depart, thou art an Enemy to my Salvation : shall I entertain thee against my Sovereign Lord ? How then shall I look him in the face at his coming ? Should I now be *ashamed* Mar. 8. 38. of his ways and Servants, how can I expect the blessing ? But indeed this *Shame* was a bold Villain ; I could scarce shake him out of my company ; yea, he would be haunting of me, and continually whispering me in the ear, with some one or other of the infirmities that attend Religion : but at last I told him, 'Twas but in vain to attempt further in this business ; for those things that he disdain'd, in those did I see most glory : And so at last I got past this *importunate* one. And when I had shaken him off then I began to sing

*The tryals that those men do meet withal  
That are obedient to the Heavenly call,  
Are manifold, and suited to the flesh,  
And come, and come, and come again afresh ;  
That now, or sometime else, we by them may  
Be taken, overcome, and cast away.  
O let the Pilgrims, let the Pilgrims then,  
Be vigilant, and quit themselves like men.*

Chr. *I am glad, my Brother, that thou didst withstand this Villain so bravely ; for of all, as thou sayst, I think he has the wrong name : for he is so bold as to follow us in the Streets, and to attempt to put us to shame before all men ; that is, to make us ashamed of that which is good : but if he was not himself audacious, he would never attempt to do as he does, but let us still resist him : for notwithstanding all his Bravadoes, he promoteth the*

Prov. 3. 35 *Fool, and none else.* The Wise shall Inherit Glory, said Solomon, but shame shall be the promotion of Fools.

*Faith.* I think we must cry to him for help against shame, that would have us be valiant for Truth upon the Earth.

*Chr.* You say true. But did you meet nobody else in that Valley?

*Faith.* No, not I, for I had Sun-shine all the rest of the way, through that, and also through the Valley of the Shadow of Death.

*Chr.* 'Twas well for you, I am sure it fared far otherwise with me. I had for a long season, as soon almost as I entered into that Valley, a dreadful Combat with that foul Fiend *Apollyon*: Yea, I thought verily he would have killed me; especially when he got me down, and crusht me under him, as if he would have crusht me to pieces. For as he threw me, my Sword flew out of my hand; nay he told me, *He was sure of me*: but I cried to God, and he heard me, and delivered me out of all my troubles. Then I entered into the Valley of the shadow of death, and had no light for almost half the way through it. I thought I should have been killed there, over, and over; But at last, day brake, and the Sun rose, and I went through that which was behind with far more ease and quiet.

Moreover, I saw in my Dream, that as they went on, *Faithful*, as he chanced to look on one side, saw a Man whose name is *Talkative*, walking at a distance besides them, (for in this place, there was room enough for them all to walk). *He was a tall Man, and something more comely at a distance than at hand.* To this Man *Faithful* addressed himself in this manner.

Talkative  
described.

Faith. *Friend, Whither away? Are you going to the Heavenly Country?*

Talk. I am going to the same place.

Faith. *That is well: Then I hope we may have your good Company.*

Talk. With a very good will, will I be your Companion.

Faith. *Come on then, and let us go together, and let us spend our time in discoursing of things that are profitable.*

Faithful and  
Talkative  
enter dis-  
course.

Talk. To talk of things that are good, to me is very acceptable, with you, or with any other; and I am glad that I have met with those that incline to so good a work. For to speak the truth, there are but few that care thus to spend their time (as they are in their travels) but chuse much rather to be speaking of things to no profit, and this hath been a trouble to me.

Faith. *That is indeed a thing to be lamented; for what things so worthy of the use of the tongue and mouth of men on Earth, as are the things of the God of Heaven?*

Talkative's  
dislike of bad  
discourse.

Talk. I like you wonderful well, for your sayings are full of conviction; and I will add, What thing is so pleasant, and what so profitable, as to talk of the things of God?

What things so pleasant? (that is, if a man hath any delight in things that are wonderful) for instance: If a man doth delight to talk of the History or the Mystery of things, or if a man doth love to talk of Miracles, Wonders or Signs, where shall he find things Recorded so delightful, and so sweetly penned, as in the holy Scripture?

Faith. *That's true: but to be profited by such things in our talk, should be that which we design.*

Talkative's  
fine dis-  
course.

*Talk.* That it is that I said : for to *talk* of such things is most profitable, for by so doing, a Man may get knowledge of many things, as of the vanity of earthly things, and the benefit of things above : (thus in general) but more particularly, By this a man may learn the necessity of the New-birth, the insufficiency of our works, the need of Christ's righteousness, &c. Besides, by this a man may learn what it is to repent, to believe, to pray, to suffer, or the like : by this also a Man may learn what are the great promises and consolations of the Gospel, to his own comfort. Further, by this a Man may learn to refute false opinions, to vindicate the truth, and also to instruct the ignorant.

*Faith.* *All this is true, and glad am I to hear these things from you.*

*Talk.* Alas ! the want of this is the cause that so few understand the need of faith, and the necessity of a work of Grace in their Souls in order to eternal life : but ignorantly live in the works of the Law, by which a man can by no means obtain the Kingdom of Heaven.

*Faith.* *But by your leave, Heavenly knowledge of these, is the gift of God ; no man attaineth to them by human industry, or only by the talk of them.*

O brave  
Talkative.

*Talk.* All this I know very well, for a man can receive nothing except it be given him from Heaven ; all is of Grace, not of works : I could give you a hundred Scriptures for the confirmation of this.

*Faith.* *Well then, said Faithful, what is that one thing, that we shall at this time find our discourse upon ?*

O brave  
Talkative.

*Talk.* What you will : I will talk of things Heavenly, or things Earthly ; things Moral, or things Evangelical ; things Sacred, or things Profane ; things past, or things to come ; things foreign, or things at home ; things more



Essential, or things Circumstantial : provided that all be done to our profit.

*Faith.* Now did *Faithful* begin to wonder ; and stepping to *Christian*, (for he walked all this while by himself,) he said to him, (but softly) *What a brave Companion have we got ! Surely this man will make a very excellent Pilgrim.*

*Faithful*  
beguiled by  
*Talkative.*

*Chr.* At this *Christian* modestly smiled, and said, This man with whom you are so taken, will beguile with this tongue of his, twenty of them that know him not.

*Christian*  
makes a dis-  
covery of  
*Talkative*,  
telling *Faith-*  
*ful* who he  
was.

*Faith.* Do you know him then ?

*Chr.* Know him ! Yes, better than he knows himself.

*Faith.* Pray what is he ?

*Chr.* His name is *Talkative*, he dwelleth in our Town ; I wonder that you should be a stranger to him, only I consider that our Town is large.

*Faith.* Whose Son is he ? And whereabout doth he dwell ?

*Chr.* He is the Son of one *Saywell*, he dwelt in *Prating-row* ; and he is known of all that are acquainted with him, by the name of *Talkative* in *Prating-row* : and notwithstanding his fine tongue, he is but a sorry fellow.

*Faith.* Well, he seems to be a very pretty man.

*Chr.* That is, to them that have not thorough acquaintance with him, for he is best abroad, near home he is ugly enough : your saying, That he is a pretty man, brings to my mind what I have observed in the work of the Painter, whose Pictures shew best at a distance ; but very near, more displeasing.

*Faith.* But I am ready to think you do but jest, because you smiled.

*Chr.* God forbid that I should jest, (though I smiled) in this matter, or that I should accuse any falsely ; I

will give you a further discovery of him : This man is for any company, and for any *talk* ; as he *talketh now* with you, so will he *talk* when he is on the *Ale-bench* : and the more drink he hath in his crown, the more of these things he hath in his mouth : Religion hath no place in his heart, or house, or conversation ; all he hath, lieth in his *tongue*, and his Religion is to make a noise *therewith*.

Faith. *Say you so ! Then I am in this man greatly deceived.*

Mat. 23. 3.  
1 Cor. 4. 20.

Talkative  
talks, but does  
not.

His house is  
empty of Re-  
ligion.

He is a stain  
to Religion.  
Rom. 2. 24,  
25.

The proverb  
that goes of  
him.

Men shun to  
deal with  
him.

*Chr.* Deceived ! you may be sure of it. Remember the Proverb, *They say and do not : but the Kingdom of God is not in word, but in power.* He *talketh* of Prayer, of Repentance, of Faith, and of the New birth : but he knows but only to *talk* of them. I have been in his Family, and have observed him both at home and abroad ; and I know what I say of him is the truth. His house is as empty of Religion, *as the white of an Egg is of savour.* There is there, neither Prayer, nor sign of Repentance for sin : Yea, the brute in his kind serves God far better than he. He is the very stain, reproach, and shame of Religion to all that know him ; it can hardly have a good word in all that end of the Town where he dwells, through him. Thus say the common People that know him, *A Saint abroad, and a Devil at home* : His poor Family finds it so, he is such a *churl*, such a railer at, and so unreasonable with his Servants, that they neither know how to do for, or speak to him. Men that have any dealings with him, say 'tis better to deal with a Turk than with him, for fairer dealing they shall have at their hands. This *Talkative*, if it be possible, will go beyond them, defraud, beguile, and overreach them. Besides, he brings up his Sons to follow his steps ; and if he findeth in any of them *a foolish timorous-*

ness (for so he calls the first appearance of a tender conscience) he calls them fools and blockheads; and by no means will employ them in much, or speak to their commendations before others. For my part I am of opinion, that he has by his wicked life caused many to stumble and fall; and will be, if God prevent not, the ruin of many more.

Faith. *Well, my Brother, I am bound to believe you; not only because you say you know him, but also because like a Christian you make your reports of men. For I cannot think that you speak these things of ill will, but because it is even so as you say.*

Chr. Had I known him no more than you, I might perhaps have thought of him as at the first you did: Yea, had he received this report at *their* hands only that are enemies to Religion, I should have thought it had been a slander: (A Lot that often falls from bad men's mouths upon good men's Names and Professions:) But all these things, yea and a great many more as bad, of my own knowledge I can prove him guilty of. Besides, good men are ashamed of him, they can neither call him *Brother* nor *Friend*; the very naming of him among them, makes them blush, if they know him.

Faith. *Well, I see that Saying and Doing are two things, and hereafter I shall better observe this distinction.*

Chr. They are *two* things indeed, and are as diverse as are the Soul and the Body: For as the Body without the Soul, is but a dead Carcass; so, *Saying*, if it be alone, is but a dead Carcass also. The Soul of Religion is the practick part: *Pure Religion and undefiled, before God and the Father, is this, To visit the Fatherless and Widows in their affliction, and to keep himself unspotted*

*The Carcass  
of Religion.*

James 1. 27.  
see ver. 22, 23,  
24, 25, 26.

*from the World.* This *Talkative* is not aware of, he thinks that *hearing* and *saying* will make a good Christian, and thus he deceiveth his own soul. Hearing is but as the sowing of the Seed; talking is not sufficient to prove that fruit is indeed in the heart and life; and let us assure ourselves, that at the day of Doom, men shall be judged according to their fruits. It will not be said then, *Did you believe?* but, were you *Doers*, or *Talkers* only? and accordingly shall they be judged. The end of the World is compared to our Harvest, and you know men at Harvest regard nothing but Fruit. Not that any thing can be accepted that is not of Faith: But I speak this, to shew you how insignificant the profession of *Talkative* will be at that day.

See Mat. 13.  
and ch. 25.

Levit. 11. 3,  
6.  
Deut. 14. 7.

Faithful  
convinced of  
the badness of  
Talkative

Faith. *This brings to my mind that of Moses, by which he describeth the beast that is clean. He is such an one that parteth the Hoof, and cheweth the Cud: Not that parteth the Hoof only, or that cheweth the Cud only. The Hare cheweth the Cud, but yet is unclean, because he parteth not the Hoof. And this truly resembleth Talkative; he cheweth the Cud, he seeketh knowledge, he cheweth upon the Word, but he divideth not the Hoof, he parteth not with the way of sinners; but as the Hare, he retaineth the foot of a Dog, or Bear, and therefore he is unclean.*

1 Cor. 13. 1,  
2, 3. ch. 14. 7.

Talkative  
like to things  
that sound  
without life.

*Chr.* You have spoken, for ought I know, the true Gospel sense of those Texts, and I will add another thing. *Paul* calleth some men, yea and those great Talkers too, sounding Brass, and Tinkling Cymbals; that is, as he expounds them in another place, *Things without life, giving sound.* Things without life, that is, without the true Faith and Grace of the Gospel: and consequently, things that shall never be placed in the Kingdom of Heaven among those that are the Children of life: Though

their *sound* by their *talk*, be as if it were the *Tongue* or voice of an Angel.

Faith. *Well, I was not so fond of his company at first, but I am sick of it now. What shall we do to be rid of him?*

Chr. Take my advice, and do as I bid you, and you shall find that he will soon be sick of your Company too, except God shall touch his heart and turn it.

Faith. *What would you have me to do?*

Chr. Why, go to him, and enter into some serious discourse about *the power of Religion*: And ask him plainly (when he has approved of it, for that he will) whether this thing be set up in his Heart, House or Conversation.

Faith. Then *Faithful* stepped forward again, and said to *Talkative*: *Come, what cheer? how is it now?*

Talk. Thank you, Well. I thought we should have had a great deal of *Talk* by this time.

Faith. *Well, if you will, we will fall to it now; and since you left it with me to state the question, let it be this: How doth the saving grace of God discover itself, when it is in the heart of man?*

Talk. I perceive then that our talk must be about the power of things; Well, 'tis a very good question, and I shall be willing to answer you. And take my answer in brief thus. First, *Where the Grace of God is in the heart, it causeth there a great out-cry against sin.* Secondly—

*Talkative's false discovery of a work of grace.*

Faith. *Nay hold, let us consider of one at once: I think you should rather say, It shows itself by inclining the Soul to abhor its sin.*

Talk. Why, what difference is there between crying out against, and abhorring of sin?

Faith. *Oh! a great deal; a man may cry out against*

To cry out  
against sin,  
no sign of  
Grace.

*sin, of policy ; but he cannot abhor it, but by vertue of a Godly antipathy against it : I have heard many cry out against sin in the Pulpit, who yet can abide it well enough in the heart, and house, and conversation. Joseph's Mistress cried out with a loud voice, as if she had been very holy ; but she would willingly, notwithstanding that, have committed uncleanness with him. Some cry out against sin, even as the Mother cries out against her Child in her lap, when she calleth it Slut and naughty Girl, and then falls to hugging and kissing it.*

*Talk.* You lie at the catch, I perceive.

*Faith.* No, not I, I am only for setting things right. But what is the second thing whereby you would prove a discovery of a work of grace in the heart ?

*Talk.* Great knowledge of Gospel Mysteries.

Great know-  
ledge no sign  
of grace.  
1 Cor. 13.

*Faith.* This sign should have been first, but first or last, it is also false ; for, Knowledge, great knowledge, may be obtained in the mysteries of the Gospel, and yet no work of grace in the Soul. Yea, if a man have all knowledge, he may yet be nothing, and so consequently be no child of God. When Christ said, Do you know all these things ? And the Disciples had answered, Yes : He addeth, Blessed are ye if ye do them. He doth not lay the blessing in the knowing of them, but in the doing of them. For there is a knowledge that is not attended with doing : He that knoweth his Master's will, and doth it not. A man may know like an Angel, and yet be no Christian ; therefore your sign of it is not true. Indeed to know, is a thing that pleaseth Talkers and Boasters ; but to do, is that which pleaseth God. Not that the heart can be good without knowledge, for without that the heart is naught : There is therefore knowledge, and knowledge. Knowledge that resteth in the bare speculation of things,

Knowledge  
and know-  
ledge.

*and knowledge that is accompanied with the grace of faith and love, which puts a man upon doing even the will of God from the heart: the first of these will serve the Talker, but without the other the true Christian is not content.* Give me understanding, and I shall keep thy Law, yea I shall observe it with my whole heart.

*True knowledge attended with endeavours.*  
Psal. 119. 34.

*Talk.* You lie at the catch again, this is not for edification.

*Faith.* Well, if you please propound another sign how this work of grace discovereth itself where it is.

*Talk.* Not I, for I see we shall not agree.

*Faith.* Well, if you will not, will you give me leave to do it?

*Talk.* You may use your Liberty.

*Faith.* A work of grace in the soul discovereth itself, either to him that hath it, or to standers-by.

*One good sign of grace.*

*To him that hath it, thus. It gives him conviction of sin, especially of the defilement of his nature, and the sin of unbelief, (for the sake of which he is sure to be damned, if he findeth not mercy at God's hand by faith in Jesus Christ.) This sight and sense of things worketh in him sorrow and shame for sin; he findeth moreover revealed in him the Saviour of the World, and the absolute necessity of closing with him for life, at the which he findeth hungerings and thirstings after him, to which hungerings, &c. the promise is made. Now according to the strength or weakness of his Faith in his Saviour, so is his joy and peace, so is his love to holiness, so are his desires to know him more, and also to serve him in this World. But though I say it discovereth itself thus unto him; yet it is but seldom that he is able to conclude that this is a work of Grace, because his corruptions now, and his abused reason, make his mind to misjudge in this*

Joh. 16. 8.  
Rom. 7. 24.  
Joh. 16. 9.  
Mar. 16. 16.  
Ps. 38. 18.  
Jer. 31. 19.  
Gal. 2. 16.  
Acts 4. 12.  
Mat. 5. 6.  
Rev. 21. 6.

*matter ; therefore in him that hath this work, there is required a very sound Judgment, before he can with steadiness conclude that this is a work of Grace.*

*To others it is thus discovered.*

Ro. 10. 10.  
Phi. 1. 27.  
Mat. 5. 19.  
Jo. 14. 15.  
Ps. 50. 20.  
Job. 42. 5, 6.  
Ezek. 29. 43.

1. *By an experimental confession of his Faith in Christ.* 2. *By a life answerable to that confession, to wit, a life of holiness ; heart-holiness, family-holiness, (if he hath a Family) and by Conversation-holiness in the world : which in the general teacheth him, inwardly to abhor his Sin, and himself for that in secret, to suppress it in his Family, and to promote holiness in the World ; not by talk only, as an Hypocrite or Talkative Person may do : but by a practical Subjection in Faith, and Love, to the power of the word : And now Sir, as to this brief description of the work of Grace, and also the discovery of it, if you have ought to object, object : if not, then give me leave to propound to you a second question.*

*Another good sign of Grace.*

*Talk.* Nay, my part is not now to object, but to hear, let me therefore have your second question.

*Faith.* It is this, *Do you experience the first part of this description of it ? and doth your life and conversation testify the same ? or standeth your Religion in Word or in Tongue, and not in Deed and Truth ? pray, if you incline to answer me in this, say no more than you know the God above will say Amen to ; and also, nothing but what your Conscience can justify you in.* For, not he that commendeth himself is approved, but whom the Lord commendeth. *Besides, to say I am thus, and thus, when my Conversation, and all my Neighbours tell me, I lie, is great wickedness.*

*Talkative not pleased with Faithful's question.*

*Talk.* Then *Talkative* at first began to blush, but recovering himself, Thus he replied, You come now to Experience, to Conscience, and God : and to appeal to



him for justification of what is spoken: This kind of discourse I did not expect, nor am I disposed to give an answer to such questions, because I count not myself bound thereto, unless you take upon you to be a *Catechizer*; and, though you should so do, yet I may refuse to make you my Judge: But I pray will you tell me, why you ask me such questions?

*Faith.* *Because I saw you forward to talk, and because I knew not that you had ought else but notion. Besides to tell you all the Truth, I have heard of you, that you are a Man whose Religion lies in talk, and that your Conversation gives this your Mouth-profession, the lie. They say You are a spot among Christians, and that Religion fareth the worse for your ungodly conversation, that some already have stumbled at your wicked ways, and that more are in danger of being destroyed thereby; your Religion, and an Ale-House, and Covetousness, and uncleanness, and swearing, and lying, and vain Company-keeping, &c. will stand together. The proverb is true of you, which is said of a Whore; to wit That she is a shame to all Women; so you are a shame to all Professors.*

The reasons why Faithful put to him that question. Faithful's plain dealing with Talkative.

*Talk.* Since you are ready to take up reports, and to judge so rashly as you do; I cannot but conclude you are some peevish, or melancholy Man, not fit to be discoursed with, and so adieu.

Talkative flings away from Faithful.

*Chr.* Then came up *Christian*, and said to his Brother, I told you how it would happen, your words and his lusts could not agree; he had rather leave your company, than reform his life: but he is gone as I said, let him go; the loss is no man's but his own, he has saved us the trouble of going from him; for he continuing, as I suppose he will do, as he is, he would have been but a blot in our

A good rid-dance.

Company : besides, the Apostle says, *From such withdraw thyself.*

Faith. *But I am glad we had this little discourse with him, it may happen that he will think of it again ; however, I have dealt plainly with him, and so am clear of his blood, if he perisheth.*

Chr. You did well to talk so plainly to him as you did, there is but little of this faithful dealing with men now a days ; and that makes Religion to stink so in the nostrils of many, as it doth : for they are these *Talkative* Fools whose Religion is only in word, and are debauched and vain in their Conversation, that (being so much admitted into the Fellowship of the Godly) do puzzle the World, blemish Christianity, and grieve the Sincere. I wish that all Men would deal with such, as you have done, then should they either be made more conformable to Religion, or the company of Saints would be too hot for them. Then did *Faithful* say

*How Talkative at first lifts up his Plumes !  
How bravely doth he speak ! how he presumes  
To drive down all before him ! but so soon  
As Faithful talks of Heart work, like the Moon  
That's past the full, into the wane he goes ;  
And so will all, but he that Heart work knows.*

Thus they went on talking of what they had seen by the way ; and so made that way easy, which would otherwise, no doubt, have been tedious to them : for now they went through a Wilderness.

Now when they were got almost quite out of this wilderness, *Faithful* chanced to cast his eye back, and espied one coming after them, and he knew him. Oh ! said *Faithful* to his brother, who comes yonder ? Then

*Christian* looked, and said, It is my good friend *Evangelist*. Ay, and my good friend too, said *Faithful*, for 'twas he that set me the way to the gate. Now was *Evangelist* come up unto them, and thus saluted them.

*Evangelist overtakes them again.*

*Evan.* Peace be with you, dearly beloved, and peace be to your helpers.

*Chr.* *Welcome, welcome, my good Evangelist, the sight of thy countenance brings to my remembrance thy ancient kindness and unwearied labouring for my eternal good.*

*They are glad at the sight of him.*

*Faith.* *And a thousand times welcome, said good Faithful, thy company, O sweet Evangelist; how desirable is it to us poor pilgrims!*

*Evan.* Then said *Evangelist*, How hath it fared with you, my friends, since the time of our last parting? What have you met with, and how have you behaved yourselves?

*Then Christian and Faithful told him of all things that had happened to them in the way; and how, and with what difficulty, they had arrived to that place.*

Right glad am I, said *Evangelist*, not that you have met with trials, but that you have been victors, and for that you have, (notwithstanding many weaknesses,) continued in the way to this very day.

*His exhortation to them.*

I say, right glad am I of this thing, and that for mine own sake and yours; I have sowed, and you have reaped; and the day is coming, when "both he that sowed, and they that reaped, shall rejoice together;" that is, if you hold out; for in due season ye shall reap, if ye faint not. The Crown is before you, and it is an incorruptible one; so run that ye may obtain it. Some there be that set out for this Crown, and after they have gone far for it, another comes in and takes it from them: hold fast, therefore, that you have; let no man take your Crown.

*John 4. 36.*

*Gal. 6. 9.*

*1 Cor. 9. 24-27.*

*Rev. 3. 11.*

You are not yet out of the gun-shot of the Devil ; you have not resisted unto blood, striving against sin. Let the kingdom be always before you, and believe stedfastly concerning things that are invisible. Let nothing that is on this side the other world get within you. And, above all, look well to your own hearts and to the lusts thereof ; for they are "deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked." Set your faces like a flint ; you have all power in Heaven and Earth on your side.

*They do thank him for his exhortation.*

*Chr. Then Christian thanked him for his exhortation ; but told him withal, that they would have him speak further to them for their help the rest of the way ; and the rather, for that they well knew that he was a Prophet, and could tell them of things that might happen unto them, and also how they might resist and overcome them. To which request Faithful also consented. So Evangelist began as followeth.*

*He predicteth what troubles they shall meet with in Vanity Fair, and encourageth them to stedfastness.*

*Evan. My Sons, you have heard in the words of the truth of the Gospel, that you must through many tribulations enter into the Kingdom of Heaven ; and again, that in every City, bonds and afflictions abide in you ; and therefore you cannot expect that you should go long on your Pilgrimage without them, in some sort or other. You have found something of the truth of these testimonies upon you already, and more will immediately follow ; for now, as you see, you are almost out of this Wilderness, and therefore you will soon come into a Town that you will by and by see before you ; and in that Town you will be hardly beset with enemies, who will strain hard but they will kill you ; and be you sure that one or both of you must seal the testimony which you hold with blood ; but be you faithful unto death, and the King will give you a Crown of life. He that shall*

die there, although his death will be unnatural, and his pains, perhaps, great, he will yet have the better of his fellow; not only because he will be arrived at the Cœlestial City soonest, but because he will escape many miseries that the other will meet with in the rest of his Journey. But when you are come to the Town, and shall find fulfilled what I have here related, then remember your friend, and quit yourselves like men, and commit the keeping of your souls to God in well-doing, as unto a faithful Creator.

*He whose lot it will be there to suffer, will have the better of his brother.*

Then I saw in my Dream, that when they were got out of the Wilderness, they presently saw a Town before them, and the name of that Town is *Vanity*; and at the Town there is a *Fair* kept, called *Vanity-Fair*: It is kept all the Year long, it beareth the name of *Vanity-Fair*, because the Town where 'tis kept, is *lighter than Vanity*; and also, because all that is there sold, or that cometh thither, is *Vanity*. As is the saying of the wise, *All that cometh is vanity*.

Isa. 40. 17.  
Ecc. 1. 2, 14.  
chap. 2. 11,  
17.

This Fair is no new erected business, but a thing of Ancient standing; I will shew you the original of it.

Almost five thousand years ago, there were Pilgrims walking to the Cœlestial City, as these two honest persons are; and *Beelzebub*, *Apollyon*, and *Legion*, with their Companions, perceiving by the path that the Pilgrims made, that their way to the City lay through *this Town of Vanity*, they contrived here to set up a Fair; a Fair wherein should be sold of *all sorts of Vanity*, and that it should last all the year long. Therefore at *this Fair* are all such Merchandize sold, As Houses, Lands, Trades, Places, Honours, Preferments, Titles, Countries, Kingdoms, Lusts, Pleasures and Delights of all sorts, as Whores, Bawds, Wives, Husbands, Children, Masters,

*The Antiquity of this Fair.*

*The Merchandize of this Fair.*

Servants, Lives, Blood, Bodies, Souls, Silver, Gold, Pearls, precious Stones, and what not.

And moreover, at this Fair there is at all times to be seen Jugglings, Cheats, Games, Plays, Fools, Apes, Knaves, and Rogues, and that of every kind.

Here are to be seen, too, and that for nothing, Thefts, Murders, Adulteries, False-swearers, and that of a blood-red colour.

And as in other fairs of less moment, there are the several Rows and Streets, under their proper names, where such and such Wares are vended: So here likewise, you have the proper Places, Rows, Streets, (*viz.* Countries and Kingdoms,) where the Wares of this Fair are soonest to be found: Here is the *Britain Row*, the *French Row*, the *Italian Row*, the *Spanish Row*, the *German Row*, where several sorts of Vanities are to be sold. But as in other *fairs* some one Commodity is as the chief of all the *fair*, so the Ware of *Rome* and her Merchandize is greatly promoted in *this fair*: Only our *English Nation*, with some others, have taken a dislike thereat.

*The Streets of this fair.*

1 Cor. 5. 10.  
*Christ went through this fair.*

Mat. 4. 8.  
Luke 4. 5, 6, 7.

Now, as I said, the way to the Cœlestial City lies just through *this Town*, where this lusty Fair is kept; and he that will go to the City, and yet not go through this Town, *must needs go out of the World*. The Prince of Princes himself, when here, went through *this Town* to his own Country, and that upon a *Fair-day too*: Yea, and as I think, it was *Beelzebub* the chief Lord of this *Fair*, that invited him to buy of his *Vanities*; yea, would have made him Lord of the *Fair*, would he but have done him Reverence as he went through the *Town*. Yea, because he was such a person of Honour, *Beelzebub* had him from *Street to Street*, and shewed him all<sup>c</sup> the

Kingdoms of the World in a little time, that he might, if possible, allure that Blessed One, to *cheapen* and *buy* some of his *Vanities*. But he had no mind to the Merchandize, and therefore left the *Town*, without laying out so much as one Farthing upon these *Vanities*. This *Fair* therefore is an Ancient thing, of long standing, and a very great *Fair*. Christ bought nothing in this fair.

Now these Pilgrims, as I said, must needs go through this *fair*: Well, so they did; but behold, even as they entred into the *fair*, all the people in the *fair* were moved, and the *Town* itself as it were in a *Hubbub* about them; and that for several reasons: For, The Pilgrims enter the fair.

First, The Pilgrims were cloathed with such kind of Raiment, as was diverse from the Raiment of any that Traded in that *fair*. The people therefore of the *fair* made a great gazing upon them: Some said they were Fools, some they were Bedlams, and some they are Outlandish-men. The fair in a hubbub about them.

Secondly, And as they wondred at their Apparel, so they did likewise at their Speech, for few could understand what they said; they naturally spoke the Language of *Canaan*, but they that kept the *fair*, were the men of this World: So that from one end of the *fair* to the other, they seemed *Barbarians* each to the other. 1 Cor. 2. 7, 8. 2d Cause of the hubbub.

Thirdly, But that which did not a little amuse the Merchandizers, was, that these Pilgrims set very light by all their Wares they cared not so much as to look upon them: and if they called upon them to buy, they would put their fingers in their ears, and cry, *Turn away mine eyes from beholding vanity*; and look upwards, signifying that their Trade and Traffick was in Heaven. Third cause of the hubbub. Psal. 119. 37. Phil. 3. 19, 20.

One chanced mockingly, beholding the carriages of the men, to say unto them, What will ye buy? but they, Fourth cause of the hubbub.

Prov. 23. 23. looking gravely upon him, said, *We buy the Truth.* At that, there was an occasion taken to despise the men the more ; some mocking, some taunting, some speaking reproachfully, and some calling upon others to smite them. At last things came to a hubbub and great stir in the *fair*, in so much that all order was confounded. Now was word presently brought to the *great one* of the *fair*, who quickly came down, and deputed some of his most trusty friends to take these men into examination, about whom the *fair* was almost overturned. So the men were brought to examination ; and they that sat upon them, asked them whence they came, whither they went, and what they did there in such an unusual Garb ?

The men told them, that they were Pilgrims and Strangers in the World, and that they were going to their own Country, which was the Heavenly *Jerusalem* ; and that they had given no occasion to the men of the Town, nor yet to the Merchandizers, thus to abuse them, and to let them in their Journey. Except it was, for that, when one asked them what they would buy, they said they would *buy the Truth.* But they that were appointed to examine them, did not believe them to be any other than Bedlams and Mad, or else such as came to put all things into a confusion in the *fair.* Therefore they took them and beat them, and besmeared them with dirt, and then put them into the Cage, that they might be made a Spectacle to all the men of the *fair.* There therefore they lay for some time, and were made the objects of any man's sport, or malice, or revenge. The great one of the *fair* laughing still at all that befel them. But the men being patient, and not rendering railing for railing, but contrarywise blessing, and giving good words for bad, and kindness for injuries done : Some men in the *fair* that

*They are mocked.*

*The fair in a hubbub.*

*They are examined.*

*They tell who they are and whence they came.*

Heb. 11. 13-16.

*They are not believed.*

*They are put in the Cage.*

*Their behaviour in the Cage.*



were more observing, and less prejudiced than the rest, began to check and blame the baser sort for their continual abuses done by them to the men: They therefore in angry manner let fly at them again, counting them as bad as the men in the Cage, and telling them that they seemed confederates, and should be made partakers of their misfortunes. The other replied, That for ought they could see, the men were quiet, and sober, and intended nobody any harm; and that there were many that Traded in their *fair*, that were more worthy to be put into the Cage, yea, and Pillory too, than were the men that they had abused. Thus, after divers words had passed on both sides, (the men behaving themselves all the while very wisely and soberly before them,) they fell to some Blows among themselves, and did harm one to another. Then were these two poor men brought before their Examiners again, and there charged as being guilty of the late Hubbub that had been in the *fair*. So they beat them pitifully, and hanged Irons upon them, and led them in Chains, up and down the *fair*, for an example and terror to others, lest any should speak in their behalf, or join themselves unto them. But *Christian* and *Faithful* behaved themselves yet more wisely, and received the ignominy and shame that was cast upon them, with so much meekness and patience, that it won to their side (though but few in comparison of the rest) several of the men in the *fair*. - This put the other party yet into a greater rage, insomuch that they concluded the death of these two men.<sup>1</sup> Wherefore they threatned that the Cage

*The men of the fair do fall out among themselves about these two men.*

*They are made the Authors of this disturbance.*

*They are led up and down the fair in Chains for a terror to others.*

*Some of the men of the fair won to them.*

*Their adversaries resolve to kill them.*

<sup>1</sup> Behold *VANITY-FAIR*; the Pilgrims there  
Are Chain'd and Ston'd beeide;  
Even so it was, our Lord past here,  
And on Mount *Calvary* dy'd.

nor Irons should serve their turn, but that they should die, for the abuse they had done, and for deluding the men of the *fair*.

*They are again put into the Cage*

Then were they remanded to the Cage again until further order should be taken with them. So they put them in, and made their feet fast in the Stocks.

Here, therefore, they called again to mind what they had heard from their faithful friend *Evangelist*, and were the more confirmed in their way and sufferings, by what he told them would happen to them. They also now comforted each other, that whose lot it was to suffer, even he should have the best on't; therefore each man secretly wished that he might have that preferment. But committing themselves to the All-wise dispose of him that ruleth all things, with much content they abode in the condition in which they were, until they should be otherwise disposed of.

*and after brought to Tryal.*

Then a convenient time being appointed, they brought them forth to their Tryal in order to their Condemnation. When the time was come, they were brought before their Enemies and arraigned; the Judge's name was Lord *Hategood*. Their Indictment was one and the same in substance, though somewhat varying in form; the Contents whereof was this.

*Their Indictment.*

*That they were enemies to, and disturbers of their Trade; that they had made Commotions and Divisions in the Town, and had won a party to their own most dangerous opinions, in contempt of the Law of their Prince.*

*Faithful's answer for himself.*

Then *Faithful* began to answer, That he had only set himself against that which had set itself against him that is higher than the highest. And said he, As for disturbance, I make none, being myself a man of Peace; the Parties that were won to us, were won by beholding

our Truth and Innocence, and they are only turned from the worse to the better. And as to the King you talk of, since he is *Beelzebub*, the Enemy of our Lord, I defy him and all his Angels.<sup>1</sup>

Then Proclamation was made, that they that had ought to say for their Lord the King against the Prisoner at the Bar, should forthwith appear and give in their evidence. So there came in three Witnesses, to wit, *Envy*, *Superstition*, and *Pickthank*. They were then asked, If they knew the Prisoner at the Bar? and what they had to say for their Lord the King against him.

Then stood forth *Envy*, and said to this effect; My Lord, I have known this man a long time, and will attest upon my Oath before this honourable Bench, That he is——

*Judge.* Hold, give him his Oath; So they sware him. Then he said, My Lord, This man, notwithstanding his plausible name, is one of the vilest men in our Country; He neither regardeth Prince nor People, Law nor Custom: but doth all that he can to possess all men with certain of his disloyal notions, which he in the general calls Principles of Faith and Holiness. And in particular, I heard him once myself affirm, *That Christianity, and the Customs of our Town of Vanity, were Diametrically opposite, and could not be reconciled.* By which saying, my Lord, he doth at once, not only condemn all our laudable doings, but us in the doing of them.

*Judge.* Then did the Judge say to him, Hast thou any more to say?

<sup>1</sup> Now *Faithful* play the man, speak for thy God,  
Fear not the wicked's malice, nor their rod:  
Speak boldly man, the truth is on thy side,  
Die for it, and to life in triumph ride.

¶ *Env.* My Lord I could say much more, only I would not be tedious to the Court. Yet if need be, when the other Gentlemen have given in their Evidence, rather than anything shall be wanting that will dispatch him, I will enlarge my Testimony against him. So he was bid stand by. Then they called *Superstition*, and bid him look upon the Prisoner; they also asked, What he could say for their Lord the King against him? Then they sware him, so he began.

*Superstition follows.*

*Super.* My Lord, I have no great acquaintance with this man, nor do I desire to have further knowledge of him; However this I know, that he is a very pestilent fellow, from some discourse that the other day I had with him in this *Town*; for then talking with him, I heard him say, That our Religion was naught, and such by which a man could by no means please God: which sayings of his, my Lord, your Lordship very well knows, what necessarily thence will follow, *to wit*, That we still do worship in vain, are yet in our Sins, and finally shall be damned; and this is that which I have to say.

Then was *Pickthank* sworn, and bid say what he knew, in behalf of their Lord the King against the Prisoner at the Bar.

*Pickthank's Testimony.*

*Sins are all Lords and Great ones.*

*Pick.* My Lord, and you Gentlemen all, This fellow I have known of a long time, and have heard him speak things that ought not to be spoke. For he hath railed on our noble Prince *Beelzebub*, and hath spoke contemptibly of his honourable Friends, whose names are the Lord *Oldman*, the Lord *Carnal delight*, the Lord *Luxurious*, the Lord *Desire-of-Vain-glory*, my old Lord *Lechery*, Sir *Having Greedy*, with all the rest of our Nobility; and he hath said moreover, that if all men were of his mind, if possible, there is not one of these

noble Men should have any longer a being in this Town. Besides, he hath not been afraid to rail on you, my Lord, who are now appointed to be his Judge, calling you an ungodly Villain, with many other such like vilifying terms, with which he hath bespattered most of the Gentry of our Town. When this *Pickthank* had told his tale, the Judge directed his speech to the Prisoner at the Bar, saying, Thou Runagate, Heretick, and Traitor, hast thou heard what these honest Gentlemen have witnessed against thee?

*Faith.* *May I speak a few words in my own defence?*

*Faithful's  
defence of  
himself.*

*Judge.* Sirrah, Sirrah, thou deservest to live no longer, but to be slain immediately upon the place; yet that all men may see our gentleness towards thee, let us hear what thou vile Runagate hast to say.

*Faith.* 1. I say then in answer to what Mr. *Envy* hath spoken, I never said ought but this, *That what Rule, or Laws, or Custom, or People, were flat against the Word of God, are diametrically opposite to Christianity.* If I have said amiss in this, convince me of my error, and I am ready here before you to make my recantation.

2. As to the second, to wit, Mr. *Superstition*, and his charge against me, I said only this, *That in the worship of God there is required a divine Faith; but there can be no divine Faith without a divine Revelation of the will of God: therefore whatever is thrust into the worship of God, that is not agreeable to divine Revelation, cannot be done but by a human Faith, which Faith will not be profitable to Eternal life.*

3. As to what Mr. *Pickthank* hath said, I say, (avoiding terms, as that I am said to rail, and the like) That the Prince of this Town, with all the Rabblement his Attendants, by this Gentlemen named, are more fit for

a being in Hell, than in this Town and Country ; *and so the Lord have mercy upon me.*

*The Judge  
his speech to  
the Jury.*

Then the Judge called to the Jury (who all this while stood by, to hear and observe) Gentlemen of the Jury, you see this man about whom so great an uproar hath been made in this Town : you have also heard what these worthy Gentlemen have witnessed against him ; also you have heard his reply and confession : It lieth now in your breasts to hang him, or save his life. But yet I think meet to instruct you into our Law.

Exod. 1. There was an Act made in the days of *Pharaoh* the Great, Servant to our Prince, That lest those of a contrary Religion should multiply and grow too strong for him, their Males should be thrown into the River. There

Dan. 3. was also an Act made in the days of *Nebuchadnezzar* the Great, another of his Servants, That whoever would not fall down and worship his golden Image, should be thrown into a fiery Furnace. There was also an Act

Dan. 6. made in the days of *Darius*, That whoso, for some time, called upon any God but him, should be cast into the Lions' Den. Now the substance of these Laws this Rebel has broken, not only in thought (which is not to be borne), but also in word and deed ; which must therefore needs be intolerable.

For that of *Pharaoh*, his Law was made upon a supposition, to prevent mischief, no Crime being yet apparent ; but here is a Crime apparent. For the second and third, you see he disputeth against our Religion ; and for the Treason he hath confessed, he deserveth to die the death.

*The Jury  
and their  
Names.*

Then went the Jury out, whose names were, Mr. *Blind-man*, Mr. *No-good*, Mr. *Malice*, Mr. *Love-lust*, Mr. *Live-loose*, Mr. *Heady*, Mr. *High-mind*, Mr. *Enmity*, Mr. *Lyar*, Mr. *Cruelty*, Mr. *Hate-light*, and Mr. *Im-*

*placable*, who every one gave in his private Verdict Every one's private Verdict. against him among themselves, and afterwards unanimously concluded to bring him in guilty before the Judge. And first among themselves Mr. *Blind-man*, the foreman, said, *I see clearly that this man is an Heretick*. Then said Mr. *No-good*, *Away with such a fellow from the Earth*. Ay, said Mr. *Malice*, *for I hate the very looks of him*. Then said Mr. *Love-lust*, *I could never endure him*. Nor I, said Mr. *Live-loose*, *for he would always be condemning my way*. Hang him, hang him, said Mr. *Heady*. A sorry *Scrub*, said Mr. *High-mind*. *My heart riseth against him*, said Mr. *Enmity*. *He is a Rogue*, said Mr. *Lyar*. *Hanging is too good for him*, said Mr. *Cruelty*. *Let's dispatch him out of the way*, said Mr. *Hate-light*. Then said Mr. *Implacable*, *Might I have all the World given me, I could not be reconciled to him, therefore let us forthwith bring him in guilty of death*: And so they did, therefore he was presently Condemned, To be had from the place where he was, to the place from whence he came, and there to be put to the most cruel death that could be invented.

*They conclude to bring him in guilty of death.*

They therefore brought him out, to do with him according to their Law; and first they Scourged him, then they Buffeted him, then they Lanced his flesh with Knives; after that, they Stoned him with Stones, then prickt him with their Swords, and last of all they burned him to Ashes at the Stake.<sup>1</sup> Thus came *Faithful* to his end. Now, I saw that there stood behind the multitude, a Chariot and a couple of Horses, waiting for *Faithful*,

*The cruel death of Faithful.*

*A Chariot and Horses*

<sup>1</sup> Brave *Faithful*, Bravely done in Word and Deed!  
Judge, Witnesses, and Jury, have instead  
Of overcoming thee, but shewn their Rage,  
When thou art dead, thou'lt live from Age to Age.

*wait to take  
away Faithful.*

*Christian is  
still alive.*

who (so soon as his adversaries had dispatched him) was taken up into it, and straightway was carried up through the Clouds, with sound of Trumpet, the nearest way to the Coelestial Gate. But as for *Christian*, he had some respite, and was remanded back to prison, so he there remained for a space: But he that over-rules all things, having the power of their rage in his own hand, so wrought it about, that *Christian* for that time escaped them, and went his way.

And as he went he Sang, saying,

*The Song that  
Christian  
made of  
Faithful  
after his  
death.*

*Well, Faithful, thou hast faithfully profest  
Unto thy Lord: with whom thou shalt be blest;  
When Faithless ones, with all their vain delights,  
Are crying out undre their hellish plights  
Sing, Faithful, sing; and let thy name survive,  
For though they kill'd thee, thou art yet alive.*

*Christian  
has another  
Companion.*

Now I saw in my Dream, that *Christian* went not forth alone, for there was one whose name was *Hopeful*, (being made so by the beholding of *Christian* and *Faithful* in their words and behaviour, in their sufferings at the *fair*) who joined himself unto him, and entering into a brotherly covenant, told him that he would be his Companion. Thus one died to bear Testimony to the Truth, and another rises out of his Ashes to be a Companion with *Christian* in his Pilgrimage. This *Hopeful* also told *Christian*, that there were many more of the men in the *fair* that would take their time and follow after.

*There are  
more of the  
men of the  
fair will  
follow.*

*They overtake  
By-ends.*

So I saw that quickly after they were got out of the *fair*, they overtook one that was going before them, whose name was *By-ends*; so they said to him, What Country-man, Sir? and how far go you this way? He told them, That he came from the Town of *Fair-speech*,



and he was going to the Cœlestial City, (but told them not his name.)

Prov. 26. 25.

*From Fair-speech, said Christian ; is there any that be good that lives there ?*

*By-ends.* Yes, said *By-ends*, I hope.

*Chr. Pray Sir, what may I call you ?* said Christian.

*By-ends.* I am a Stranger to you, and you to me ; if you be going this way, I shall be glad of your Company ; if not, I must be content.

*By-ends loth to tell his name.*

*Chr. This Town of Fair-speech, I have heard of, and, as I remember, they say it's a Wealthy place.*

*By-ends.* Yes, I will assure you that it is, and I have very many Rich Kindred there.

*Chr. Pray who are your Kindred there, if a man may be so bold ?*

*By-ends.* Almost the whole Town ; and in particular my Lord *Turn-about*, my Lord *Time-server*, my Lord *Fair-speech*, (from whose Ancestors that Town first took its name) also Mr. *Smooth-man*, Mr. *Facing-both-ways*, Mr. *Any-thing* ; and the Parson of our Parish, Mr. *Two-tongues*, was my Mother's own Brother, by Father's side ; And, to tell you the Truth, I am become a Gentleman of good Quality ; yet my Great Grand-father was but a Waterman, looking one way, and Rowing another ; and I got most of my Estate by the same occupation.

*Chr. Are you a Married man ?*

*By-ends.* Yes, and my Wife is a very Virtuous woman, the Daughter of a Virtuous woman : She was my Lady *Feigning's* Daughter, therefore she came of a very Honourable Family, and is arrived to such a pitch of Breeding, that she knows how to carry it to all, even to Prince and Peasant. 'Tis true, we somewhat differ in Religion from those of the stricter sort, yet but in two

*The wife and Kindred of By-ends.*

*Where By-ends differs from others in Religion.*

small points : First, we never strive against Wind and Tide. Secondly, we are always most zealous when Religion goes in his Silver Slippers ; we love much to walk with him in the Street, if the Sun shines, and the people applaud him.

Then *Christian* stept a little aside to his Fellow *Hopeful*, saying, It runs in my mind that this is one *By-ends* of *Fair-speech*, and if it be he, we have as very a Knave in our Company, as dwelleth in all these parts. Then said *Hopeful*, *Ask him, methinks he should not be ashamed of his name.* So *Christian* came up with him again, and said, Sir, you talk as if you knew something more than all the World doth, and if I take not my mark amiss, I deem I have half a guess of you : Is not your name Mr. *By-ends* of *Fair-speech* ?

*By-ends.* This is not my name, but indeed it is a Nick-name that is given me by some that cannot abide me, and I must be content to bear it as a reproach, as other good men have borne theirs before me.

*Chr.* *But did you never give an occasion to men to call you by this name ?*

*By-ends.* Never, never ! The worst that ever I did to give them an occasion to give me this name, was, That I had always the luck to jump in my Judgment with the present way of the times, whatever it was, and my chance was to get thereby ; but if things are thus cast upon me, let me count them a blessing, but let not the malicious load me therefore with reproach.

*Chr.* *I thought indeed that you were the man that I heard of, and to tell you what I think, I fear this name belongs to you more properly than you are willing we should think it doth.*

*By-ends.* Well, If you will thus imagine, I cannot help

*How By-ends got his name.*

it. You shall find me a fair Company-keeper, if you will still admit me your associate.

Chr. *If you will go with us, you must go against Wind and Tide, the which, I perceive, is against your opinion: You must also own Religion in his Rags, as well as when in his Silver Slippers, and stand by him too, when bound in Irons, as well as when he walketh the Streets with applause.*

*He desires to keep Company with Christian.*

*By-ends.* You must not impose, nor Lord it over my Faith; leave me to my liberty, and let me go with you.

Chr. *Not a step further, unless you will do in what I propound, as we.*

Then said *By-ends*, I shall never desert my old Principles, since they are harmless and profitable. If I may not go with you, I must do as I did before you overtook me, even go by myself, until some overtake me that will be glad of my Company.

Now I saw in my dream, that *Christian* and *Hopeful* forsook him, and kept their distance before him; but one of them, looking back, saw three men following Mr. *By-ends*; and, behold, as they came up with him, he made them a very low *Congee*; and they also gave him a *Compliment*. The men's names were, Mr. *Hold-the-World*, Mr. *Money-love*, and Mr. *Save-all*, men that Mr. *By-ends* had formerly been acquainted with, for in their minority they were schoolfellows, and taught by one Mr. *Gripe-man*, a Schoolmaster in *Love-gain*, which is a Market-town in the County of *Coveting*, in the North. This Schoolmaster taught them the art of getting, either by violence, cousenage, flattery, lying, or by putting on a guise of Religion; and these four Gentlemen had attained much of the art of their Master, so that they could each of them have kept such a School themselves.

*By-ends and Christian part.*

*He has new companions.*

Well, when they had, as I said, thus saluted each other, Mr. *Money-love* said to Mr. *By-ends*, Who are they upon the Road before us? for *Christian* and *Hopeful* were yet within view.

By-ends'  
character of  
the pilgrims.

*By*. They are a couple of far countrymen, that, after their mode, are going on Pilgrimage.

*Money*. Alas! why did not they stay, that we might have had their good company? for *they* and *we*, and *you*, sir, I hope are all going on a Pilgrimage.

*By*. We are so, indeed; but the men before us are so rigid, and love so much their own notions, and do also so lightly esteem the Opinions of others, that let a man be never so godly, yet if he jumps not with them in all things, they thrust him quite out of their company.

Mr. *Save-all*. That's bad; but we read of some *that are righteous overmuch*, and such men's rigidness prevails with them to judge and condemn all but themselves. But I pray, *what*, and *how* many, were the things wherein you differed?

*By*. Why they, after their headstrong manner, conclude that it is duty to rush on their Journey *all* weathers; and I am for waiting for *Wind* and *Tide*. They are for hazarding all for God at a clap; and I am for taking *all* advantages to secure my life and estate. They are for holding *their notions*, though all other men be against them; but I am for Religion in what, and so far as, the times and my safety will bear it. They are for Religion when in rags and contempt; but I am for him when he walks in his golden slippers, in the Sunshine, and with applause.

Mr. *Hold-the-World*. Ay, and hold you there still, good Mr. *By-ends*; for, for my part, I can count him but a fool, that having the liberty to keep what he has, shall

be so unwise as to lose it. Let us be wise as *Serpents*. 'Tis best to make hay when the sun shines. You see how the Bee lieth still all winter, and bestirs her only when she can have profit with pleasure. God sends sometimes Rain, and sometimes Sunshine; if they be such fools to go through the first, yet let us be content to take fair weather along with us. For my part, I like that religion best that will stand with the security of God's good blessings unto us; for who can imagine, that is ruled by his reason, since God has bestowed upon us the good things of this life, but that he would have us keep them for his sake? *Abraham* and *Solomon* grew rich in religion; and *Job* says, that a good man *shall lay up gold as dust*. But he must not be such as the men before us, if they be as you have described them.

Mr. *Save-all*. I think that we are all agreed in this matter; and therefore there needs no more words about it.

Mr. *Money-love*. No, there needs no more words about this matter indeed; for he that believes neither Scripture nor reason, (and you see we have both on our side,) neither knows his own liberty nor seeks his own safety.

Mr. *By-ends*. My Brethren, we are, as you see, going all on Pilgrimage; and for our better diversion from things that are bad, give me leave to propound unto you this question.

*Suppose a man, a Minister or a Tradesman, &c., should have an advantage lie before him to get the good blessings of this life, yet so as that he can by no means come by them, except, in appearance at least, he becomes extraordinary Zealous in some points of Religion that he meddled not with before; may he not use this means to attain his end, and yet be a right honest man?*

Mr. *Money-love*. I see the bottom of your question ; and, with these Gentlemen's good leave, I will endeavour to shape you an answer. And first, to speak to your question as it concerneth a *Minister* himself. *Suppose a Minister a worthy man, possessed but of a very small benefice, and has in his eye a greater, more fat and plump by far ; he has also now an opportunity of getting of it, yet so as by being more studious, by preaching more frequently and zealously, and, because the temper of the people requires it, by altering of some of his principles ; for my part, I see no reason but a man may do this, provided he has a call. Ay, and more a great deal besides, and yet be an honest man. For why ?*

1. His desire of a greater benefice is lawful, (this cannot be contradicted,) since it is set before him by providence ; so then he may get it if he can, *making no question for conscience sake.*

2. Besides, his desire after that benefice makes him more studious, a more zealous preacher, &c., and so makes him a better man, yea, makes him better improve his parts, which is according to the mind of God.

3. Now, as for his complying with the temper of his people, by dissenting, to serve them, some of his principles, this argueth, 1. That he is of a self-denying temper. 2. Of a sweet and winning deportment. 3. And so more fit for the Ministerial function.

4. I conclude, then, that a Minister that changes a *small* for a *great*, should not, for so doing, be judged as covetous ; but rather, since he is improved in his parts and industry thereby, be counted as one that pursues his call, and the opportunity put into his hand to do good.

And now to the second part of the question, which concerns the *Tradesman* you mentioned : suppose such

an one to have but a poor imploy in the world, but by becoming Religious, he may mend his market, perhaps get a rich wife, or more and far better customers to his shop. For my part, I see no reason but this may be lawfully done. For why?

1. To become religious is a virtue, by what means soever a man becomes so.

2. Nor is it unlawful to get a rich wife, or more custom to my shop.

3. Besides, the man that gets these by becoming religious, gets that which is good of them that are good, by becoming good himself; so then here is a good wife, and good customers, and good gain, and all these by becoming religious, which is good; therefore, to become religious to get all these is a good and profitable design.

This answer thus made by this Mr. *Money-love* to Mr. *By-ends*' question, was highly applauded by them all; wherefore they concluded upon the whole, that it was most wholesome and advantageous. And because, as they thought, no man was able to contradict it, and because *Christian* and *Hopeful* were yet within call, they jointly agreed to assault them with the question as soon as they overtook them; and the rather, because they had opposed Mr. *By-ends* before. So they called after them, and they stopped and stood still till they came up to them; but they concluded as they went, that not Mr. *By-ends*, but old Mr. *Hold-the-World*, should propound the question to them, because, as they supposed, their answer to him would be without the remainder of that heat, that was kindled betwixt Mr. *By-ends* and them at their parting a little before.

So they came up to each other, and after a short salutation, Mr. *Hold-the-World* propounded the question

to *Christian* and his fellow, and bid them to answer it if they could.

John 6. *Chr.* Then said *Christian*, Even a babe in Religion may answer ten thousand such questions. For if it be unlawful to follow Christ for loaves, as it is ; how much more abominable is it to make of him and religion a stalking-horse to get and enjoy the world ! Nor do we find any other than Heathens, Hypocrites, Devils, and Witches, that are of this opinion.

1. *Heathens* : for when *Hamor* and *Shechem* had a mind to the Daughter and Cattle of *Jacob*, and saw that there was no way for them to come at them but by becoming circumcised, they say to their companions, If every male of us be circumcised, as they are circumcised, shall not their Cattle, and their substance, and every beast of theirs be ours ? Their Daughter and their Cattle were that which they sought to obtain, and their Religion the stalking horse they made use of to come at them.

Gen. 34. 20-23.

Read the whole story.

2. The Hypocritical Pharisees were also of this Religion : long prayers were their pretence ; but to get widows' houses was their intent, and greater damnation

Luke 20. 46, 47.

3. *Judas* the Devil was also of this Religion : he was religious for the bag, that he might be possessed of what was therein ; but he was lost, cast away, and the very Son of perdition.

4. *Simon* the Witch was of this Religion too ; for he would have had the Holy Ghost, that he might have got money therewith ; and his sentence from *Peter's* mouth was according.

Acts 8. 19-22.

5. Neither will it out of my mind, but that that man that takes up Religion for the world, will throw



away Religion for the world; for so surely as *Judas* designed the world in becoming religious, so surely did he also sell Religion and his Master for the same. To answer the question, therefore, affirmatively, as I perceive you have done, and to accept of, as authentic, such answer, is both Heathenish, Hypocritical, and Devilish; and your reward will be according to your works. Then they stood staring one upon another, but had not wherewith to answer *Christian*. *Hopeful* also approved of the soundness of *Christian's* answer; so there was a great silence among them. Mr. *By-ends* and his company also staggered, and kept behind, that *Christian* and *Hopeful* might outgo them. Then said *Christian* to his fellow, If these men cannot stand before the sentence of men, what will they do with the sentence of God? And if they are mute when dealt with by vessels of clay, what will they do when they shall be rebuked by the flames of a devouring fire?

Then *Christian* and *Hopeful* outwent them again, and went till they came at a delicate Plain, called *Ease*, where they went with much content; but that plain was but narrow, so they were quickly got over it. Now at the further side of that plain, was a little Hill called *Lucre*, and in that Hill a *Silver-Mine*, which some of them that had formerly gone that way, because of the rarity of it, had turned aside to see; but going too near the brink of the pit, the ground being deceitful under them, broke, and they were slain; some also had been maimed there, and could not to their dying day be their own men again.

Then I saw in my Dream, that a little off the road, over against the *Silver-Mine*, stood *Demas*, (*Gentleman-like*), to call to Passengers to come and see: Who said

*The ease that Pilgrims have is but little in this life.*

*Lucre Hill a dangerous Hill.*

*Demas at the Hill Lucre.*

*He calls to Christian and Hopeful to come to him.*

to *Christian* and his Fellow ; Ho, turn aside hither, and I will shew you a thing.

*Chr.* *What thing so deserving, as to turn us out of the way ?*

*De.* Here is a Silver-Mine, and some digging in it for Treasure ; if you will come, with a little pains, you may richly provide for yourselves.

*Hopeful tempted to go, but Christian holds him back.*

*Hope.* Then said *Hopeful*, *Let us go see.*

*Chr.* Not I, said *Christian* ; I have heard of this place before now, and how many have there been slain ; and besides, that Treasure is a snare to those that seek it, for it hindreth them in their Pilgrimage. Then *Christian* called to *Demas*, saying, *Is not the place dangerous ? hath it not hindred many in their Pilgrimage ?*

Hos. 4. 18.

*De.* Not very dangerous, except to those that are careless : but withal, he *blushed* as he spake.

*Chr.* Then said *Christian* to *Hopeful*, *Let us not stir a step, but still keep on our way.*

*Hope.* *I will warrant you, when By-ends comes up, if he hath the same invitation as we, he will turn in thither to see.*

*Chr.* No doubt, thereof, for his principles lead him that way, and a hundred to one but he dies there.

*De.* Then *Demas* called again, saying, *But will you not come over and see ?*

*Christian roundeth up Demas.*  
2 Tim. 4. 10.

*Chr.* Then *Christian* roundly answered, saying, *Demas*, *Thou art an Enemy to the right ways of the Lord of this way, and hast been already condemned for thine own turning aside, by one of his Majesties Judges : and why seekest thou to bring us into the like condemnation ? Besides, if we at all turn aside, our Lord the King will certainly hear thereof ; and will there put us to shame, where we would stand with boldness before him.*

*Demas* cried again, That he also was one of their fraternity; and that if they would tarry a little, he also himself would walk with them.

*Chr.* Then said *Christian*, What is thy name? is it not the same by the which I have called thee?

*De.* Yes, my name is *Demas*, I am the son of *Abraham*.

*Chr.* I know you, *Gehazi* was your Great-Grandfather, <sup>2 Kings 5. 20.</sup> and *Judas* your Father, and you have trod their steps. <sup>Mat. 26. 14, 15.</sup> It is but a devilish prank that thou usest: Thy Father <sup>chap. 27. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5.</sup> was hanged for a Traitor, and thou deservest no better reward. Assure thyself, that when we come to the King, we will do him word of this thy behaviour. Thus they went their way.

By this time *By-ends* and his companions were come again within sight, and they at the first beck went over to *Demas*. Now whether they fell into the Pit, by looking over the brink thereof; or whether they went down to dig, or whether they were smothered in the bottom, by the damps that commonly arise, of these things I am not certain: But this I observed, that they never were seen again in the way. Then sang *Christian*:

*By-ends and Silver-Demas both agree;*  
*One calls, the other runs, that he may be*  
*A sharer in his Lucre: so these two*  
*Take up in this world, and no further go.*

Now I saw, that just on the other side of this Plain, the Pilgrims came to a place where stood an old *Monument* hard by the Highway-side, at the sight of which they were both concerned, because of the strangeness of the form thereof; for it seemed to them as if it had been a *Woman* transformed into the shape of a

*They see a  
 strange  
 monument.*

Pillar : here, therefore, they stood looking and looking upon it, but could not for a time tell what they should make thereof. At last *Hopeful* espied written above upon the head thereof a Writing in an unusual hand ; but he being no Scholar, called to *Christian* (for he was learned) to see if he could pick out the meaning : so he came, and after a little laying of Letters together, he found the same to be this, *Remember Lot's wife*. So he read it to his fellow ; after which they both concluded, that that was the Pillar of Salt into which *Lot's wife* was turned, for her looking back with a *covetous heart*, when she was going from *Sodom* for safety. Which sudden and amazing sight gave them occasion of this discourse.

Gen. 19. 26.

*Chr.* Ah, my brother ! this is a seasonable sight, it came opportunely to us after the invitation which *Demas* gave us to come over to view the hill *Lucre* ; and had we gone over, as he desired us, and as thou wast inclined to do, (my Brother,) we had, for aught I know, been made ourselves like this Woman, a spectacle for those that shall come after, to behold.

*Hope.* I am sorry that I was so foolish, and am made to wonder that I am not now as *Lot's Wife* ; for wherein was the difference 'twixt her sin and mine ; she only looked back, and I had a desire to go see ; let *Grace* be adored, and let me be ashamed that ever such a thing should be in mine heart.

*Chr.* Let us take notice of what we see here, for our help for time to come. *This* woman escaped one Judgment, for she fell not by the destruction of *Sodom* ; yet she was destroyed by another ; as we see, she is turned into a Pillar of Salt.

*Hope.* True, and she may be to us both *Caution* and *Example* ; *Caution*, that we should shun her sin, or a

sign of what judgment will overtake such as shall not be prevented by this caution ; So *Korah, Dathan,* and *Abiram,* with the two hundred and fifty men that perished in their sin, did also become a sign or example to others to beware : but above all, I muse at one thing, Numb. 26. 9, 10. to wit, how *Demas* and his fellows can stand so confidently yonder to look for that treasure, which this Woman but for looking behind her, after (for we read not that she stept one foot out of the way) was turned into a pillar of Salt ; specially since the Judgment which overtook her did make her an example within sight of where they are ; for they cannot chuse but see her, did they but lift up their eyes.

*Chr.* It is a thing to be wondered at, and it argueth that their hearts are grown desperate in the case ; and I cannot tell who to compare them to so fitly, as to them that pick Pockets in the presence of the Judge, or that will cut Purses under the Gallows. It is said of the men of *Sodom,* that they were sinners exceedingly, Gen. 13. 13. because they were sinners before the Lord, that is, in his eye-sight, and notwithstanding the kindnesses that he had showed them ; for the land of *Sodom* was now like the Garden of *Eden* Ver. 10. heretofore. This, therefore, provoked him the more to jealousy, and made their plague as hot as the fire of the Lord out of Heaven could make it. And it is most rationally to be concluded, that such, even such as these are, that shall sin in the sight, yea, and that too in despite of such examples that are set continually before them to caution them to the contrary, must be partakers of severest Judgments.

*Hope.* Doubtless thou hast said the truth ; but what a mercy is it that neither thou, but especially I, am not made myself this example : this ministreth occasion

to us to thank God, to fear before him, and always to remember *Lot's Wife*.

*A River.*  
Ps. 65. 9.  
Rev. 22.  
Ezek. 47.

I saw then, that they went on their way to a pleasant River, which *David the King* called the *River of God*; but *John*, *The River of the water of life*: Now their way lay just upon the bank of the River: here therefore *Christian* and his Companion walked with great delight; They drank also of the water of the River, which was pleasant and enlivening to their weary Spirits: besides, on the banks of this River on either side were *green Trees*, that bore all manner of Fruit; and the leaves of the Trees were good for Medicine; with the Fruit of these Trees they were also much delighted; and the leaves they eat to prevent Surfeits, and other Diseases that are incident to those that heat their blood by Travels.

*Trees by the River.*  
*The Fruit and leaves of the Trees.*

*A Meadow in which they lie down to sleep.*  
Ps. 23. 2.  
Isa. 14. 30.

On either side of the River was also a Meadow, curiously beautified with Lilies; And it was green all the year long. In this Meadow they lay down and slept, for here they might *lie down safely*. When they awoke, they gathered again of the Fruit of the Trees, and drank again of the Water of the River: and then lay down again to sleep. Thus they did several days and nights. Then they sang:

*Behold ye how these Crystal streams do glide*  
*(To comfort Pilgrims) by the Highway side;*  
*The Meadows green, besides their fragrant smell,*  
*Yield dainties for them: And he that can tell*  
*What pleasant Fruit, yea Leaves, these Trees do yield,*  
*Will soon sell all, that he may buy this Field.*

So when they were disposed to go on (for they were not, as yet, at their Journey's end) they eat and drank, and departed.

Now I beheld in my Dream, that they had not

journeyed far, but the River and the way, for a time parted. At which they were not a little sorry, yet they durst not go out of the way. Now the way from the River was rough, and their feet tender by reason of their Travels; *So the souls of the Pilgrims were much discouraged, because of the way.* Wherefore still as they went on, they wished for better way. Now a little before them, there was on the left hand of the Road, a *Meadow*, and a Stile to go over into it, and that *Meadow* is called *By-Path-Meadow*. Then said *Christian* to his fellow, If this *Meadow* lieth along by our way side, let's go over into it. Then he went to the Stile to see, and behold a Path lay along by the way on the other side of the fence. 'Tis according to my wish said *Christian*, here is the easiest going; come good *Hopeful*, and let us go over.

Numb. 21. 4.

*By-Path-Meadow.*  
One temptation does make way for another.

*Hope.* But how if this Path should lead us out of the way?

*Chr.* That's not like, said the other; look, doth it not go along by the way side? So *Hopeful*, being perswaded by his fellow, went after him over the Stile. When they were gone over, and were got into the Path, they found it very easy for their feet; and withal, they looking before them, espied a Man walking as they did, (and his name was *Vain-confidence*) so they called after him, and asked him whither that way led? he said, To the *Cœlestial Gate*. Look, said *Christian*, did not I tell you so? by this you may see we are right: so they followed, and he went before them. But behold the night came on, and it grew very dark, so that they that were behind, lost the sight of him that went before.

Strong Christians may lead weak ones out of the way.

See what it is too suddenly to fall in with strangers.

He therefore that went before (*Vain-confidence* by name) not seeing the way before him, fell into a deep Pit, which

Isa. 9. 16.

*A Pit to catch the vain-glorious in.* was on purpose there made by the Prince of those grounds, to catch *vain-glorious* fools withal; and was dashed in pieces with his fall.

*Reasoning between Christian and Hopeful.*

Now *Christian* and his fellow heard him fall. So they called, to know the matter, but there was none to answer, only they heard a groaning. Then said *Hopeful*, Where are we now? Then was his fellow silent, as mistrusting that he had led him out of the way. And now it began to rain, and thunder, and lighten in a very dreadful manner, and the water rose amain.

Then *Hopeful* groaned in himself, saying, *Oh that I had kept on my way!*

*Chr.* Who could have thought that this path should have led us out of the way?

*Hope.* *I was afraid on't at the very first, and therefore gave you that gentle caution. I would have spoke plainer, but that you are older than I.*

*Christian's repentance for leading out of the way.*

*Chr.* Good Brother be not offended, I am sorry I have brought thee out of the way, and that I have put thee into such eminent danger; pray my Brother forgive me, I did not do it of an evil intent.

*Hope.* *Be comforted my Brother for I forgive thee; and believe too, that this shall be for our good.*

*Chr.* I am glad I have with me a merciful Brother: But we must not stand thus, let's try to go back again.

*Hope.* *But good Brother let me go before.*

*Chr.* No, if you please, let me go first; that if there be any danger, I may be first therein, because by my means we are both gone out of the way.

Jer. 31. 21.

*Hope.* *No, said Hopeful, you shall not go first, for your mind being troubled, may lead you out of the way again.* Then for their encouragement, they heard the voice of one saying, *Let thine heart be towards the High-*



way, even the way that thou wentest, turn again : But by this time the Waters were greatly risen, by reason of which, the way of going back was very dangerous. (Then I thought that it is easier going out of the way when we are in, than going in when we are out.) Yet they adventured to go back ; but it was so dark, and the flood was so high, that in their going back, they had like to have been drowned nine or ten times.

*They are in danger of drowning as they go back.*

Neither could they, with all the skill they had, get again to the Stile that night. Wherefore, at last, lighting under a little shelter, they sat down there till the day brake ; but being weary, they fell asleep.<sup>1</sup> Now there

*They sleep in the grounds of Giant Despair.*

was not far from the place where they lay, a *Castle*, called *Doubting Castle*, the owner whereof was *Giant Despair*, and it was in his grounds they now were sleeping ; wherefore he getting up in the morning early, and walking up and down in his *Fields*, caught *Christian* and *Hopeful* asleep in his grounds. Then with a *grim* and *surlly* voice he bid them awake, and asked them whence they were ? and what they did in his grounds ? They told him, they were Pilgrims, and that they had lost their way. Then said the *Giant*, You have this night trespassed on me, by trampling in, and lying on my grounds, and therefore you must go along with me. So they were forced to go, because he was stronger then they. They also had but little to say, for they knew themselves in a fault. The *Giant* therefore drove them before him, and put them into his *Castle*, into a very dark *Dungeon*, nasty and stinking to the spirits of these two men : Here

*He finds them in his ground, and carries them to Doubting Castle. :*

*The Grievousness of their Imprisonment.*

<sup>1</sup> The Pilgrims now, to gratify the Flesh,  
Will seek its Ease ; but oh how they afresh  
Do thereby plunge themselves new Griefs into !  
Who seek to please the Flesh, themselves undo.

Ps. 88. 18.

then they lay, from *Wednesday* morning till *Saturday* night, without one bit of bread, or drop of drink, or light, or any to ask how they did. They were therefore here in evil case, and were far from friends and acquaintance. Now in this place, *Christian* had double sorrow, because 'twas through his unadvised Counsel that they were brought into this distress.

Now *Giant Despair* had a wife, and her name was *Diffidence*: so when he was gone to bed, he told his Wife what he had done, to wit, that he had taken a couple of Prisoners, and cast them into his *Dungeon* for trespassing on his grounds. Then he asked her also what he had best to do further to them. So she asked him what they were, whence they came, and whither they were bound, and he told her. Then she counselled him, that when he arose in the morning he should beat them without any mercy. So when he arose, he getteth him a grievous Crabtree Cudgel, and goes down into the *Dungeon* to them, and there first falls to rating of them as if they were dogs, although they gave him never a word of distaste. Then he falls upon them, and beats them fearfully, in such sort that they were not able to help themselves, or to turn them upon the floor. This done, he withdraws and leaves them there to condole their misery, and to mourn under their distress: so all that day they spent the time in nothing but sighs and bitter lamentations. The next night she, talking with her Husband about them further, and understanding that they were yet alive, did advise him to counsel them to make away themselves. So when morning was come, he goes to them in a surly manner, as before, and perceiving them to be very sore with the stripes that he had given them the day before, he told them, that since they were never

On Thursday  
Giant De-  
spair beats  
his prisoners.

On Friday  
Giant De-  
spair coun-  
sels them to  
kill them-  
selves.

like to come out of that place, their only way would be forthwith to make an end of themselves, either with Knife, Halter, or Poison : for why, said he, should you chuse life, seeing it is attended with so much bitterness ? But they desired him to let them go. With that he looked ugly upon them, and rushing to them, had doubtless made an end of them himself, but that he fell into one of his fits, (for he sometimes, in sunshine weather, fell into fits,) and lost for a time the use of his hand ; wherefore he withdrew, and left them as before to consider what to do. Then did the Prisoners consult between themselves, whether 'twas best to take his counsel or no ; and thus they began to discourse :

*The Giant sometimes has fits.*

*Chr.* Brother, said *Christian*, what shall we do ? The life that we now live is miserable. For my part, I know not whether is best to live thus, or to die out of hand. *My soul chuseth strangling rather than life*, and the Grave is more easy for me than this Dungeon. Shall we be ruled by the Giant ?

*Christian crushed. Job 7. 15*

*Hope.* Indeed our present condition is dreadful, and death would be far more welcome to me than thus for ever to abide : But yet let us consider, the Lord of the Country to which we are going hath said, Thou shalt do no murther, no, not to another man's person ; much more then are we forbidden to take his counsel to kill ourselves. Besides, he that kills another, can but commit murder upon his body ; but for one to kill himself, is to kill body and soul at once. And, moreover, my Brother, thou talkest of ease in the Grave ; but hast thou forgotten the Hell, whither for certain the murderers go ? for no murderer hath eternal life, &c. And let us consider again, that all the Law is not in the hand of Giant Despair ; Others, so far as I can understand, have been taken by him as well as we, and

*Hopeful comforts him*

yet have escaped out of his hand. Who knows but that God, that made the world, may cause that Giant Despair may die ; or that at some time or other he may forget to lock us in ; or but he may, in a short time, have another of his fits before us, and may lose the use of his limbs ? And if ever that should come to pass again, for my part, I am resolved to pluck up the heart of a man, and to try my utmost to get from under his hand. I was a fool that I did not try to do it before. But, however, my Brother, let's be patient, and endure a while ; the time may come that may give us a happy release ; but let us not be our own murderers. With these words Hopeful at present did moderate the mind of his Brother ; so they continued together (in the dark) that day, in their sad and doleful condition.

Well, towards evening the Giant goes down into the Dungeon again, to see if his Prisoners had taken his counsel. But when he came there, he found them alive ; and truly, alive was all ; for now, what for want of Bread and Water, and by reason of the Wounds they received when he beat them, they could do little but breathe : But I say, he found them alive ; at which he fell into a grievous rage, and told them, that seeing they had disobeyed his counsel, it should be worse with them than if they had never been born.

At this they trembled greatly, and I think that *Christian* fell into a Swound ; but coming a little to himself again, they renewed their discourse about the *Giant's* counsel, and whether yet they had best to take it or no. Now *Christian* again seemed to be for doing it ; but Hopeful made his second reply as followeth :

*Christian*  
still dejected.

Hopeful  
comforts him  
again by call.

Hope. *My Brother, said he, remembrest thou not how valiant thou hast been heretofore ? Apollyon could not*

*crush thee, nor could all that thou didst hear, or see, or feel in the Valley of the Shadow of Death. What hardship, terror, and amazement hast thou already gone through! and art thou now nothing but fear? Thou seest that I am in the Dungeon with thee, a far weaker man by nature than thou art. Also this Giant has wounded me as well as thee, and hath also cut off the Bread and Water from my mouth, and with thee I mourn without the light. But let's exercise a little more patience. Remember how thou playedst the man at Vanity Fair, and wast neither afraid of the Chain nor Cage, nor yet of bloody Death: wherefore let us (at least to avoid the shame that becomes not a Christian to be found in) bear up with patience as well as we can.*

*ing former things to remembrance.*

Now night being come again, and the *Giant* and his Wife being in bed, she asked him concerning the Prisoners, and if they had taken his counsel: To which he replied, They are sturdy Rogues; they chuse rather to bear all hardships than to make away themselves. Then said she, Take them into the Castle-yard to-morrow, and show them the *Bones* and *Skulls* of those that thou hast already dispatched, and make them believe, ere a week comes to an end, thou also wilt tear them in pieces, as thou hast done their fellows before them.

So when the morning was come, the *Giant* goes to them again, and takes them into the Castle-yard, and shows them as his Wife had bidden him. These, said he, were pilgrims, as you are, once, and they trespassed in my grounds as you have done; and when I thought fit I tore them in pieces, and so within ten days I will do you; go, get you down to your Den again. And with that he beat them all the way thither. They lay, therefore, all day on *Saturday* in lamentable case, as before.

*On Saturday the Giant threatened that shortly he would pull them in pieces.*

Now when night was come, and when Mrs. *Diffidence* and her husband, the *Giant*, were got to bed, they began to renew their discourse of their prisoners; and withal the old *Giant* wondered, that he could neither by his blows nor counsel bring them to an end. And with that his Wife replied, I fear, said she, that they live in hope that some will come to relieve them; or that they have picklocks about them, by the means of which they hope to escape. And, sayest thou so, my dear, said the *Giant*, I will therefore search them in the morning.

Well, on *Saturday* about midnight they began to *pray*, and continued in Prayer till almost break of day.

Now a little before it was day, good *Christian*, as one half amazed, brake out in this passionate Speech, *What a fool, quoth he, am I thus to lie in a stinking Dungeon, when I may as well walk at liberty? I have a Key in my bosom, called Promise, that will, I am persuaded, open any Lock in Doubting Castle.* Then said *Hopeful*, That's good News; good Brother pluck it out of thy bosom and try: Then *Christian* pulled it out of his bosom, and began to try at the Dungeon door, whose bolt (as he turned the Key) gave back, and the door flew open with ease, and *Christian* and *Hopeful* both came out. Then he went to the outward door that leads into the *Castle yard*, and with his *Key* opened that door also. After he went to the *Iron Gate*, for that must be opened too, but that Lock went *damnable* hard, yet the Key did open it; then they thrust open the Gate to make their escape with speed, but that Gate, as it opened, made such a creaking, that it waked *Giant Despair*, who hastily rising to pursue his Prisoners, felt his Limbs to fail, for his fits took him again, so that he could by no means go after them. Then they went on, and came to

A Key in  
Christian's  
bosom called  
Promise,  
opens any  
Lock in  
Doubting  
Castle

the King's high-way again, and so were safe, because they were out of his Jurisdiction.

Now when they were gone over the Stile, they began to contrive with themselves what they should do at that Stile, to prevent those that should come after, from falling into the hands of *Giant Despair*. So they consented to erect there a Pillar, and to engrave upon the side thereof this sentence, *Over this Stile is the Way to Doubting-Castle, which is kept by Giant Despair who, despiseth the King of the Cœlestial Country, and seeks to destroy his holy Pilgrims.* Many therefore that followed after, read what was written, and escaped the danger. This done, they sang as follows.

*A Pillar  
erected by  
Christian  
and his  
fellow.*

*Out of the way we went, and then we found  
What 'twas to tread upon forbidden ground :  
And let them that come after have a care,  
Lest heedlessness makes them, as we, to fare :  
Lest they, for trespassing, his prisoners are,  
Whose Castle's Doubting, and whose name's Despair.*

They went then, till they came to the delectable Mountains,<sup>1</sup> which Mountains belong to the Lord of that Hill, of which we have spoken before ; so they went up to the Mountains, to behold the Gardens, and Orchards, the Vineyards, and Fountains of water, where also they drank, and washed themselves, and did freely eat of the Vineyards. Now there was on the tops of these Mountains, Shepherds feeding their flocks, and they stood by the high-way side. The Pilgrims therefore went to them,

*The delectable  
mountains.*

*They are re-  
freshed in the  
mountains.*

<sup>1</sup> Mountains delectable they now ascend,  
Where Shepherds be, which to them do commend  
Alluring things, and things that cautious are,  
Pilgrims are steady kept by Faith and Fear.

and leaning upon their staves, (as is common with weary Pilgrims, when they stand to talk with any by the way,) they asked, *Whose delectable Mountains are these? and whose be the sheep that feed upon them?*

*Talk with the Shepherds.*

*Shep.* These Mountains are *Immanuel's Land*, and they are within sight of his City, and the sheep also are his, and he laid down his life for them.

John 10. 11.

*Chr.* *Is this the way to the Cœlestial City?*

*Shep.* You are just in your way.

*Chr.* *How far is it thither?*

*Shep.* Too far for any, but those that shall get thither indeed.

*Chr.* *Is the way safe, or dangerous?*

*Shep.* Safe for those for whom it is to be safe, but transgressors shall fall therein.

Hos. 14. 9.

*Chr.* *Is there in this place any relief for Pilgrims that are weary and faint in the way?*

*Shep.* The Lord of these Mountains hath given us a charge, *Not to be forgetful to entertain strangers*: Therefore the good of the place is before you.

Heb. 13. 1, 2.

I saw also in my Dream, that when the Shepherds perceived that they were way-faring men, they also put questions to them, (to which they made answer as in other places,) as, *Whence came you?* and, *How got you into the way?* and, *By what means have you so persevered therein?* For but few of them that begin to come hither, do shew their face on these Mountains. But when the Shepherds heard their answers, being pleased therewith, they looked very lovingly upon them; and said, *Welcome to the delectable Mountains.*

*The Shepherds welcome them.*

*The Names of the Shepherds.*

The Shepherds, I say, whose names were, *Knowledge*, *Experience*, *Watchful*, and *Sincere*, took them by the hand, and had them to their Tents, and made them



partake of that which was ready at present. They said moreover, We would that you should stay here a while, to be acquainted with us, and yet more to solace yourselves with the good of these delectable Mountains. They then told them, That they were content to stay; and so they went to their rest that night, because it was very late.

Then I saw in my Dream, that in the morning, the Shepherds called up *Christian* and *Hopeful* to walk with them upon the Mountains: So they went forth with them, and walked a while, having a pleasant prospect on every side. Then said the Shepherds one to another, Shall we shew these Pilgrims some wonders? So when they had concluded to do it, they had them first to the top of a Hill called *Error*, which was very steep on the furthest side, and bid them look down to the bottom. So *Christian* and *Hopeful* lookt down, and saw at the bottom several men dashed all to pieces by a fall that they had from the top. Then said *Christian*, What meaneth this? The Shepherds answered; Have you not heard of them that were made to err, by hearkening to *Hymeneus*, and *Philetus*, as concerning the Faith of the Resurrection of the Body? They answered, Yes. Then said the Shepherds, Those that you see lie dashed in pieces at the bottom of this Mountain, *are they*: and they have continued to this day unburied (as you see) for an example to others to take heed how they clamber too high, or how they come too near the brink of this Mountain.

Then I saw that they had them to the top of another Mountain, and the name of that is *Caution*; and bid them look afar off. Which when they did, they perceived as they thought, several men walking up and down among

*They are shewn wonders.*

*The Mountain of Error.*

*2 Tim. 2. 17 18.*

*Mount Caution.*

the Tombs that were there. And they perceived that the men were blind, because they stumbled sometimes upon the Tombs, and because they could not get out from among them. Then said *Christian*, *What means this?*

The Shepherds then answered, Did you not see a little below these Mountains a *Stile* that led into a Meadow on the left hand of this way? They answered, Yes, Then said the Shepherds, From that *Stile* there goes a Path that leads directly to *Doubting-Castle*, which is kept by *Giant Despair*; and these men (pointing to them among the Tombs) came once on Pilgrimage, as you do now, even till they came to that same *Stile*. And because the right way was rough in that place, they chose to go out of it into that Meadow, and there were taken by *Giant Despair*, and cast into *Doubting Castle*; where, after they had a while been kept in the Dungeon, he at last did put out their eyes, and led them among those Tombs, where he has left them to wander to this very day; that

Prov. 21. 16. the saying of the wise Man might be fulfilled, *He that wandereth out of the way of understanding, shall remain in the Congregation of the dead*. Then *Christian* and *Hopeful* looked upon one another, with tears gushing out; but yet said nothing to the Shepherds.

Then I saw in my Dream, that the Shepherds had them to another place, in a bottom, where was a door in the side of a Hill; and they opened the door, and bid them look in. They looked in therefore, and saw that within it was very dark, and smoaky; they also thought that they heard there a rumbling noise as of fire, and a cry of some tormented, and that they smelt the scent of Brimstone. Then said *Christian*, *What means this?*

The Shepherds told them, this is a By-way to Hell, a

*A by-way to Hell.*

way that Hypocrites go in at ; namely, such as sell their Birthright, with *Esau* : such as sell their Master, with *Judas* : such as blaspheme the Gospel with *Alexander* : and that lie and dissemble, with *Ananias* and *Sapphira* his wife.

*Hope.* Then said *Hopeful* to the Shepherds, *I perceive that these had on them, even every one, a shew of Pilgrimage as we have now ; had they not ?*

*Shep.* Yes, and held it a long time, too.

*Hope.* *How far might they go on Pilgrimage in their day, since they notwithstanding were thus miserably cast away ?*

*Shep.* Some further, and some not so far as these Mountains.

Then said the Pilgrims one to another, *We had need to cry to the Strong for strength.*

*Shep.* Ay, and you will have need to use it when you have it, too.

By this time the Pilgrims had a desire to go forwards, and the Shepherds a desire they should ; so they walked together towards the end of the Mountains. Then said the Shepherds one to another, Let us here shew to the Pilgrims the Gates of the Cœlestial City, if they have skill to look through our Perspective Glass. The Pilgrims then lovingly accepted the motion : So they had them to the top of a high Hill called *Clear*, and gave them their Glass to look. Then they essayed to look, but the remembrance of that last thing that the Shepherds had shewed them, made their hands shake, by means of which impediment, they could not look steadily through the Glass ; yet they thought they saw something like the Gate, and also some of the Glory of the place. Then they went away and sang this song.

*The Shepherds' Perspective glass.*

*The Hill Clear.*

*The fruits of servile fear.*

*Thus by the Shepherds, Secrets are reveal'd,  
Which from all other men are kept conceal'd:  
Come to the Shepherds then, if you would see  
Things deep, things hid, and that mysterious be.*

*A twofold  
caution.*

When they were about to depart, one of the Shepherds gave them a note of the way, Another of them, *bid them beware of the flatterer*, The third, *bid them take heed that they sleep not upon the Incharmed Ground*, and the fourth, *bid them God speed*. So I awoke from my Dream.

*The Country  
of Conceit,  
out of which  
came Ignor-  
ance.*

And I slept, and Dreamed again, and saw the same two Pilgrims going down the Mountains along the High-way towards the City. Now a little below these Mountains, on the left hand, lieth the Country of *Conceit*, from which Country there comes into the way in which the Pilgrims walked, a little crooked Lane. Here therefore they met with a very brisk Lad, that came out of that Country; and his name was *Ignorance*. So *Christian* asked him, *From what parts he came? and whither he was going?*

*Christian  
and Ignor-  
ance hath  
some talk.*

*Ign.* Sir, I was born in the Country that lieth off there, a little on the left hand; and I am going to the *Cœlestial City*.

*Chr.* *But how do you think to get in at the Gate, for you may find some difficulty there.*

*Ign.* As other good People do, said he.

*Chr.* *But what have you to shew at that Gate, that may cause that the Gate should be opened to you?*

*The ground  
of Ignor-  
ance's hope.*

*Ign.* I know my Lord's will, and I have been a good Liver, I pay every man his own; I Pray, Fast, pay Tithes, and give Alms, and have left my Country, for whither I am going.

*Chr.* *But thou camest not in at the Wicket-gate, that is at the head of this way, thou camest in hither through*

*that same crooked Lane, and therefore I fear, however thou mayest think of thyself, when the reckoning day shall come, thou wilt have laid to thy charge, that thou art a Thief and a Robber, instead of getting admittance into the City.*

*Ignor.* Gentlemen, ye be utter strangers to me, I know you not, be content to follow the Religion of your Country, and I will follow the Religion of mine. I hope all will be well. And as for the Gate that you talk of, all the World knows that that is a great way off of our Country. I cannot think that any man in all our parts doth so much as know the way to it; nor need they matter whether they do or no, since we have, as you see, a fine pleasant green Lane, that comes down from our Country the next way into it.

*He saith to every one, that he is a fool.*

When *Christian* saw that the man was wise in his own conceit, he said to *Hopeful*, whisperingly, *There is more hopes of a fool than of him.* And said moreover,

*Pr. 26. 12.*

*When he that is a fool walketh by the way, his wisdom faileth him, and he saith to every one that he is a fool.*

*Ecc. 10. 3.*

What, shall we talk further with him? or out-go him at present? and so leave him to think of what he hath heard already; and then stop again for him afterwards, and see if by degrees we can do any good of him? Then said *Hopeful*:

*How to carry it to a fool.*

*Let Ignorance a little while now muse  
On what is said, and let him not refuse  
Good Counsel to Embrace, lest he remain  
Still Ignorant of what's the chiefest gain.  
God saith, Those that no understanding have,  
(Although he made them) them he will not save.*

*Hope.* He further added, It is not good, I think, to

say all to him at once, let us pass him by, if you will, and talk to him anon, *even as he is able to bear it.*

So they both went on, and Ignorance he came after. Now when they had passed him a little way, they entered into a very dark Lane, where they met a man

Matt. 12. 45.  
Prov. 5. 22.

whom seven Devils had bound with seven strong Cords, and were carrying of him back *to the door* that they saw in the side of the Hill. Now good *Christian* began to tremble, and so did *Hopeful* his Companion: Yet as the Devils led away the man, *Christian* looked to see if he knew him, and he thought it might be one *Turn-away* that dwelt in the *Town of Apostacy*. But he did not

The destruction  
of one  
Turn-away.

perfectly see his face, for he did hang his head like a Thief that is found: But being gone past, *Hopeful* looked after him, and espied on his back a Paper with this Inscription, *Wanton Professor, and damnable Apostate*. Then said *Christian* to his Fellow, Now I call to remembrance that which was told me of a thing that happened to a good man hereabout. The name of the man was *Little-Faith*, but a good man, and he dwelt in the *Town of Sincere*. The thing was this; at the entering in of this passage there comes down from

Christian  
telleth his  
Companion a  
story of  
Little-  
Faith.

Broadway  
gate.  
Dead man's  
Lane.

*Broad-way-gate* a Lane called *Dead-man's-lane*; so called, because of the Murders that are commonly done there. And this *Little-Faith* going on Pilgrimage, as we do now, chanced to sit down there and slept. Now there happened, at that time, to come down that *Lane* from *Broad-way-gate* three Sturdy Rogues, and their names were *Faint-heart, Mistrust* and *Guilt*, (three brothers) and they espying *Little-faith* where he was came galloping up with speed: Now the good man was just awaked from his sleep, and was getting up to go on his Journey. So they came all up to him, and with threatening

Language bid him *stand*. At this, *Littlefaith* lookt as white as a Clout, and had neither power to *fight* nor *fly*. Then said *Faint-heart*, Deliver thy Purse ; but he making no haste to do it, (for he was loth to lose his Money,) *Mistrust* ran up to him, and thrusting his hand into his Pocket, pull'd out thence a bag of Silver. Then he cried out, Thieves, thieves. With that, *Guilt* with a great Club that was in his hand, strook *Little-Faith* on the head, and with that blow fell'd him flat to the ground, were he lay bleeding as one that would bleed to death. All this while the Thieves stood by : But at last, they hearing that some were upon the Road, and fearing lest it should be one *Great-grace* that dwells in the City of *Good-confidence*, they betook themselves to their heels, and left this good man to shift for himself. Now after a while, *Little-faith* came to himself, and getting up, made shift to scabble on his way. This was the story.

*Little-faith*  
robbed by  
*Faint-heart*,  
*Mistrust*  
and *Guilt*.

*They got*  
away his  
*Silver*, and  
knockt him  
down.

Hope. *But did they take from him all that ever he had?*

*Chr.* No : The place where his Jewels were, they never ransack'd, so those he kept still ; but as I was told, the good man was much afflicted for his loss. For the Thieves got most of his spending Money. That which they got not (as I said) were Jewels, also he had a little odd Money left, but *scarce* enough to bring him to his Journey's end ; nay, (if I was not mis-informed) he was forced to beg as he went, to keep himself alive, (for his Jewels he might not sell.) But beg, and do what he could, *he went* (as we say) *with many a hungry belly*, the most part of the rest of the way.

*Little-faith*  
lost not his  
best things.

1 Pet. 4. 18.

*Little-faith*  
forced to beg  
to his Jour-  
ney's end.

Hope. *But is it not a wonder they got not from him his Certificate, by which he was to receive his admittance at the Cœlestial gate?*

*Chr.* 'Tis a wonder but they got not that : though

*He kept not  
his best  
things by his  
own cunning.*

2 Tim. 1. 14.

they miss'd it not through any good cunning of his, for he being dismayed with their coming upon him, had neither power nor skill to hide anything; so 'twas more by good Providence than by his endeavour, that they miss'd of *that good thing*.

Hope. *But it must needs be a comfort to him, that they got not this Jewel from him.*

2 Pet. 2. 9.

Chr. It might have been great comfort to him, had he used it as he should; but they that told me the story, said, That he made but little use of it all the rest of the way; and that because of the dismay that he had in their taking away his Money: indeed he forgot it a great part of the rest of his Journey; and besides, when at any time, it came into his mind, and he began to be comforted therewith, then would fresh thoughts of his loss come again upon him, and those thoughts would swallow up all.

Hope. *Alas poor Man! this could not but be a great grief unto him.*

*He is pitied  
by both.*

Chr. Grief! Ay, a grief indeed! would it not have been so to any of us, had we been used as he, to be Robbed and wounded too, and that in a strange place, as he was? 'Tis a wonder he did not die with grief, poor heart! I was told, that he scattered almost all the rest of the way with nothing but doleful and bitter complaints. Telling also to all that overtook him, or that he overtook in the way as he went, where he was Robbed, and how; who they were that did it, and what he lost; how he was wounded, and that he hardly escaped with life.

Hope. *But 'tis a wonder that his necessity did not put him upon selling, or pawning some of his Jewels, that he might have wherewith to relieve himself in his Journey.*

Christian  
snibbeth his

Chr. Thou talkest like one upon whose head is the Shell to this very day: For what should he *pawn* them?



or to whom should he sell them? In all that Country where he was Robbed, his Jewels were not accounted of, nor did he want that relief which could from thence be administred to him; besides, had his Jewels been missing at the Gate of the Cœlestial City, he had (and that he knew well enough) been excluded from an Inheritance there; and that would have been worse to him than the appearance and villany of ten thousand Thieves.

*Hope.* Why art thou so tart my Brother? *Esau* sold his Birth-right, and that for a mess of Pottage; and that Birth-right was his greatest Jewel: and if he, why might not Little-Faith do so too? Heb. 12. 16.

*Chr.* *Esau* did sell his Birth-right indeed, and so do many besides; and by so doing, exclude themselves from the chief blessing, as also that *Caitiff* did. But you must put a difference betwixt *Esau* and *Little-Faith*, and also betwixt their Estates. *Esau's* Birth-right was Typical, but *Little-faith's* Jewels were not so. *Esau's* belly was his God, but *Little-faith's* belly was not so. *Esau's* want lay in his fleshly appetite, *Little-faith's* did not so. Besides, *Esau* could see no further than to the fulfilling of his Lusts, *For I am at the point to die*, said he, and what good will this Birth-right do me? But *Little-faith*, though it was his lot to have but a little faith, was by his little faith kept from such extravagancies; and made to see and prize his Jewels more, than to sell them, as *Esau* did his Birth-right. You read not anywhere that *Esau* had faith, no not so much as a little: Therefore no marvel, if where the flesh only bears sway (as it will in that Man where no faith is to resist) if he sells his Birth-right, and his Soul and all, and that to the Devil of Hell; for it is with such, as it is with the Ass, *Who in her occasions cannot be turned* A discourse about Esau and Little-Faith.  
Esau was ruled by his lusts.  
Gen. 25. 32.  
Esau never had faith.  
Jer. 2. 24.

Little-faith  
could not live  
upon Esau's  
Pottage.

A compari-  
son between  
the Turtle-  
dove and the  
Crow.

away. When their minds are set upon their Lusts, they will have them whatever they cost. But *Little-faith* was of another temper, his mind was on things Divine; his livelihood was upon things that were Spiritual, and from above; Therefore to what end should he that is of such a temper sell his Jewels, (had there been any that would have bought them) to fill his mind with empty things? Will a man give a penny to fill his belly with Hay? or can you perswade the *Turtle-dove* to live upon Carrion, like the *Crow*? Though *faithless* ones, can for carnal Lusts, pawn, or mortgage, or sell what they have, and themselves outright to boot; yet they that have *faith, saving faith*, though but a *little* of it, cannot do so. Here therefore, my Brother, is thy mistake.

Hope. *I acknowledge it; but yet your severe reflection had almost made me angry.*

Chr. Why, I did but compare thee to some of the Birds that are of the brisker sort, who will run to and fro in untrodden paths with the shell upon their heads: but pass by that, and consider the matter under debate, and all shall be well betwixt thee and me.

Hopeful  
swaggers.

Hope. *But Christian, These three fellows, I am perswaded in my heart, are but a company of Cowards: would they have run else, think you, as they did, at the noise of one that was coming on the road? Why did not Little-faith pluck up a greater heart? He might, methinks, have stood one brush with them, and have yielded when there had been no remedy.*

No great  
heart for God  
where there  
is but little  
faith.

Chr. That they are Cowards, many have said, but few have found it so in the time of Trial. As for a *great heart*, *Little-faith* had none; and I perceive by thee, my Brother, hadst thou been the Man concerned, thou art but for a brush, and then to yield. And verily, since

this is the height of thy Stomach now they are at a distance from us, should they appear to thee, as they did to him, they might put thee to second thoughts.

*We have more courage when out, than when we are in.*

But consider again, they are but Journey-men Thieves, they serve under the King of the Bottomless pit; who, if need be, will come in to their aid himself, and his voice is *as the roaring of a Lion*. I myself have been engaged as this *Little-faith* was, and I found it a terrible thing. These three Villains set upon me, and I beginning like a *Christian* to resist, they gave but a call, and in came their Master: I would as the saying is, have given my life for a penny; but that, as God would have it, I was cloathed with Armour of proof. Ay, and yet though I was so harnessed, I found it hard work to quit myself like a man; no man can tell what in that Combat attends us, but he that hath been in the Battle himself.

*1 Pet. 5. 8. Christian tells his own experience in this case.*

Hope. *Well, but they ran you see, when they did but suppose that one Great-Grace was in the way.*

Chr. True, they have often fled, both they and their Master, when *Great-grace* hath but appeared, and no marvel, for he is *the King's Champion*: But I tro, you will put some difference between *Little-faith* and the *King's Champion*; all the King's Subjects are not his Champions: nor can they, when tried, do such feats of War as he. Is it meet to think that a little child should handle *Goliath* as *David* did? or that there should be the strength of an *Ox* in a *Wren*? Some are strong, some are weak, some have *great* faith, some have *little*: this man was one of the weak, and therefore he went to the walls.

*The King's Champion.*

Hope. *I would it had been Great-grace, for their sakes.*

Chr. If it had been he, he might have had his hands full: For I must tell you, That though *Great-grace* is

excellent good at his Weapons, and has and can, so long as he keeps them at Sword's point, do well enough with them: yet if they get within him, even *Faint-heart*, *Mistrust*, or the other, it shall go hard but they will throw up his heels. And when a man is down, you know what can he do.

Whoso looks well upon *Great-grace's* face, shall see those Scars and Cuts there, that shall easily give demonstration of what I say. Yea once I heard that he should say, (and that when he was in the Combat) *We despaired even of life*: How did these sturdy Rogues and their Fellows make *David* groan, mourn, and roar? Yea *Heman*, and *Hezekiah* too, though Champions in their day, were forced to bestir them, when by these assaulted; and yet, notwithstanding, they had their Coats soundly brushed by them. *Peter* upon a time would go try what he could do; but, though some do say of him that he is the Prince of the Apostles, they handled him so, that they made him at last afraid of a sorry Girl.

Besides, their King is at their Whistle, he is never out of hearing; and if at any time they be put to the worst, he, if possible, comes in to help them: And, of him it is said, *The Sword of him that layeth at him cannot hold the Spear, the Dart, nor the Habergeon; he esteemeth Iron as Straw, and Brass as rotten Wood. The Arrow cannot make him fly, Slingstones are turned with him into stubble, Darts are counted as stubble, he laugheth at the shaking of a Spear.* What can a man do in this case? 'Tis true, if a man could at every turn have *Job's* Horse, and had skill and courage to ride him, he might do notable things. *For his neck is clothed with Thunder, he will not be afraid as the Grasshopper, the glory of his Nostrils is terrible, he paweth in the Valley, rejoiceth in*

Job 41. 26.

Leviathan's  
sturdiness.

The excellent  
mettle that is  
in Job's  
Horse.

his strength, and goeth out to meet the armed men. He mocketh at fear, and is not affrighted, neither turneth back from the Sword. The quiver rattleth against him, the glittering Spear, and the shield. He swalloweth the ground with fierceness and rage, neither believeth he that it is the sound of the Trumpet. He saith among the Trumpets, Ha, ha; and he smelleth the Battle afar off, the thundring of the Captains, and the shoutings. Job 39. 19

But for such footmen as thee and I are, let us never desire to meet with an enemy, nor vaunt as if we could do better, when we hear of others that they have been foiled, nor be tickled at the thoughts of our own manhood, for such commonly come by the worst when tried. Witness Peter, of whom I made mention before. He would swagger, Ay he would: He would, as his vain mind prompted him to say, do better, and stand more for his Master, than all men: But who so foiled, and run down by these Villains, as he?

When therefore we hear that such Robberies are done on the King's High-way, two things become us to do; first to go out Harnessed, and to be sure to take a Shield with us: For it was for want of that, that he that laid so lustily at Leviathan could not make him yield. For indeed, if that be wanting, he fears us not at all. Therefore he that had skill, hath said, Above all take the Shield of Faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked. Eph. 6. 16

'Tis good also that we desire of the King a Convoy, 'Tis good to have a Convoy. yea that he will go with us himself. This made David rejoice when in the Valley of the shadow of death; and Moses was rather for dying where he stood, than to go one step without his God. O my Brother, if he will but go along with us, what need we be afraid of ten thousands Ex. 33. 15.  
Psal. 3. 5, 6,  
7, 8.

Psal. 27. 1,  
2, 3.  
Isa. 10. 4.

that shall set themselves against us, but without him, *the proud helpers fall under the slain.*

I for my part have been in the fray before now, and though (through the goodness of him that is best) I am as you see alive: yet I cannot boast of my manhood. Glad shall I be, if I meet with no more such brunts, though I fear we are not got beyond all danger. However, since the Lion and the Bear have not as yet devoured me, I hope God will also deliver us from the next uncircumcised *Philistine*. Then sang *Christian*:

*Poor Little-faith! Hast been among the Thieves!  
Wast robb'd! Remember this, Whoso believes  
And gets more faith, shall then a Victor be  
Over ten thousand, else scarce over three.*

*A way, and  
a way.*

*The flatterer  
finds them.*

*Christian  
and his fellow  
deluded.*

*They are  
taken in a  
Net.*

So they went on, and *Ignorance* followed. They went then till they came at a place where they saw a way put itself into their way, and seemed withal, to lie as straight as the way which they should go; and here they knew not which of the two to take, for both seemed straight before them; therefore here they stood still to consider. And as they were thinking about the way, behold a man black of flesh, but covered with a very light Robe, came to them and asked them, Why they stood there? They answered, They were going to the *Cœlestial City*, but knew not which of these ways to take. Follow me, said the man, it is thither that I am going. So they followed him in the way that but now came into the road, which by degrees turned, and turned them so from the City that they desired to go to, that in little time their faces were turned away from it; yet they followed him. But by and by, before they were aware, he led them both within the compass of a Net, in which they were both so entangled that

they knew not what to do ; and with that, the *white Robe fell off the black man's back* ; then they saw where they were. Wherefore there they lay crying sometime, for they could not get themselves out.

*Chr.* Then said *Christian* to his fellow, Now do I see myself in an error. Did not the Shepherds bid us beware of the flatterers ? As is the saying of the Wise man, so we have found it this day : *A man that flattereth his Neighbour, spreadeth a Net for his feet.* They bewail their conditions. Pro. 29. 5.

*Hope.* They also gave us a note of directions about the way, for our more sure finding thereof : but therein we have also forgotten to read, and have not kept ourselves from the Paths of the destroyer. Here *David* was wiser than we ; for saith he, *Concerning the works of men, by the word of thy lips, I have kept me from the Paths of the destroyer.* Psal. 17. 4. Thus they lay bewailing themselves in the Net. At last they espied a shining One coming towards them, with a whip of small cord in his hand.

When he was come to the place where they were, He asked them whence they came ? and what they did there ? They told him, That they were poor Pilgrims going to *Sion*, but were led out of their way, by a black man, clothed in white, who bid us, said they, follow him ; for he was going thither too. Then said he with the Whip ; it is *Flatterer*, a false Apostle, that hath transformed himself into an Angel of light. So he rent the Net and let the men out. A shining one comes to them with a whip in his hand. Pro. 29. 5. Da. 11. 32 2 Cor. 11. 13, 14.

Then said he to them, Follow me, that I may set you in your way again ; so he led them back to the way, which they had left to follow the *Flatterer*. Then he asked them, saying, Where did you lie the last night ? They said with the Shepherds upon the delectable Mountains. He asked them then, If they had not of those Shepherds a note of direction for the way ? They They are examined and convicted of forgetfulness.

answered, Yes. But did you, said he when you were at a stand, pluck out and read your note? They answered, No. He asked them why? They said they forgot. He asked moreover, If the Shepherds did not bid them beware of the *Flatterer*? They answered, Yes: But we did not imagine, said they, *that this fine-spoken man had been he.*

*Deceivers fine  
spoken.*  
Ro. 16. 18.

Deu. 25. 2.  
2 Chron 6.  
26. 27.

Rev. 3. 19.

*They are  
whipt, and  
sent on their  
way.*

Then I saw in my Dream, that he commanded them to *lie down*; which when they did, he chastised them sore, to teach them the good way wherein they should walk; and as he chastised them, he said, *As many as I love, I rebuke and chasten; be zealous therefore, and repent.* This done, he bids them go on their way, and take good heed to the other directions of the Shepherds. So they thanked him for all his kindness, and went softly along the right way, singing,

*Come hither, you that walk along the way;  
See how the Pilgrims fare, that go astray!  
They catched are in an intangling Net,  
'Cause they good Counsel lightly did forget:  
'Tis true, they rescu'd were, but yet you see  
They're scourg'd to boot: Let this your caution be.*

Now after a while, they perceived afar off, one coming softly and alone, all along the High-way to meet them. Then said *Christian* to his fellow, Yonder is a man with his back toward *Sion*, and he is coming to meet us.

*Hope.* I see him, let us take heed to ourselves now, lest he should prove a *Flatterer* also. So he drew nearer and nearer, and at last came up unto them. His name was *Atheist*, and he asked them whither they were going.

*The Atheist  
meets them.*

*Chr.* We are going to the *Mount Sion*.

*He Laughs at  
them.*

Then *Atheist* fell into a very great Laughter.



Chr. *What is the meaning of your Laughter?*

*Atheist.* I laugh to see what ignorant persons you are, to take upon you so tedious a Journey; and yet are like to have nothing but your travel for your pains.

Chr. *Why man? Do you think we shall not be received?* *They reason together.*

*Atheist.* Received! There is no such place as you Dream of, in all this World.

Chr. *But there is in the World to come.*

*Atheist.* When I was at home in mine own Country, I heard as you now affirm, and from that hearing went out to see, and have been seeking this City this twenty years: But find no more of it, than I did the first day I set out. Jer. 22. 12.  
Ec. 10. 15.

Chr. *We have both heard and believe that there is such a place to be found.*

*Atheist.* Had not I, when at home believed, I had not come thus far to seek: But finding none, (and yet I should, had there been such a place to be found, for I have gone to seek it further than you) I am going back again, and will seek to refresh myself with the things that I then cast away, for hopes of that which I now see is not. *The Atheist takes up his content in this World.*

Chr. Then said *Christian* to *Hopeful* his Fellow, *Is it true which this man hath said?* *Christian proveth his Brother.*

*Hope.* Take heed, he is one of the *Flatterers*; remember what it hath cost us once already for our hearkning to such kind of Fellows. What! no Mount *Sion*! Did we not see from the delectable Mountains the Gate of the City? Also, are we not now to walk by Faith? Let us go on, said *Hopeful*, lest the man with the Whip overtake us again. *Hopeful's gracious answer.*

You should have taught me that Lesson, which I will round you in the ears withal; *Cease, my Son, to hear the* *2 Cor. 5. 7. A remembrance of former chastisements is a help against temptations.*

Prov. 19. 27. *Instruction that causeth to err from the words of knowledge.*  
 Heb. 10. 39. I say my Brother, cease to hear him, and let us believe to the saving of the Soul.

Chr. *My Brother, I did not put the question to thee, for that I doubted of the Truth of our belief myself:*

*A fruit of an honest heart.* *But to prove thee, and to fetch from thee a fruit of the honesty of thy heart. As for this man, I know that he is blinded by the god of this World: Let thee and I go on, knowing that we have belief of the Truth, and no lie is of the Truth.*

1 John 2. 21.

*Hope.* Now do I rejoice in hope of the Glory of God: So they turned away from the man; and he, Laughing at them, went his way.

*They are come to the enchanted ground.*

*Hopeful begins to be drowsy.*

I saw then in my Dream, that they went till they came into a certain Country, whose Air naturally tended to make one drowsy, if he came a stranger into it. And here *Hopeful* began to be very dull and heavy of sleep, wherefore he said unto *Christian*, I do now begin to grow so drowsy, that I can scarcely hold up mine eyes; let us lie down here and take one Nap.

*Christian keeps him awake.*

*Chr.* *By no means*, said the other, *lest sleeping, we never awake more.*

*Hope.* Why my Brother? sleep is sweet to the Labouring man; we may be refreshed if we take a Nap.

1 Thes. 5. 6.

*Chr.* *Do you not remember that one of the Shepherds bid us beware of the Enchanted ground? He meant by that, that we should beware of sleeping; wherefore let us not sleep as do others, but let us watch and be sober.*

*He is thankful.*

Ecc. 4. 9.

*Hope.* I acknowledge myself in a fault, and had I been here alone, I had by sleeping run the danger of death. I see it is true that the wise man saith, *Two are better than one.* Hitherto hath thy Company been my mercy; and thou shalt have a good reward for thy labour.

Chr. *Now then, said Christian, to prevent drowsiness in this place, let us fall into good discourse.*

To prevent drowsiness they fall to good discourse.

*Hope.* With all my heart, said the other.

Chr. *Where shall we begin?*

Good discourse prevents drowsiness.

*Hope.* Where God began with us. But do you begin, if you please.

Chr. *I will sing you first this song:*

*When Saints do sleepy grow, let them come hither,  
And hear how these two Pilgrims talk together:  
Yea, let them learn of them, in any wise,  
Thus to keep ope their drowsy slumbring eyes.  
Saints' fellowship, if it be manag'd well,  
Keeps them awake, and that in spite of hell.*

The Dreamer's note.

Chr. Then *Christian* began and said, *I will ask you a question. How came you to think at first of doing what you do now?*

They begin at the beginning of their conversion.

*Hope.* Do you mean, How came I at first to look after the good of my Soul?

Chr. *Yes, that is my meaning.*

*Hope.* I continued a great while in the delight of those things which were seen and sold at our fair; things which, I believe now, would have (had I continued in them still) drowned me in perdition and destruction.

Chr. *What things were they?*

*Hope.* All the Treasures and Riches of the World. Also I delighted much in Rioting, Revelling, Drinking, Swearing, Lying, Uncleaness, Sabbath-breaking, and what not, that tended to destroy the Soul. But I found at last, by hearing and considering of things that are Divine, which indeed I heard of you, as also of beloved *Faithful*, that was put to death for his Faith and good-living in *Vanity-fair*, *That the end of these things is*

Hopeful's life before conversion.

Rom. 6. 21,  
22, 23.  
Eph. 5. 6.

*death.* And that for these things' sake, the wrath of God cometh upon the children of disobedience.

Chr. *And did you presently fall under the power of this conviction?*

Hopeful  
at first shuts  
his eyes  
against the  
light.

*Hope.* No, I was not willing presently to know the evil of sin, nor the damnation that follows upon the commission of it, but endeavoured, when my mind at first began to be shaken with the word, to shut mine eyes against the light thereof.

Chr. *But what was the cause of your carrying of it thus to the first workings of God's blessed Spirit upon you?*

Reasons of  
his resisting  
of light.

*Hope.* The causes were, 1. I was ignorant that this was the work of God upon me. I never thought that by awakenings for sin, God at first begins the conversion of a sinner. 2. Sin was yet very sweet to my flesh, and I was loth to leave it. 3. I could not tell how to part with mine old Companions, their presence and actions were so desirable unto me. 4. The hours in which convictions were upon me, were such troublesome and such heart-affrighting hours, that I could not bear, no not so much as the remembrance of them upon my heart.

Chr. *Then as it seems, sometimes you got rid of your trouble.*

*Hope.* Yes verily, but it would come into my mind again, and then I should be as bad, nay worse, than I was before.

Chr. *Why, what was it that brought your sins to mind again?*

*Hope.* Many things, As,

1. If I did but meet a good man in the Streets; or,
2. If I have heard any read in the Bible; or,
3. If mine Head did begin to Ake; or,

When he had  
lost his sense  
of sin what  
brought it  
again.

4. If I were told that some of my Neighbours were sick ; or,

5. If I heard the Bell toll for some that were dead ; or,

6. If I thought of dying myself ; or,

7. If I heard that sudden death happened to others.

8. But especially, when I thought of myself, that I must quickly come to Judgment.

Chr. *And could you at any time with ease get off the guilt of sin when by any of these ways it came upon you ?*

Hope. No, not latterly, for then they got faster hold of my Conscience. And then, if I did but think of going back to sin (though my mind was turned against it) it would be double torment to me.

Chr. *And how did you do then ?*

Hope. I thought I must endeavour to mend my life, for else thought I, I am sure to be damned.

Chr. *And did you endeavour to mend ?*

Hope. Yes, and fled from, not only my sins, but sinful Company too ; and betook me to Religious Duties, as Praying, Reading, weeping for Sin, speaking Truth to my Neighbours, &c. These things did I with many others, too much here to relate.

*When he could no longer shake off his guilt by sinful courses, then he endeavours to mend.*

Chr. *And did you think yourself well then ?*

Hope. Yes, for a while ; but at the last my trouble came tumbling upon me again, and that over the neck of all my Reformation.

*Then he thought himself well.*

Chr. *How came that about, since you were now Reformed ?*

Hope. There were several things brought it upon me, especially such sayings as these ; *All our righteousnesses are as filthy rags. By the works of the Law no man shall be justified. When you have done all things, say, We are unprofitable :* with many more such like. From

*Reformation at last could not help and why.*  
Isa. 64. 6.  
Gala. 2. 16.  
Luk. 17. 10.

whence I began to reason with myself thus : If *all* my righteousnesses are filthy rags, if by the deeds of the Law, *no* man can be justified ; And if, when we have done *all*, we are yet unprofitable : Then 'tis but a folly to think of Heaven by the Law. I further thought thus : If a Man runs an 100*l.* into the Shop-keeper's debt, and after that shall pay for all that he shall fetch, yet if his old debt stand still in the Book uncrossed, for that the Shop-keeper may sue him, and cast him into Prison till he shall pay the debt.

*His being a debtor by the Law troubled him.*

Chr. *Well, and how did you apply this to yourself ?*

Hope. Why, I thought thus with myself ; I have by my sins run a great way into God's Book, and that my now reforming will not pay off that score ; therefore I should think still under all my present amendments, But how shall I be freed from that damnation that I brought myself in danger of by my former transgressions ?

Chr. *A very good application : but pray go on.*

*His espying bad things in his best duties troubled him.*

Hope. Another thing that hath troubled me, even since my late amendments, is, that if I look narrowly into the best of what I do now, I still see sin, new sin, mixing itself with the best of that I do. So that now I am forced to conclude, that notwithstanding my former fond conceits of myself and duties, I have committed sin enough in one duty to send me to Hell, though my former life had been faultless.

Chr. *And what did you do then ?*

*This made him break his mind to Faithful who told him the way to be saved.*

Hope. Do ! I could not tell what to do, till I brake my mind to *Faithful* ; for he and I were well acquainted : And he told me, That unless I could obtain the righteousness of a man that never had sinned, neither mine own, nor all the righteousness of the World could save me.

Chr. *And did you think he spake true ?*

*Hope.* Had he told me so when I was pleased and satisfied with mine own amendments, I had called him Fool for his pains: but now, since I see my own infirmity, and the sin that cleaves to my best performance, I have been forced to be of his opinion.

*Chr.* *But did you think, when at first he suggested it to you, that there was such a man to be found, of whom it might justly be said, That he never committed sin?*

*Hope.* I must confess the words at first sounded strangely, but after a little more talk and company with him, I had full conviction about it. At which he started at present.

*Chr.* *And did you ask him what man this was, and how you must be justified by him?*

*Hope.* Yes, and he told me it was the Lord Jesus, that dwelleth on the right hand of the most High: And thus, said he, you must be justified by him, even by trusting to what he hath done by himself in the days of his flesh, and suffered when he did hang on the Tree. I asked him further, How that man's righteousness could be of that efficacy, to justify another before God? And he told me, He was the mighty God, and did what he did, and died the death also, not for himself, but for me; to whom his doings, and the worthiness of them should be imputed, if I believed on him. Heb. 10. Rom. 4. Col. 1. 1 Pet. 1. A more particular discovery of the way to be saved.

*Chr.* *And what did you do then?*

*Hope.* I made my objections against my believing, for that I thought he was not willing to save me. He doubts of acceptance.

*Chr.* *And what said Faithful to you then?*

*Hope.* He bid me go to him and see: Then I said, It was presumption: he said, No: for I was invited to come. Then he gave me a book of *Jesus* his inditing, to encourage me the more freely to come: And he said concerning that Book, That every jot and tittle thereof stood Mat. 11. 28. He is better instructed.

Matt. 24. 35. firmer than Heaven and earth. Then I asked him, What  
 Ps. 95. 6. I must do when I came? and he told me, I must intreat  
 Dan. 6. 10. upon my knees with all my heart and soul, the Father to  
 Jer. 29.12,13. reveal him to me. Then I asked him further, How I  
 must make my supplication to him? And he said, Go,  
 Ex. 25. 22. and thou shalt find him upon a mercy-seat, where he sits  
 Lev. 16. 2. all the year long, to give pardon and forgiveness to them  
 Nu. 7. 89. that come. I told him that I knew not what to say  
 Heb. 4. 16. when I came: and he bid me say to this effect, *God be  
 merciful to me a sinner, and make me to know and believe  
 in Jesus Christ; for I see that if his righteousness had  
 not been, or I have not faith in that righteousness, I am  
 utterly cast away: Lord, I have heard that thou art a  
 merciful God, and hast ordained that thy Son Jesus  
 Christ should be the Saviour of the World; and more-  
 over, that thou art willing to bestow him upon such a poor  
 sinner as I am, (and I am a sinner indeed) Lord take  
 therefore this opportunity, and magnify thy grace in the  
 Salvation of my soul, through thy Son Jesus Christ, Amen.*

Chr. *And did you do as you were bidden?*

*He prays.*

*Hope.* Yes, over, and over, and over.

Chr. *And did the Father reveal his Son to you?*

*Hope.* Not at the first, nor second, nor third, nor fourth, nor fifth, no, nor at the sixth time neither.

Chr. *What did you do then?*

*Hope.* What! why I could not tell what to do.

Chr. *Had you not thoughts of leaving off praying?*

*Hope.* Yes, an hundred times, twice told.

Chr. *And what was the reason you did not?*

*He thought to  
 leave off  
 praying.*

*He durst not  
 leave off  
 praying and  
 why.*

*Hope.* I believed that that was true which had been told me, to wit, That without the righteousness of this Christ, all the World could not save me: And therefore thought I with myself, if I leave off, I die; and I can



but die at the Throne of Grace. And withal, this came into my mind, *If it tarry, wait for it, because it will surely come, and will not tarry.* So I continued Praying until the Father shewed me his Son. Habb. 2. 3.

Chr. *And how was he revealed unto you?*

*Hope.* I did not see him with my bodily eyes, but with the eyes of mine understanding; and thus it was. Eph. 1. 18, 19.  
 One day I was very sad, I think sadder than at any one time in my life; and this sadness was through a fresh sight of the greatness and vileness of my sins: And as *Christ is revealed to him and how.*  
 I was then looking for nothing but *Hell*, and the everlasting damnation of my Soul, suddenly, as I thought, I saw the Lord Jesus look down from Heaven upon me, and saying, *Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved.* Acts 16. 30, 31.

But I replied, Lord, I am a great, a very great sinner; and he answered, *My grace is sufficient for thee.* Then 2 Cor. 12. 9.  
 I said, But Lord, what is believing? And then I saw from that saying, [*He that cometh to me shall never hunger, and he that believeth on me shall never thirst*] Joh. 6. 35.  
 That believing and coming was all one, and that he that came, that is, ran out in his heart and affections after salvation by Christ, he indeed believed in Christ. Then the water stood in mine eyes, and I asked further, But Lord, may such a great sinner as I am, be indeed accepted of thee, and be saved by thee? And I heard him say, *And him that cometh to me, I will in no wise cast out.* Joh. 6. 37.  
 Then I said, But how, Lord, must I consider of thee in my coming to thee, that my faith may be placed aright upon thee? Then he said, *Christ Jesus came into the World to save sinners. He is the end of the Law for righteousness to every one that believes. He died for our sins, and rose again for our justification: He loved us,* 1 Ti. 1. 15.  
Rom. 10. 4.  
chap. 4.  
Heb. 7. 24, 25.

*and washed us from our sins in his own blood: He is Mediator between God and us. He ever liveth to make intercession for us. From all which I gathered, that I must look for righteousness in his person, and for satisfaction for my sins by his blood; that what he did in obedience to his Father's Law, and in submitting to the penalty thereof, was not for himself, but for him that will accept it for his Salvation, and be thankful. And now was my heart full of joy, mine eyes full of tears, and mine affections running over with Love to the Name, People, and Ways of Jesus Christ.*

*Chr. This was a Revelation of Christ to your soul indeed: But tell me particularly what effect this had upon your spirit.*

*Hope.* It made me see that all the World, notwithstanding all the righteousness thereof, is in a state of condemnation. It made me see that God the Father, though he be just, can justly justify the coming sinner: It made me greatly ashamed of the vileness of my former life, and confounded me with the sense of mine own Ignorance; for there never came thought into mine heart before now, that shewed me so the beauty of Jesus Christ. It made me love a holy life, and long to do something for the Honour and Glory of the name of the Lord Jesus. Yea I thought, that had I now a thousand gallons of blood in my body, I could spill it all for the sake of the Lord Jesus.

I saw then in my Dream, that *Hopeful* looked back and saw *Ignorance*, whom they had left behind, coming after. *Look*, said he to *Christian*, *how far yonder Youngster loitereth behind.*

*Chr.* Ay, Ay, I see him; he careth not for our Company.

Hope. *But I tro, it would not have hurt him, had he kept pace with us hitherto.*

Chr. That's true, but I warrant you he thinketh otherwise.

Hope. *That I think he doth, but however let us tarry for him.* So they did. Young Ignorance comes up again.

Then *Christian* said to him, *Come away man, why do you stay so behind?*

*Ignor.* I take my pleasure in walking alone, even more a great deal than in Company, unless I like it the better. Their talk.

Then said *Christian* to *Hopeful* (but softly) *Did I not tell you, he cared not for our Company: But however, said he, come up, and let us talk away the time in this solitary place.* Then directing his Speech to *Ignorance*, he said, *Come, how do you? how stands it between God and your Soul now?*

*Ignor.* I hope well, for I am always full of good motions, that come into my mind to comfort me as I walk. Ignorance's hope and the ground of it.

Chr. *What good motions? pray tell us.*

*Ignor.* Why, I think of God and Heaven.

Chr. *So do the Devils and damned Souls.*

*Ignor.* But I think of them, and desire them.

Chr. *So do many that are never like to come there:* Prov. 13. 4.  
The Soul of the Sluggard desires and hath nothing.

*Ignor.* But I think of them, and leave all for them.

Chr. *That I doubt, for leaving of all is an hard matter, yea a harder matter than many are aware of. But why, or by what, art thou perswaded that thou hast left all for God and Heaven?*

*Ignor.* My heart tells me so.

Chr. *The wise man says, He that trusts his own heart is a fool.* Pr. 28. 26.

*Ignor.* This is spoken of an evil heart, but mine is a good one.

*Chr.* *But how dost thou prove that?*

*Ignor.* It comforts me in hopes of Heaven.

*Chr.* *That may be, through its deceitfulness, for a man's heart may minister comfort to him in the hopes of that thing, for which yet he has no ground to hope.*

*Ignor.* But my heart and life agree together, and therefore my hope is well grounded.

*Chr.* *Who told thee that thy heart and life agree together?*

*Ignor.* My heart tells me so.

*Chr.* *Ask my fellow if I be a Thief: Thy heart tells thee so! Except the word of God beareth witness in this matter, other Testimony is of no value.*

*Ignor.* But is it not a good heart that has good thoughts? And is not that a good life that is according to God's Commandments?

*Chr.* *Yes, that is a good heart that hath good thoughts, and that is a good life that is according to God's Commandments: But it is one thing indeed to have these, and another thing only to think so.*

*Ignor.* Pray what count you good thoughts, and a life according to God's Commandments?

*Chr.* *There are good thoughts of divers kinds, some respecting ourselves, some God, some Christ, and some other things.*

*Ignor.* What be good thoughts respecting ourselves?

*Chr.* *Such as agree with the Word of God.*

*Ignor.* When do our thoughts of ourselves agree with the Word of God?

*Chr.* *When we pass the same Judgment upon ourselves which the Word passes: To explain myself. The Word*

*What are  
good  
thoughts.*

*of God saith of persons in a natural condition, There is none Righteous, there is none that doth good. It saith* Rom. 3.  
*also, That every imagination of the heart of man is only evil, and that continually. And again, The imagination of man's heart is evil from his Youth. Now then, when we think thus of ourselves, having sense thereof, then are our thoughts good ones, because according to the Word of God.* Gen. 6. 5.

*Ignor.* I will never believe that my heart is thus bad.

*Chr.* *Therefore thou never hadst one good thought concerning thyself in thy life. But let me go on: As the Word passeth a Judgment upon our HEART, so it passeth a Judgment upon our WAYS; and when our thoughts of our HEARTS and WAYS agree with the Judgment which the Word giveth of both, then are both good, because agreeing thereto.*

*Ignor.* Make out your meaning.

*Chr.* *Why, the Word of God saith, That man's ways are crooked ways, not good, but perverse: It saith, They are naturally out of the good way, that they have not known it. Now when a man thus thinketh of his ways, I say when he doth sensibly, and with heart-humiliation thus think, then hath he good thoughts of his own ways, because his thoughts now agree with the judgment of the Word of God.* Ps. 125. 5  
Pro. 2. 15.  
Rom. 3.

*Ignor.* What are good thoughts concerning God?

*Chr.* *Even (as I have said concerning ourselves) when our thoughts of God do agree with what the Word saith of him. And that is, when we think of his Being and Attributes as the Word hath taught: Of which I cannot now discourse at large. But to speak of him with reference to us, Then we have right thoughts of God, when we think that he knows us better than we know ourselves, and*

*can see sin in us, when and where we can see none in ourselves ; when we think he knows our inmost thoughts, and that our heart with all its depths is always open unto his eyes : Also when we think that all our Righteousness stinks in his Nostrils, and that therefore he cannot abide to see us stand before him in any confidence even in all our best performances.*

*Ignor.* Do you think that I am such a fool, as to think God can see no further than I ? or that I would come to God in the best of my performances ?

*Chr.* *Why, how dost thou think in this matter ?*

*Ignor.* Why, to be short, I think I must believe in Christ for Justification.

*Chr.* *How ! think thou must believe in Christ, when thou seest not thy need of him ! Thou neither seest thy original, or actual infirmities, but hast such an opinion of thyself, and of what thou doest, as plainly renders thee to be one that did never see a necessity of Christ's personal righteousness to justify thee before God : How then dost thou say, I believe in Christ ?*

*Ignor.* I believe well enough for all that.

*Chr.* *How dost thou believe ?*

*The Faith of Ignorance.*

*Ignor.* I believe that Christ died for sinners, and that I shall be justified before God from the curse, through his gracious acceptance of my obedience to his Law : Or thus, Christ makes my Duties that are Religious, acceptable to his Father by virtue of his Merits ; and so shall I be justified.

*Chr.* *Let me give an answer to this confession of thy faith.*

1. *Thou believest with a Fantastical Faith, for this faith is nowhere described in the Word.*

2. *Thou believest with a False Faith, because it taketh*

*Justification from the personal righteousness of Christ, and applies it to thy own.*

3. *This faith maketh not Christ a Justifier of thy person, but of thy actions; and of thy person for thy actions' sake, which is false.*

4. *Therefore this faith is deceitful, even such as will leave thee under wrath, in the day of God Almighty. For true Justifying Faith puts the soul (as sensible of its lost condition by the Law) upon flying for refuge unto Christ's righteousness: (Which righteousness of his, is not an act of grace, by which he maketh for Justification thy obedience accepted with God, but his personal obedience to the Law in doing and suffering for us, what that required at our hands) This righteousness, I say, true faith accepteth, under the skirt of which, the soul being shrouded, and by it presented as spotless before God, it is accepted, and acquit from condemnation.*

*Ignor.* What! would you have us trust to what Christ in his own person has done without us! This conceit would loosen the reins of our lust, and tolerate us to live as we list: For what matter how we live, if we may be Justified by Christ's personal righteousness from all, when we believe it?

*Chr.* Ignorance is thy name, and as thy name is, so art thou; even this thy answer demonstrateth what I say. Ignorant thou art of what Justifying righteousness is, and as ignorant how to secure thy Soul through the faith of it, from the heavy wrath of God. Yea, thou also art ignorant of the true effects of saving faith in this righteousness of Christ, which is, to bow and win over the heart to God in Christ, to love his Name, his Word, Ways, and People; and not as thou ignorantly imaginest.

*Hope.* Ask him if ever he had Christ revealed to him from Heaven?

Ignorance  
jangles with  
them.

*Ignor.* *What! You are a man for revelations! I believe that what both you, and all the rest of you say about that matter, is but the fruit of distracted brains.*

*Hope.* Why man! Christ is so hid in God from the natural apprehensions of the flesh, that he cannot by any man be savingly known, unless God the Father reveals him to them.

He speaks re-  
proachfully  
of what he  
knows not.

*Ignor.* *That is your faith, but not mine; yet mine I doubt not, is as good as yours: Though I have not in my head so many whimsies as you.*

Mat. 11. 27.  
1 Cor. 2. 13.  
Eph. 1. 18,  
19.

*Chr.* Give me leave to put in a word: You ought not so slightly to speak of this matter: for this I will boldly affirm, (even as my good Companion hath done) that no man can know Jesus Christ but by the Revelation of the Father: yea, and faith too, by which the soul layeth hold upon Christ (if it be right) must be wrought by the exceeding greatness of his mighty power; the working of which faith, I perceive, poor *Ignorance*, thou art ignorant of. Be awakened then, see thine own wretchedness, and fly to the Lord Jesus; and by his righteousness, which is the righteousness of God, (for he himself is God) thou shalt be delivered from condemnation.

The talk  
broke up.

*Ignor.* *You go so fast, I cannot keep pace with you; do you go on before, I must stay awhile behind.*

Then they said,

*Well Ignorance, wilt thou yet foolish be,  
To slight good Counsel, ten times given thee?  
And if thou yet refuse it, thou shalt know  
Ere long the evil of thy doing so:  
Remember man in time, stoop, do not fear,*



*Good Counsel taken well, saves ; therefore hear :  
But if thou yet shalt slight it, thou wilt be  
The loser (Ignorance) I'll warrant thee.*

Then *Christian* addressed thus himself to his fellow.

*Chr.* Well, come my good *Hopeful*, I perceive that thou and I must walk by ourselves again.

So I saw in my Dream, that they went on apace before, and *Ignorance* he came hobbling after. Then said *Christian* to his companion, *It pities me much for this poor man, it will certainly go ill with him at last.*

*Hope.* Alas, there are abundance in our Town in his condition ; whole Families, yea, whole Streets, (and that of Pilgrims too) and if there be so many in our parts, how many think you, must there be in the place where he was born ?

*Chr.* *Indeed the Word saith, He hath blinded their eyes, lest they should see, &c. But now we are by ourselves, what do you think of such men ? Have they at no time, think you, convictions of sin, and so consequently fears that their state is dangerous ?*

*Hope.* Nay, do you answer that question yourself, for you are the elder man.

*Chr.* *Then I say sometimes (as I think) they may, but they being naturally ignorant, understand not that such convictions tend to their good ; and therefore they do desperately seek to stifle them, and presumptuously continue to flatter themselves in the way of their own hearts.*

*Hope.* I do believe as you say, that fear tends much to Men's good, and to make them right, at their beginning to go on Pilgrimage. The good use of fear.

*Chr.* *Without all doubt it doth, if it be right : for so* Job 28. 28.

Ps. 111. 10. *says the word,* The fear of the Lord is the beginning of  
Pro. 1. 7. ch. Wisdom.  
9. 10.

*Right fear.*

*Hope.* How will you describe right fear ?

Chr. *True, or right fear, is discovered by three things.*

1. By its rise. It is caused by saving convictions for sin.

2. It driveth the soul to lay fast hold of Christ for Salvation.

3. It begetteth and continueth in the soul a great reverence of God, his word, and ways, keeping it tender, and making it afraid to turn from them, to the right hand, or to the left, to anything that may dishonour God, break its peace, grieve the Spirit, or cause the Enemy to speak reproachfully.

*Hope.* Well said, I believe you have said the truth. Are we now almost got past the Incharmed ground ?

Chr. *Why, are you weary of this discourse ?*

*Hope.* No verily, but that I would know where we are.

*Why ignorant persons stifle convictions.*

1. In general.

Chr. *We have not now above two Miles further to go thereon. But let us return to our matter. Now the Ignorant know not that such convictions that tend to put them in fear, are for their good, and therefore they seek to stifle them.*

*Hope.* How do they seek to stifle them ?

2. In particular.

Chr. 1. They think that those fears are wrought by the Devil (though indeed they are wrought of God) and thinking so, they resist them, as things that directly tend to their overthrow. 2. They also think that these fears tend to the spoiling of their faith, (when alas for them, poor men that they are ! they have none at all) and therefore they harden their hearts against them. 3. They presume they ought not to fear, and therefore,

in despite of them, wax presumptuously confident. 4. They see that these fears tend to take away from them their pitiful old self-holiness, and therefore they resist them with all their might.

*Hope.* I know something of this myself; for before I knew myself it was so with me.

*Chr.* *Well, we will leave at this time our Neighbour Ignorance by himself, and fall upon another profitable question.*

*Hope.* With all my heart, but you shall still begin.

*Chr.* *Well then, did you not know about ten years ago, one Temporary in your parts, who was a forward man in Religion then?*

*Talk about one Temporary.*

*Hope.* Know him? Yes, he dwelt in *Graceless*, a Town about two miles off of *Honesty*, and he dwelt next door to one *Turn-back*.

*Where he dwelt.*

*Chr.* *Right, he dwelt under the same roof with him. Well, that man was much awakened once; I believe that then he had some sight of his sins, and of the wages that was due thereto.*

*He was towardly once.*

*Hope.* I am of your mind, for (my House not being above three miles from him) he would oft times come to me, and that with many tears. Truly I pitied the man, and was not altogether without hope of him; but one may see it is not every one that cries, *Lord, Lord*.

*Chr.* *He told me once, That he was resolved to go on Pilgrimage as we go now; but all of a sudden he grew acquainted with one Save-self, and then he became a stranger to me.*

*Hope.* Now since we are talking about him, let us a little enquire into the reason of the sudden backsliding of him and such others.

*Chr.* *It may be very profitable, but do you begin.*

*Hope.* Well then, there are in my judgment four reasons for it.

*Reasons why  
towardly ones  
go back.*

1. Though the Consciences of such men are awakened, yet their minds are not changed: therefore when the power of guilt weareth away, that which provoked them to be Religious, ceaseth. Wherefore they naturally turn to their own course again: even as we see the Dog that is sick of what he hath eaten, so long as his sickness prevails, he vomits and casts up all; not that he doth this of a free mind (if we may say a Dog has a mind) but because it troubleth his Stomach; but now when his sickness is over, and so his Stomach eased, his desires being not at all alienate from his vomit, he turns him about and licks up all. And so it is true which is written, *The Dog is turned to his own vomit again.* This I say being hot for Heaven, by virtue only of the sense and fear of the torments of Hell, as their sense of Hell, and the fears of damnation chills and cools, so their desires for Heaven and Salvation cool also. So then it comes to pass, that when their guilt and fear is gone, their desires for Heaven and Happiness die; and they return to their course again.

2 Pet. 2. 22.

Pro. 29. 25.

2ly. Another reason is, They have slavish fears that do over-master them. I speak now of the fears that they have of men: *For the fear of men bringeth a snare.* So then, though they seem to be hot for Heaven, so long as the flames of Hell are about their ears, yet when that terror is a little over, they betake themselves to second thoughts; namely, that 'tis good to be wise, and not to run (for they know not what) the hazard of losing all; or at least, of bringing themselves into unavoidable and unnecessary troubles: and so they fall in with the world again.

3/y. The shame that attends Religion, lies also as a block in their way ; they are proud and haughty, and Religion in their eye is low and contemptible : Therefore when they have lost their sense of Hell and wrath to come, they return again to their former course.

4/y. Guilt, and to meditate terror, are grievous to them, they like not to see their misery before they come into it. Though perhaps the sight of it first, if they loved that sight, might make them fly whither the righteous fly and are safe ; but because they do, as I hinted before, even shun the thoughts of guilt and terror, therefore, when once they are rid of their awakenings about the terrors and wrath of God, they harden their hearts gladly, and chuse such ways as will harden them more and more.

Chr. *You are pretty near the business, for the bottom of all is, for want of a change in their mind and will. And therefore they are but like the Felon that standeth before the Judge, he quakes and trembles, and seems to repent most heartily ; but the bottom of all is, the fear of the Halter, not that he hath any detestation of the offence ; as is evident, because, let but this man have his liberty, and he will be a Thief, and so a Rogue still ; whereas, if his mind was changed, he would be otherwise.*

*Hope.* Now I have shewed you the reasons of their going back, do you shew me the manner thereof.

Chr. *So I will willingly.*

1. They draw off their thoughts all that they may, from the remembrance of God, Death, and Judgment to come.

2. Then they cast off by degrees private Duties, as Closet-Prayer, curbing their lusts, watching, sorrow for sin, and the like.

*How the  
Apostate goes  
back.*

3. Then they shun the company of lively and warm Christians.

4. After that, they grow cold to publick Duty, as Hearing, Reading, Godly Conference, and the like.

5. Then they begin to pick holes, as we say, in the Coats of some of the Godly, and that devilishly; that they may have a seeming colour to throw Religion (for the sake of some infirmity they have spied in them) behind their backs.

6. Then they begin to adhere to, and associate themselves with carnal loose and wanton men.

7. Then they give way to carnal and wanton discourses in secret; and glad are they if they can see such things in any that are counted honest, that they may the more boldly do it through their example.

8. After this, they begin to play with little sins openly.

9. And then, being hardened, they shew themselves as they are. Thus being launched again into the gulf of misery, unless a Miracle of Grace prevent it, they everlastingly perish in their own deceivings.

Now I saw in my Dream, that by this time the Pilgrims were got over the Incharmed Ground, and entering in the Country of *Beulah*, whose Air was very sweet and pleasant, the way lying directly through it, they solaced themselves there for a season. Yea, here they heard continually the singing of Birds, and saw every day the flowers appear in the earth: and heard the voice of the Turtle in the Land. In this Country the Sun shineth night and day; wherefore this was beyond the Valley of the *Shadow of Death*, and also out of the reach of *Giant Despair*; neither could they from this place so much as see *Doubting-Castle*. Here they were within sight of

Isa. 62. 4.

Cant. 2. 10,  
11, 12.

the City they were going to : also here met them some *Angels.* of the Inhabitants thereof. For in this Land the shining Ones commonly walked, because it was upon the Borders of Heaven. In this Land also the contract between the Bride and the Bridegroom was renewed : Yea here, *as the Bridegroom rejoiceth over the Bride, so did their God* *Isa. 62. 5.* *rejoice over them.* Here they had no want of Corn and *ver. 8.* Wine ; for in this place they met with abundance of what they had sought for in all their Pilgrimage. Here they heard voices from out of the City, loud voices, saying, *Say ye to the daughter of Zion, Behold thy* *ver. 11.* *Salvation cometh, behold his reward is with him.* Here all the Inhabitants of the Country called them, *The holy* *ver. 12.* *People, The redeemed of the Lord, Sought out, &c.*

Now as they walked in this Land, they had more rejoicing than in parts more remote from the Kingdom to which they were bound ; and drawing near to the City, they had yet a more perfect view thereof. It was builded of Pearls and precious Stones, also the Street thereof was paved with Gold, so that by reason of the natural glory of the City, and the reflection of the Sunbeams upon it, *Christian,* with desire fell sick, *Hopeful* also had a fit or two of the same Disease : Wherefore here they lay by it a while, crying out because of their pangs, *If you see my Beloved, tell him that I am sick of love.*

But being a little strengthened, and better able to bear their sickness, they walked on their way, and came yet nearer and nearer, where were Orchards, Vineyards and Gardens, and their Gates opened into the Highway. Now as they came up to these places, behold the Gardener stood *Deut. 23. 24.* in the way ; to whom the Pilgrims said, Whose goodly Vineyards and Gardens are these ? He answered, They

are the King's, and are planted here for his own delights, and also for the solace of Pilgrims. So the Gardener had them into the Vineyards, and bid them refresh themselves with Dainties; He also shewed them *there* the King's walks, and the *Arbors* where he delighted to be: And here they tarried and slept.

Now I beheld in my Dream, that they talked more in their sleep at this time, than ever they did in all their Journey; and being in a muse thereabout, the Gardener said even to me, Wherefore musest thou at the matter? It is the nature of the fruit of the Grapes of these Vineyards to go down so sweetly, as to cause the lips of them that are asleep to speak.

So I saw that when they awoke, they addressed themselves to go up to the City. But, as I said, the reflection of the Sun upon the City (for the City was pure Gold) was so extremely glorious, that they could not, as yet, with open face behold it, but through an *Instrument* made for that purpose. So I saw, that as they went on, there met them two men in Raiment that shone like Gold, also their faces shone as the light.

Revel. 21. 18.

2 Cor. 3. 18.

These men asked the Pilgrims whence they came? and they told them; they also asked them, Where they had lodg'd, what difficulties, and dangers, what comforts and pleasures they had met in the way? and they told them. Then said the men that met them, You have but two difficulties more to meet with, and then you are in the City.

*Christian* then and his Companion asked the men to go along with them, so they told them they would; but, said they, you must obtain it by your own faith. So I saw in my Dream that they went on together till they came in sight of the Gate.



Now I further saw that betwixt them and the Gate was a River, but there was no Bridge to go over, the River was very deep; at the sight therefore of this River, the Pilgrims were much stounded, but the men that went with them, said, You must go through, or you cannot come at the Gate.

*Death.*

*Death is not welcome to nature, though by it we pass out of this World into glory.*

The Pilgrims then began to enquire if there was no other way to the Gate; to which they answered, Yes, but there hath not any, save two, to wit, *Enoch* and *Elijah*, been permitted to tread that path, since the foundation of the World, nor shall, until the last Trumpet shall sound. The Pilgrims then, especially *Christian*, began to dispond in his mind, and looked this way and that, but no way could be found by them, by which they might escape the River. Then they asked the men, if the Waters were all of a depth. They said, No; yet they could not help them in that Case, for said they: *You shall find it deeper or shallower, as you believe in the King of the place.*

*1 Cor 15. 51, 52.*

*Angels help us not comfortably through death.*

They then addressed themselves to the Water; and entering, *Christian* began to sink, and crying out to his good friend *Hopeful*; he said, I sink in deep Waters, the Billows go over my head, all his Waves go over me, *Selah*.

Then said the other, Be of good cheer, my Brother, I feel the bottom, and it is good. Then said *Christian*, Ah my friend, the sorrows of death have compassed me about, I shall not see the Land that flows with Milk and Honey. And with that, a great darkness and horror fell upon *Christian*, so that he could not see before him; also here he in great measure lost his senses, so that he could neither remember nor orderly talk of any of those sweet refreshments that he had met with in the way of

*Christian's conflict at the hour of death.*

his Pilgrimage. But all the words that he spake, still tended to discover that he had horror of mind, and heart fears that he should die in that River, and never obtain entrance in at the Gate: here also, as they that stood by, perceived, he was much in the troublesome thoughts of the sins that he had committed, both since and before he began to be a Pilgrim. 'Twas also observed, that he was troubled with apparitions of Hobgoblins and Evil Spirits. For ever and anon he would intimate so much by words. *Hopeful* therefore here had much ado to keep his Brother's head above water, yea sometimes he would be quite gone down, and then ere a while he would rise up again half dead. *Hopeful* also would endeavour to comfort him, saying, Brother, I see the Gate, and men standing by it to receive us. But *Christian* would answer: 'Tis you, 'tis you they wait for, you have been *Hopeful* ever since I knew you; and so have you, said he to *Christian*. Ah Brother, said he, surely if I was right, he would now arise to help me; but for my sins he hath brought me into the snare, and hath left me. Then said *Hopeful*, My Brother, you have quite forgot the Text, where it's said of the wicked, *There is no band in their death, but their strength is firm, they are not troubled as other men, neither are they plagued like other men.* These troubles and distresses that you go through in these Waters, are no sign that God hath forsaken you, but are sent to try you, whether you will call to mind that which heretofore you have received of his goodness, and live upon him in your distresses.

Psal. 73. 4, 5.

Then I saw in my Dream, that *Christian* was in a muse a while; To whom also *Hopeful* added this word, *Be of good cheer, Jesus Christ maketh thee whole: And with that, Christian* brake out with a loud voice, Oh I

see him again! and he tells me, *When thou passest through the waters, I will be with thee, and through the Rivers, they shall not overflow thee.* Then they both took courage, and the enemy was after that as still as a stone, until they were gone over. *Christian* therefore presently found ground to stand upon; and so it followed that the rest of the River was but shallow. Thus they got over. Now upon the bank of the River, on the other side, they saw the two shining men again, who there waited for them. Wherefore being come up out of the River, they saluted them saying, *We are ministring Spirits, sent forth to minister for those that shall be Heirs of Salvation.* Thus they went along towards the Gate. Now you must note that the City stood upon a mighty hill, but the Pilgrims went up that hill *with ease*, because they had these two men to lead them up by the Arms; also they had left their *Mortal Garments* behind them in the River; for though they went in with them, they came out without them. They therefore went up here with much agility and speed, though the foundation upon which the City was framed was higher than the Clouds. They therefore went up through the Regions of the Air, sweetly talking as they went, being comforted, because they safely got over the River, and had such glorious Companions to attend them.

The talk they had with the shining Ones, was about the Glory of the place, who told them, that the beauty, and glory of it was inexpressible. There, said they, is the Mount *Sion*, the Heavenly *Jerusalem*, the innumerable Company of Angels, and the Spirits of Just men made perfect: You are going now, said they, to the Paradise of God, wherein you shall see the Tree of Life, and eat of the never-fading fruits thereof: And when you

*Christian delivered from his fears in death.*  
Isa. 43. 2

*The Angels do wait for them so soon as they are passed out of this world.*

*They have put off mortality.*

Heb. 12. 22  
23, 24.

Rev. 2. 7.

- Rev. 3. 4. come there you shall have white Robes given you, and your walk and talk shall be every day with the King,
- Rev. 21. 4, 5. even all the days of Eternity. There you shall not see again, such things as you saw when you were in the lower Region upon the Earth, to wit, sorrow, sickness, affliction, and death, *for the former things are passed away.* You are going now to *Abraham, to Isaac, and Jacob,* and to the Prophets; men that God hath taken away from the evil to come, and that are now resting upon their Beds, each one walking in his righteousness. The men then asked, What must we do in the holy place? To whom it was answered, You must there receive the comfort of all your toil, and have joy for all your sorrow; you must reap what you have sown, even the fruit of all your Prayers and Tears, and sufferings for the King by the way. In that place you must wear Crowns of Gold, and enjoy the perpetual sight and Visions of the *Holy One, for there you shall see him as he is.* There also you shall serve him continually with praise, with shouting and thanksgiving, whom you desired to serve in the World, though with much difficulty, because of the infirmity of your flesh. There your eyes shall be delighted with seeing, and your ears with hearing, the pleasant voice of the mighty One. There you shall enjoy your friends again, that are gone thither before you; and there you shall with joy receive, even every one that follows into the Holy Place after you. There also you shall be cloathed with Glory and Majesty, and put into an equipage fit to ride out with the King of Glory. When he shall come with sound of Trumpet in the Clouds, as upon the wings of the Wind, you shall come with him; and when he shall sit upon the Throne of Judgment, you shall sit by him; yea, and when he shall pass Sentence
- Isa. 65. 17.  
Isa. 57. 1, 2.
- Gal. 6. 7.
- 1 Joh. 3. 2.
- 1 Thess. 4. 13,  
14, 15, 16.
- Jude 14.  
Da. 7. 9, 10.
- 1 Cor. 6. 2, 3.

upon all the workers of Iniquity, let them be Angels or Men, you also shall have a voice in that Judgment, because they were his and your Enemies. Also when he shall again return to the City, you shall go too, with sound of Trumpet, and be ever with him.<sup>1</sup>

Now while they were thus drawing towards the Gate, behold a company of the Heavenly Host came out to meet them: To whom it was said, by the other two shining Ones, These are the men that have loved our Lord, when they were in the World; and that have left all for his holy Name, and he hath sent us to fetch them, and we have brought them thus far on their desired Journey; that they may go in and look their Redeemer in the face with joy. Then the Heavenly Host gave a great shout, saying, *Blessed are they that are called to the Marriage supper of the Lamb.* There came out also at this time to meet them several of the King's Trumpeters, cloathed in white and shining Raiment, who with melodious noises and loud made even the Heavens to echo with their sound. These Trumpeters saluted *Christian* and his Fellow with ten thousand welcomes from the world; And this they did with shouting and sound of Trumpet. Revel. 19. 9.

This done, they compassed them round on every side; some went before, some behind, and some on the right hand, some on the left, (as 'twere to guard them through the upper regions,) continually sounding as they went, with melodious noise, in notes on high; so that the very sight was to them that could behold it as if Heaven

<sup>1</sup> Now, now, look how the holy Pilgrims ride,  
Clouds are their Chariots, Angels are their Guide.  
Who would not here for him all Hazards run  
That thus provides for his when this World's done.

itself was come down to meet them. Thus therefore they walked on together; and, as they walked, ever and anon these Trumpeters, even with joyful sound, would, by mixing their Musick with looks and gestures, still signify to *Christian* and his Brother how welcome they were into their company, and with what gladness they came to meet them. And now were these two men, as 'twere, in heaven, before they came at it, being swallowed up with the sight of Angels, and with hearing of their melodious notes. Here also they had the City itself in view; and they thought they heard all the Bells therein to ring, to welcome them thereto; but, above all, the warm and joyful thoughts that they had about their own dwelling there with such company, and that for ever and ever. Oh! by what tongue or pen can their glorious joy be expressed: Thus they came up to the Gate.

Re. 22. 14. Now when they were come up to the Gate, there was written over it, in Letters of Gold, *Blessed are they that do his commandments, that they may have right to the Tree of life; and may enter in through the Gates into the City.*

Then I saw in my Dream, that the shining men bid them call at the Gate, the which when they did, some from above looked over the Gate; to wit, *Enoch, Moses, and Elijah, &c.* to whom it was said, These Pilgrims, are come from the city of *Destruction*, for the love that they bear to the King of this place: and then the Pilgrims gave in unto them each man his Certificate, which they had received in the beginning; Those therefore were carried in to the King, who when he had read them, said, Where are the men? To whom it was answered, They are standing without the Gate, the King then commanded to open the Gate; *That the righteous Nation*, said he, *that keepeth Truth may enter in.*

Isa. 26. 2.

Now I saw in my Dream, that these two men went in at the Gate; and lo, as they entered, they were transfigured, and they had Raiment put on that shone like Gold. There was also that met them with Harps and Crowns, and gave them to them; the Harps to praise withal, and the Crowns in token of honour; Then I heard in my Dream that all the Bells in the City Rang again for joy: and that it was said unto them, *Enter ye into the joy of your Lord.* I also heard the men themselves, that they sang with a loud voice, saying, *Blessing, Honour, Glory and Power, be to him that sitteth upon the Throne, and to the Lamb for ever and ever.* Rev. 5. 13, 14.

Now just as the Gates were opened to let in the men, I looked in after them; and behold, the City shone like the Sun, the Streets also were paved with Gold, and in them walked many men, with Crowns on their heads, Palms in their hands, and golden Harps to sing praises withal.

There were also of them that had wings, and they answered one another without intermission, saying, *Holy, Holy, Holy, is the Lord.* And after that, they shut up the Gates: which when I had seen, I wished myself among them.

Now while I was gazing upon all these things, I turned my head to look back, and saw *Ignorance* come up to the River side; but he soon got over, and that without half that difficulty which the other two men met with. For it happened that there was then in that place one *Vain-hope* a Ferry-man, that with his Boat helped him over: so he, as the other I saw, did ascend the Hill to come up to the Gate, only he came alone; neither did any man meet him with the least encouragement. When he was come up to the Gate, he looked up to the writing that

Ignorance comes up to the River.

Vain-Hope does ferry him over.

was above ; and then began to knock, supposing that entrance should have been quickly administered to him : But he was asked by the men that lookt over the top of the Gate, Whence came you ? and what would you have ? He answered, I have eat and drank in the presence of the King, and he has taught in our Streets. Then they asked him for his Certificate, that they might go in and shew it to the King. So he fumbled in his bosom for one, and found none. Then said they, Have you none ? But the man answered never a word. So they told the King, but he would not come down to see him ; but commanded the two shining Ones that conducted *Christian* and *Hopeful* to the City, to go out and take *Ignorance* and bind him hand and foot, and have him away. Then they took him up, and carried him through the air to the door that I saw in the side of the Hill, and put him in there. Then I saw that there was a way to Hell, even from the Gates of Heaven, as well as from the City of *Destruction*. So I awoke, and behold it was a Dream.

FINIS.



## THE CONCLUSION.

*Now Reader, I have told my Dream to thee ;  
See if thou canst Interpret it to me ;  
Or to thyself, or Neighbour : but take heed  
Of mis-interpreting : for that, instead  
Of doing good, will but thyself abuse :  
By mis-interpreting evil insues.*

*Take heed also, that thou be not extream,  
In playing with the out-side of my Dream :  
Nor let my figure, or similitude,  
Put thee into a laughter or a feud ;  
Leave this for Boys and Fools ; but as for thee,  
Do thou the substance of my matter see.*

*Put by the Curtains, look within my Vail ;  
Turn up my Metaphors and do not fail  
There, if thou seekest them, such things to find,  
As will be helpful to an honest mind.*

*What of my dross thou findest there, be bold  
To throw away, but yet preserve the Gold.  
What if my Gold be wrapped up in Ore ?  
None throws away the Apple for the Core :  
But if thou shalt cast all away as vain,  
I know not but 'twill make me Dream again.*

THE END.



**THE PILGRIM'S PROGRESS**  
**FROM THIS WORLD TO THAT WHICH IS TO COME**

**THE SECOND PART**  
**DELIVERED UNDER THE SIMILITUDE OF A DREAM**

**WHEREIN IS SET FORTH**  
**THE MANNER OF THE SETTING OUT OF *CHRISTIAN'S* WIFE**  
**AND CHILDREN, THEIR DANGEROUS JOURNEY, AND**  
**SAFE ARRIVAL AT THE DESIRED COUNTRY**

**By JOHN BUNYAN**

*I have used similitudes.—Hos. xij. 10*



THE  
AUTHOR'S WAY OF SENDING FORTH  
HIS SECOND PART  
OF THE  
PILGRIM.

*Go, now my little Book, to every place,  
Where my first Pilgrim, has but shewn his Face :  
Call at their door : If any say, who's there ?  
Then answer thou, Christiana is here.  
If they bid thee come in, then enter thou,  
With all thy boys. And then, as thou know'st how,  
Tell who they are, also from whence they came,  
Perhaps they'll know them, by their looks, or name  
But if they should not, ask them yet again  
If formerly they did not Entertain  
One Christian a Pilgrim ; If they say  
They did : And was delighted in his way :  
Then let them know that those related were  
Unto him : Yea, his Wife and Children are.  
Tell them that they have left their House and Home,  
Are turned Pilgrims, seek a World to come :  
That they have met with hardships in the way,*

*That they do meet with troubles night and day ;  
That they have trod on Serpents, fought with Devils,  
Have also overcome a many evils.*

*Yea tell them also of the next, who have  
Of love to Pilgrimage been stout and brave  
Defenders of that way, and how they still  
Refuse this World, to do their Father's will.*

*Go, tell them also of those dainty things,  
That Pilgrimage unto the Pilgrim brings,  
Let them acquainted be, too, how they are  
Beloved of their King, under his care ;  
What goodly Mansions for them he provides,  
Tho' they meet with rough Winds, and swelling Tides,  
How brave a calm they will enjoy at last,  
Who to their Lord, and by his ways hold fast.*

*Perhaps with heart and hand they will embrace  
Thee, as they did my firstling, and will Grace  
Thee, and thy fellows with such cheer and fair,  
As shew will, they of Pilgrims lovers are.*

### 1. Object.

But how if they will not believe of me  
That I am truly thine, 'cause some there be  
That Counterfeit the Pilgrim, and his name,  
Seek by disguise to seem the very same.  
*And by that means have wrought themselves into  
The Hands and Houses of I know not who.*

### Answer.

*'Tis true, some have of late, to Counterfeit  
My Pilgrim, to their own, my Title set ;  
Yea others, half my Name and Title too*

*Have stitched to their Book, to make them do ;  
But yet they by their Features do declare  
Themselves not mine to be, whose'er they are.*

*If such thou meetst with, then thine only way  
Before them all, is, to say out thy say,  
In thine own native Language, which no man  
Now useth, nor with ease dissemble can.*

*If after all, they still of you shall doubt,  
Thinking that you like Gipsies go about,  
In naughty-wise the Country to defile,  
Or that you seek good People to beguile  
With things unwarrantable : Send for me  
And I will Testifie, you Pilgrims be ;  
Yea, I will Testifie that only you  
My Pilgrims are ; And that alone will do.*

## 2. Object.

But yet, perhaps, I may enquire for him,  
Of those that wish him Damned life and limb,  
What shall I do, when I at such a door,  
For *Pilgrims* ask, and they shall rage the more ?

## Answer.

*Fright not thyself my Book, for such Bugbears,  
Are nothing else but ground for groundless fears,  
My Pilgrim's Book has travell'd Sea and Land,  
Yet could I never come to understand,  
That it was slighted, or turn'd out of Door  
By any Kingdom, were they Rich or Poor.*

*In France and Flanders where men kill each other  
My Pilgrim is esteem'd a Friend, a Brother.  
In Holland too, 'tis said, as I am told,*

*My Pilgrim is with some, worth more than Gold.*

*Highlanders, and Wild-Irish can agree,  
My Pilgrim should familiar with them be.*

*'Tis in New-England under such advance,  
Receives there so much loving Countenance,  
As to be Trim'd, new-Cloth'd, and deck't with Gems,  
That it may shew its Features, and its Limbs,  
Yet more, so comely doth my Pilgrim walk,  
That of him thousands daily Sing and talk.*

*If you draw nearer home, it will appear  
My Pilgrim knows no ground of shame, or fear ;  
City, and Country will him Entertain,  
With welcome Pilgrim. Yea, they can't refrain  
From smiling, if my Pilgrim be but by,  
Or shews his head in any Company.*

*Brave Galants do my Pilgrim hug and love,  
Esteem it much, yea value it above  
Things of a greater bulk, yea, with delight,  
Say my Lark's leg is better than a Kite.*

*Young Ladies, and young Gentle-women too,  
Do no small kindness to my Pilgrim shew ;  
Their Cabinets, their Bosoms, and their Hearts  
My Pilgrim has, 'cause he to them imparts,  
His pretty riddles in such wholesome strains  
As yield them profit double to their pains  
Of reading. Yea, I think I may be bold  
To say some prize him far above their Gold.*

*The very Children that do walk the street,  
If they do but my holy Pilgrim meet,  
Salute him will, will wish him well and say,  
He is the only Stripling of the Day.*

*They that have never seen him, yet admire  
What they have heard of him, and much desire*



*To have his Company, and hear him tell  
Those Pilgrim stories which he knows so well.*

*Yea, some who did not love him at the first,  
But call'd him Fool, and Noddy, say they must  
Now they have seen and heard him, him commend,  
And to those whom they love, they do him send.*

*Wherefore my Second Part, thou needst not be  
Afraid to shew thy Head: None can hurt thee,  
That wish but well to him that went before,  
'Cause thou com'st after with a Second store,  
Of things as good, as rich, as profitable,  
For Young, for Old, for Stag'ring and for stable.*

### 3. Object.

But some there be that say he laughs too loud ;  
And some do say his Head is in a Cloud.  
Some say, his Words and Stories are so dark,  
They know not how, by them, to find his mark.

### Answer.

*One may (I think) say both his laughs and cries,  
May well be guess't at by his watry Eyes.  
Some things are of that Nature as to make  
One's fancie Checkle while his Heart doth ake,  
When Jacob saw his Rachel with the Sheep,  
He did at the same time both kiss and weep.*

*Whereas some say a Cloud is in his Head,  
That doth but shew how Wisdom's covered  
With its own mantles: And to stir the mind  
To a search after what it fain would find,  
Things that seem to be hid in words obscure,  
Do but the Godly mind the more allure ;*

*To study what those Sayings should contain,  
That speak to us in such a Cloudy strain.*

*I also know, a dark Similitude  
Will on the Fancie more itself intrude,  
And will stick faster in the Heart and Head,  
Than things from Similies not borrowed.*

*Wherefore, my Book, let no discouragement  
Hinder thy travels. Behold, thou art sent  
To Friends, not foes : to Friends that will give place  
To thee, thy Pilgrims, and thy words embrace.*

*Besides, what my first Pilgrim left conceal'd,  
Thou my brave Second Pilgrim hast reveal'd  
What Christian left lock't up and went his way ;  
Sweet Christiana opens with her Key.*

#### 4. Object.

But some love not the method of your first,  
Romance they count it, throw't away as dust,  
If I should meet with such, what should I say ?  
Must I slight them as they slight me, or nay ?

#### Answer.

*My Christiana, if with such thou meet,  
By all means in all Loving-wise, them greet ;  
Render them not reviling for revile :  
But if they frown, I prithee on them smile,  
Perhaps 'tis Nature, or some ill report  
Has made them thus despise, or thus retort.*

*Some love no Cheese, some love no Fish, and some  
Love not their Friends, nor their own House or home ;  
Some start at Pig, slight Chicken, love not Fowl,  
More than they love a Cuckow or an Owl :*

*Leave such, my Christiana, to their choice,  
And seek those, who to find thee will rejoice ;  
By no means strive, but in humble wise,  
Present thee to them in thy Pilgrim's guise.*

*Go then, my little Book and shew to all  
That entertain, and bid thee welcome shall,  
What thou shalt keep close, shut up from the rest,  
And wish what thou shalt shew them may be blest  
To them for good, may make them chuse to be  
Pilgrims, better by far, than thee or me.*

*Go then, I say, tell all men who thou art,  
Say, I am Christiana, and my part,  
Is now with my four Sons, to tell you what  
It is for men to take a Pilgrim's lot ;*

*Go also tell them who, and what they be,  
That now do go on Pilgrimage with thee ;  
Say, here's my neighbour Mercy, she is one,  
That has long-time with me a Pilgrim gone ;  
Come see her in her Virgin Face, and learn  
'Twixt Idle ones, and Pilgrims to discern.  
Yea let young Damsels learn of her to prize,  
The World which is to come, in any wise ;  
When little Tripping Maidens follow God,  
And leave old doting Sinners to his Rod ;  
'Tis like those Days wherein the young ones cry'd  
Hosannah to whom old ones did deride.*

*Next tell them of old Honest, whom you found  
With his white hairs treading the Pilgrim's ground ;  
Yea, tell them how plain-hearted this man was,  
How after his good Lord he bare his Cross :  
Perhaps with some gray Head this may prevail,  
With Christ to fall in Love, and Sin bewail.*

*Tell them also how Master Fearing went*

*On Pilgrimage, and how the time he spent  
In Solitariness, with Fears and Cries,  
And how at last, he won the Joyful Prize.  
He was a good man, though much down in Spirit,  
He is a good Man, and doth Life inherit.*

*Tell them of Master Feeblemind also,  
Who, not before, but still behind would go ;  
Show them also how he had like been slain,  
And how one Great-Heart did his life regain :  
This man was true of Heart, tho' weak in grace,  
One might true Godliness read in his Face.*

*Then tell them of Master Ready-to-halt,  
A Man with Crutches, but much without fault :  
Tell them how Master Feeblemind, and he  
Did love, and in Opinions much agree.  
And let all know, tho' weakness was their chance,  
Yet sometimes one could Sing the other Dance.*

*Forget not Master Valiant-for-the-Truth,  
That Man of courage, tho' a very Youth.  
Tell every one his Spirit was so stout,  
No Man could ever make him face about,  
And how Great-Heart, and he could not forbear  
But put down Doubting Castle, slay Despair.*

*Overlook not Master Despondancie.  
Nor Much-afraid, his Daughter, tho' they lie  
Under such Mantles as may make them look  
(With some) as if their God had them forsook.  
They softly went, but sure, and at the end,  
Found that the Lord of Pilgrims was their Friend.  
When thou hast told the World of all these things,  
Then turn about, my book, and touch these strings,  
Which, if but touched will such Musick make,  
They'll make a Cripple dance, a Giant quake.*

*These Riddles that lie couch't within thy breast,  
Freely propound, expound: and for the rest  
Of thy mysterious lines, let them remain,  
For those whose nimble Fancies shall them gain.*

*Now may this little Book a blessing be,  
To those that love this little Book and me,  
And may its buyer have no cause to say,  
His Money is but lost or thrown away,  
Yea may this Second Pilgrim yield that Fruit,  
As may with each good Pilgrim's fancie suit,  
And may it perswade some that go astray,  
To turn their Foot and Heart to the right way.*

Is the Hearty Prayer

of the Author

JOHN BUNYAN.



THE  
PILGRIM'S PROGRESS.

IN THE SIMILITUDE OF A

DREAM.

---

THE SECOND PART.

---

COURTEOUS Companions, sometime since, to tell you my Dream that I had of *Christian* the Pilgrim, and of his dangerous Journey toward the Celestial Country; was pleasant to me, and profitable to you. I told you then also what I saw concerning his *Wife* and *Children*, and how unwilling they were to go with him on Pilgrimage: Insomuch that he was forced to go on his Progress without them, for he durst not run the danger of that destruction which he feared would come by staying with them, in the City of Destruction: Wherefore, as I then shewed you, he left them and departed.

Now it hath so happened, through the Multiplicity of Business, that I have been much hindred, and kept back from my wonted Travels into those Parts whence he went, and so could not till now obtain an opportunity to

make further enquiry after whom he left behind, that I might give you an account of them. But having had some concerns that way of late, I went down again thitherward. Now, having taken up my Lodgings in a Wood about a mile off the Place, as I slept I dreamed again.

And as I was in my Dream, behold, an aged Gentleman came by where I lay; and because he was to go some part of the way that I was travelling, methought I got up and went with him. So as we walked, and as Travellers usually do, I was as if we fell into discourse, and our talk happened to be about *Christian* and his Travels: For thus I began with the Old man.

*Sir*, said I, *what Town is that there below, that lieth on the left hand of our way?*

Then said Mr. *Sagacity*, for that was his name, it is the City of *Destruction*, a populous place, but possessed with a very ill conditioned, and idle sort of People.

*I thought that was that City*, quoth I, *I went once myself through that Town, and therefore know that this report you give of it is true.*

*Sag.* Too true, I wish I could speak truth in speaking better of them that dwell therein.

*Well Sir*, quoth I, *Then I perceive you to be a well meaning man: and so one that takes pleasure to hear and tell of that which is good; pray did you never hear what happened to a man some time ago in this Town (whose name was Christian) that went on Pilgrimage up towards the higher Regions?*

*Sag.* Hear of him! Ay, and I also heard of the Molestations, Troubles, Wars, Captivities, Cries, Groans, Frights and Fears that he met with, and had in his Journey, besides, I must tell you, all our Country rings of him, there are but few Houses that have heard of him



and his doings, but have sought after and got the *Records* of his Pilgrimage ; yea, I think I may say, That that his hazardous Journey, has got a many well-wishers to his ways : For though when he was here, he was *Fool* in every man's mouth, yet now he is gone, he is highly commended of all. For, 'tis said he lives bravely where he is : Yea, many of them that are resolved never to run his hazards, yet have their mouths water at his gains.

*Christians are well spoken of when gone, tho' called Fools while they are here.*

*They may, quoth I, well think, if they think anything that is true, that he liveth well where he is, for he now lives at, and in the Fountain of Life, and has what he has without Labour and Sorrow, for there is no grief mixed therewith.*

*Sag.* Talk ! The People talk strangely about him : Some say, that he *now walks in White*, that he has a Chain of Gold about his Neck, that he has a Crown of Gold, beset with Pearls upon his Head : Others say, that the shining ones that sometimes shewed themselves to him in his Journey, are become his Companions, and that he is as familiar with them in the place where he is, as here one Neighbour is with another. Besides, 'tis confidently affirmed concerning him, that the King of the place where he is, has bestowed upon him already, a very rich and pleasant Dwelling at Court, and that he every day eateth and drinketh, and walketh, and talketh with him, and receiveth of the smiles and favours of him that is Judge of all there. Moreover, it is expected of some that his Prince, the Lord of that Country, will shortly come into *these* parts, and will know the reason, if they can give any, why his Neighbours set so little by him, and had him so much in derision when they perceived that he would be a Pilgrim. For they say, that now he is so in the Affections of his Prince, and that his *Sovereign*

*Rev. 3. 4.  
Chap. 6. 11.*

*Zec. 3. 7.*

*Luke 14. 15.*

*Jude 14, 15.*

Christian's  
King will  
take Chris-  
tian's part.  
Luke 10. 16.

is so much concerned with the *Indignities* that were cast upon *Christian* when he became a Pilgrim, that he will look upon all as if done unto himself; and no marvel, for 'twas for the love that he had to his Prince, that he ventured as he did.

Rev. 14. 13. *I dare say, quoth I, I am glad on't, I am glad for the poor man's sake, for that now he has rest from his Labour, and for that he now reapeth the benefit of his Tears with Joy; and for that he has got beyond the Gun-shot of his Enemies, and is out of the reach of them that hate him. I also am glad for that a Rumour of these things is noised abroad in this Country; Who can tell but that it may work some good effect on some that are left behind? But, pray Sir, while it is fresh in my mind, do you hear anything of his Wife and Children? Poor hearts, I wonder in my mind what they do.*

Good Tidings  
of Christian's  
Wife and  
Children.

*Sag.* Who! *Christiana*, and her Sons! They are like to do as well as did *Christian* himself, for though they all play'd the *Fool* at the first, and would by no means be perswaded by either the Tears or entreaties of *Christian*, yet second thoughts have wrought wonderfully with them, so they have packt up and are also gone after him.

*Better, and better, quoth I, But What! Wife and Children and all?*

*Sag.* 'Tis true, I can give you an account of the matter, for I was upon the spot at the instant, and was thoroughly acquainted with the whole affair.

*Then, said I, a man it seems may report it for a truth?*

*Sag.* You need not fear to affirm it, I mean that they are all gone on Pilgrimage, both the good Woman and her four Boys. And being we are, as I perceive, going

some considerable way together, I will give you an account of the whole of the matter.

This *Christiana* (for that was her name from the day that she with her Children betook themselves to a *Pilgrim's Life*;) after her Husband was gone *over the River*, and she could hear of him no more, her thoughts began to work in her mind; First, for that she had lost her Husband, and for that the loving bond of that Relation was utterly broken betwixt them. For you know, said he to me, nature can do no less but entertain the living with many a heavy Cogitation in the remembrance of the loss of loving Relations. This therefore of her Husband did cost her many a Tear. But this was not all, for *Christiana* did also begin to consider with herself, whether her unbecoming behaviour towards her Husband, was not one cause that she saw him no more, and that in such sort he was taken away from her. And upon this, came into her mind by *swarms*, all her unkind, unnatural, and ungodly Carriages to her dear Friend: which also clogged her Conscience, and did load her with guilt. She was moreover much broken with calling to remembrance the restless Groans, brinish Tears and self-bemoanings of her Husband, and how she did harden her heart against all his entreaties, and loving perswasions (of her and her Sons) to go with him, yea, there was not anything that *Christian* either said to her, or did before her, all the while that his burden did hang on his back, but it returned upon her like a flash of lightning, and rent the Caul of her Heart in sunder. Specially that bitter outcry of his, *What shall I do to be saved*, did ring in her ears most dolefully.

<sup>1</sup> Part, page  
173.

Mark this,  
you that are  
Churls to  
your godly  
Relations.

<sup>1</sup> Part, page  
10.

Then said she to her Children, Sons, we are all undone. I have sinned away your Father, and he is gone; he

would have had us with him ; but I would not go myself, I also have hindred you of Life. With that the Boys fell all into Tears, and cried out to go after their Father. Oh ! Said *Christiana*, that it had been but our lot to go with him, then had it fared well with us beyond what 'tis like to do now. For tho' I formerly foolishly imagin'd concerning the Troubles of your Father, that they proceeded of a foolish Fancy that he had, or for that he was overrun with Melancholy Humours ; yet now 'twill not out of my mind, but that they sprang from another cause, to wit, for that the Light of Light was given him, by the help of which, as I perceive, he has escaped the Snares of Death. Then they all wept again, and cried out : Oh, Wo, worth the day.

James 1. 23,  
24, 25.

Christiana's  
Dream.

The next night, *Christiana* had a Dream, and behold she saw as if a broad Parchment was opened before her, in which were recorded the sum of her ways, and the times, as she thought, look'd *very black upon her*. Then she cried out aloud in her sleep, Lord have mercy upon me a Sinner, and the little Children heard her.

Luke 18. 13.

Mark this,  
this is the  
quintessence  
of Hell.

After this she thought she saw two very ill favoured ones standing by her Bed-side, and saying, *What shall we do with this Woman? For she cries out for Mercy waking and sleeping: If she be suffered to go on as she begins, we shall lose her as we have lost her Husband.* Wherefore we must by one way or other, seek to take her off from the thoughts of what shall be hereafter : else all the World cannot help it, but she will become a Pilgrim.

Help against  
Discourage-  
ment.

Now she awoke in a great Sweat, also a trembling was upon her, but after a while she fell to sleeping again. And then she thought she saw *Christian* her Husband in a place of Bliss among many *Immortals*, with an *Harp*

in his Hand, standing and playing upon it before one that sate on a Throne with a Rainbow about his Head. She saw also as if he bowed his Head with his Face to the Pav'd-work that was under the Prince's Feet, saying, *I heartily thank my Lord and King, for bringing of me into this Place.* Then shouted a company of them that stood round about, and harped with their Harps : but no man living could tell what they said, but *Christian* and his Companions.

Next Morning when she was up, had prayed to God, and talked with her Children a while, one knocked hard at the door ; to whom she spake out saying, *If thou comest in God's name, come in.* So he said *Amen*, and opened the Door, and saluted her with *Peace be to this House.* The which when he had done, he said, *Christiana, knowest thou wherefore I am come ?* Then she blusht and trembled, also her Heart began to wax warm with desires to know whence he came, and what was his Errand to her. So he said unto her ; my name is *Secret*, I dwell with those that are high. It is talked of where I dwell, as if thou had'st a desire to go thither ; also there is a report that thou art aware of the evil thou hast formerly done to thy Husband in hardening of thy Heart against his way, and in keeping of these thy Babes in their Ignorance. *Christiana*, the merciful one has sent me to tell thee that he is a God ready to forgive, and that he taketh delight to multiply to pardon offences. He also would have thee know that he inviteth thee to come into his presence, to his Table, and that he will feed thee with the Fat of his House, and with the Heritage of *Jacob* thy Father.

*Convictions  
seconded with  
fresh Tidings  
of God's  
readiness to  
Pardon.*

There is *Christian* thy Husband, *that was*, with Legions more his Companions, ever beholding that face that doth

minister Life to beholders: and they will all be glad when they shall hear the sound of thy feet step over thy Father's Threshold.

*Christiana* at this was greatly abashed in herself, and bowing her head to the ground, this *Visitor* proceeded and said, *Christiana!* Here is also a Letter for thee which I have brought from thy Husband's King. So she took it and opened it, but it smelt after the manner of the best Perfume, also it was Written in Letters of Gold. The Contents of the Letter was, *That the King would have her do as did Christian her Husband: for that was the way to come to his City, and to dwell in his Presence with Joy, forever.* At this the good Woman was quite overcome. So she cried out to her *Visitor*. *Sir, will you carry me and my children with you, that we also may go and worship this King?*

Song 1. 3.

*Christiana quite overcome.*

*Further Instruction to Christiana.*

Then said the *Visitor*, *Christiana!* *The bitter is before the sweet:* Thou must through troubles, as did he that went before thee, enter this Celestial City. Wherefore I advise thee, to do as did *Christian* thy Husband: go to the *Wicket Gate* yonder, over the Plain, for that stands in the head of the way up which thou must go, and I wish thee all good speed. Also I advise that thou put this Letter in thy Bosom. That thou read therein to thyself and to thy Children, until you have got it by root-of-Heart. For it is one of the Songs that thou must Sing while thou art in this House of thy Pilgrimage. Also this thou must deliver in at the *further Gate*.

Psal. 119. 54.

Now I saw in my Dream that this Old Gentleman, as he told me this Story, did himself seem to be greatly affected therewith. He moreover proceeded and said, So *Christiana* called her Sons together, and began thus to

Address herself unto them. My Sons, I have as you may perceive, been of late under much exercise in my Soul about the Death of your Father; not for that I doubt at all of his Happiness: For I am satisfied now that he is well. I have also been much affected with the thoughts of mine own State and yours, which I verily believe is by nature miserable: My Carriages also to your Father in his distress, is a great load to my Conscience. For I hardened both my own heart and yours against him, and refused to go with him on Pilgrimage.

*Christiana  
prays well for  
her Journey.*

The thoughts of these things would now kill me outright; but that for a Dream which I had last night, and but that for the encouragement that this Stranger has given me this Morning. Come my Children, let us pack up, and be gone to the Gate that leads to the Celestial Country, that we may see your Father, and be with him, and his Companions in Peace, according to the Laws of that Land.

Then did her Children burst out into Tears for Joy that the Heart of their Mother was so inclined: So their *Visitor* bid them farewell: and they began to prepare to set out for their Journey.

But while they were thus about to be gone, two of the Women that were *Christiana's* Neighbours, came up to her House and knocked at her Door. To whom she said as before, *If you come in God's name, come in.* At this the Women were stun'd, for this kind of Language, they used not to hear, or to perceive to drop from the lips of *Christiana*. Yet they came in; but behold they found the good Woman a preparing to be gone from her House.

*Christiana's  
new Lan-  
guage stuns  
her old  
Neighbours.*

So they began and said, *Neighbour, pray what is your meaning by this?*

*Christiana* answered and said to the eldest of them whose name was Mrs. *Timorous*, I am preparing for a Journey (This *Timorous* was daughter to him that met *Christian* upon the Hill *Difficulty*: and would a had him gone back for fear of the Lions.)

*Timorous*. For what Journey I pray you?

*Chris*. Even to go after my good Husband; and with that she fell a weeping.

*Tim*. I hope not so, good Neighbour, pray for your poor Children's sakes; do not so unwomanly cast away yourself.

*Chris*. Nay, my Children, shall go with me; not one of them is willing to stay behind.

*Tim*. I wonder in my very heart, what, or who has brought you into this mind.

*Chris*. Oh, Neighbour, knew you but as much as I do, I doubt not but that you would go with me.

*Tim*. Prithee what new knowledge hast thou got that so worketh off thy mind from thy Friends, and that tempteth thee to go nobody knows where?

*Chris*. Then *Christiana* replied, I have been sorely afflicted since my Husband's departure from me; but specially since he went over the River. But that which troubleth me most, is my churlish carriages to him when he was under his distress. Besides, I am now as he was then; nothing will serve me but going on Pilgrimage. I was a dreaming last night that I saw him. O that my Soul was with him. He dwelleth in the presence of the King of the Country, he sits and eats with him at his Table, he is become a Companion of *Immortals*, and has a House now given him to dwell in, to which, the best Palaces on Earth, if compared, seem to me to be but as a Dunghill. The Prince of the Place has also sent for me

1 Part, page 47.

*Timorous comes to visit Christiana, with Mercy, one of her Neighbours.*

*Death.*

2 Cor. 5. 1, 2, 3, 4.



with promise of entertainment if I shall come to him ; his messenger was here even now, and has brought me a Letter, which Invites me to come. And with that she pluck'd out her Letter, and read it, and said to them, what now will you say to this ?

Tim. *Oh the madness that has possessed thee and thy Husband, to run yourselves upon such difficulties ! You have heard, I am sure, what your Husband did meet with, even in a manner at the first step that he took on his way,* <sup>1 Part, pages 15-18.</sup> *as our Neighbour Obstinate can yet testify ; for he went along with him, yea and Pliable too, until they, like wise men, were afraid to go any further. We also heard over and above, how he met with the Lions, Apollyon, the Shadow of Death, and many other things : Nor is the danger that he met with at Vanity fair to be forgotten by thee. For if he, tho' a man, was so hard put to it, what canst thou being but a poor Woman, do ? Consider also* <sup>The reasonings of the flesh.</sup> *that these four sweet Babes are thy Children, thy Flesh and thy Bones. Wherefore, though thou shouldest be so rash as to cast away thyself : Yet for the sake of the Fruit of thy Body, keep thou at home.*

But *Christiana* said unto her, tempt me not, my Neighbour : I have now a price put into mine hand to get gain, and I should be a Fool of the greatest size, if I should have no heart to strike in with the opportunity. And for that you tell me of all these Troubles that I am like to meet with in the way, they are so far off from being to me a discouragement, that they shew I am in the right. <sup>A pertinent reply to fleshly reasonings.</sup> *The bitter must come before the sweet, and that also will make the sweet the sweeter. Wherefore since you came not to my House, in God's name, as I said, I pray you to be gone, and not to disquiet me farther.*

Mercy's  
Bowels yearn  
over Chris-  
tiana.

Then *Timorous* also revil'd her, and said to her Fellow, come Neighbour *Mercy*, let's leave her in her own hands, since she scorns our Counsel and Company. But *Mercy* was at a stand, and could not so readily comply with her Neighbour: and that for a two-fold reason. First, her Bowels yearned over *Christiana*: so she said within herself, If my Neighbour will needs be gone, I will go a little way with her, and help her. Secondly, her Bowels yearned over her own Soul, (for what *Christiana* had said, had taken some hold upon her mind.) Wherefore she said within herself again, I will yet have more talk with this *Christiana*, and if I find Truth and Life in what she shall say, myself with my heart shall also go with her. Wherefore *Mercy* began thus to reply to her neighbour *Timorous*.

*Mercy*. Neighbour, *I did indeed come with you, to see Christiana this Morning, and since she is, as you see, a taking of her last farewell of her Country, I think to walk this Sun-shine Morning, a little way with her to help her on the way.* But she told her not of her second Reason, but kept that to herself.

*Timorous*  
forsakes her;  
but *Mercy*  
cleaves to her.

*Timorous*  
acquaints her  
Friends what  
the good  
*Christiana*  
intends to do.

*Tim*. Well, I see you have a mind to go a fooling too: but take heed in time, and be wise: while we are out of danger we are out; but when we are in, we are in. So Mrs. *Timorous* returned to her House, and *Christiana* betook herself to her Journey. But when *Timorous* was got home to her House, she sends for some of her Neighbours, to wit, Mrs. *Bat's-eyes*, Mrs. *Inconsiderate*, Mrs. *Light-mind*, and Mrs. *Know-nothing*. So when they were come to her House, she falls to telling of the story of *Christiana*, and of her intended Journey. And thus she began her Tale.

*Tim*. Neighbours, having had little to do this morning,

I went to give *Christiana* a visit, and when I came at the door, I knocked, as you know 'tis our Custom: And she answered, *If you come in God's Name, come in.* So in I went, thinking all was well: But when I came in, I found her preparing herself to depart the Town, she and also her Children. So I asked her what was her meaning by that? and she told me in short, That she was now of a mind to go on Pilgrimage, as did her Husband. She told me also a Dream that she had, and how the King of the Country where her Husband was, had sent her an inviting Letter to come thither.

*Then said Mrs. Know-nothing, And what! do you think she will go?* *Mrs. Know nothing.*

*Tim.* Aye, go she will, whatever come on't; and methinks I know it by this; for that which was my great Argument to perswade her to stay at home, (to wit, the Troubles she was like to meet with in the way) is one great Argument with her to put her forward on her Journey. For she told me in so many words, *The bitter goes before the sweet.* Yea, and for as much as it so doth, it makes the sweet the sweeter.

*Mrs. Bat's-eyes.* Oh this blind and foolish woman, *Mrs. Bat's-eyes.* said she, Will she not take warning by her Husband's Afflictions? For my part, I see if he was here again he would rest him content in a whole Skin, and never run so many hazards for nothing.

*Mrs. Inconsiderate,* also replied, saying, away with such Fantastical Fools from the Town; a good Riddance, *Mrs. Inconsiderate.* for my part, I say, of her, Should she stay where she dwells, and retain this her mind, who could live quietly by her? for she will either be dumpish or unneighbourly, or talk of such matters as no wise Body can abide: Wherefore, for my part I shall never be sorry for her

Departure ; let her go, and let better come in her room : 'twas never a good World since these whimsical Fools dwelt in it.

*Mrs. Light-mind, Madam Wanton she that had like to a been too hard for Faithful in time past, 1 Part, page 75.*

Then Mrs. *Light-mind* added as followeth. Come, put this kind of Talk away. I was yesterday at *Madam Wanton's*, where we were as merry as the Maids. For who do you think should be there, but I, and Mrs. *Love-the-flesh*, and three or four more, with Mr. *Lechery*, Mrs. *Filth*, and some others. So there we had Musick and Dancing, and what else was meet to fill up the pleasure. And I dare say my Lady herself is an admirably well bred Gentlewoman, and Mr. *Lechery* is as pretty a Fellow.

*Discourse betwixt Mercy and good Christiana.*

By this time *Christiana* was got on her way, and *Mercy* went along with her. So as they went, her Children being there also, *Christiana* began to discourse. And *Mercy*, said *Christiana*, I take this as an unexpected favour, that thou shouldst set foot out of Doors with me to accompany me a little in my way.

*Mercy inclines to go.*

*Mercy. Then said young Mercy (for she was but young,) If I thought it would be to purpose to go with you, I would never go near the Town any more.*

*Christiana would have her neighbour with her.*

*Chris.* Well, *Mercy*, said *Christiana*, cast in thy Lot with me. I well know what will be the end of our Pilgrimage, my Husband is where he would not but be, for all the Gold in the *Spanish Mines*. Nor shalt thou be rejected tho' thou goest but upon *my Invitation*. The King who hath sent for me and my Children, is one that delighteth in *Mercy*. Besides, if thou wilt, I will hire thee, and thou shalt go along with me as my servant. Yet we will have all things in Common betwixt thee and me, only go along with me.

*Mercy doubts of acceptance.*

*Mercy. But how shall I be ascertained that I also*

*shall be entertained? Had I this hope, but from one that can tell, I would make no stick at all, but would go being helped by him that can help, tho' the way was never so tedious.*

*Christiana.* Well, loving *Mercy*, I will tell thee what thou shalt do, go with me to the *Wicket Gate*, and there I will further enquire for thee, and if there thou shalt not meet with encouragement, I will be content that thou shalt return to thy place. I also will pay thee for thy Kindness which thou shewest to me and my Children, in thy accompanying of us in our way as thou doest.

*Christiana allures her to the Gate which is Christ, and promiseth there to enquire for her.*

*Mercy.* Then will I go thither, and will take what shall follow, and the Lord grant that my Lot may there fall even as the King of Heaven shall have his heart upon me.

*Mercy prays.*

*Christiana*, then was glad at her heart, not only that she had a Companion, but also for that she had prevailed with this poor Maid to fall in love with her own Salvation. So they went on together, and *Mercy* began to weep. Then said *Christiana*, wherefore weepeth my Sister so?

*Christiana glad of Mercy's company.*

*Mer.* Alas! said she, who can but lament that shall but rightly consider what a State and Condition my poor Relations are in, that yet remain in our sinful Town: and that which makes my grief the more heavy is, because they have no Instructor, nor any to tell them what is to come.

*Mercy grieves for her carnal Relations.*

*Chris.* Bowels becometh Pilgrims. And thou dost for thy Friends as my good *Christian* did for me when he left me; he mourned for that I would not heed nor regard him, but his Lord and ours did gather up his Tears and put them into his Bottle, and now both I, and thou, and these my sweet Babes, are reaping the Fruit

*Christian's Prayers were answered for his Relations after he was dead.*

Psal. 126. 5,  
6.

and benefit of them. I hope, *Mercy*, these Tears of thine will not be lost, for the Truth hath said, *That they that sow in Tears shall reap in Joy, in singing. And he that goeth forth and weepeth bearing precious seed, shall doubtless come again with rejoicing, bringing his Sheaves with him.*

Then said *Mercy*,

*Let the Most Blessed be my guide,  
If't be his blessed will,  
Unto his Gate, into his Fold,  
Up to his Holy Hill.*

*And let him never suffer me  
To swerve, or turn aside  
From his free grace, and Holy ways,  
Whate'er shall me betide.*

*And let him gather them of mine,  
That I have left behind.  
Lord make them pray they may be thine,  
With all their heart and mind.*

1 Part, page  
15.

*Their own  
Carnal con-  
clusions, in-  
stead of the  
word of life.*

Now my old Friend proceeded, and said, But when *Christiana* came up to the Slough of *Despond*, she began to be at a stand: for, said she, This is the place in which my dear Husband had like to have been smothered with Mud. She perceived also, that notwithstanding the Command of the King to make this place for Pilgrims, good; yet it was rather worse than formerly. So I asked if that was true? Yes, said the Old Gentleman, too true. For that many there be that pretend to be the King's Labourers; and that say they are for mending the King's High-ways, that bring *Dirt*, and *Dung* instead of Stones, and so mar instead of mending. Here *Christiana* therefore, with her Boys did make a stand: but said *Mercy*, come let us venture, only let us

be wary. Then they looked well to the *Steps*, and made a shift to get staggeringly over.

Mercy the boldest at the Slough of Despond.

Yet *Christiana* had like to a been in, and that not once nor twice. Now they had no sooner got over, but they thought they heard words that said unto them, *Blessed is she that believeth, for there shall be a performance of the things that have been told her from the Lord.*

Luke 1. 45.

Then they went on again; and said *Mercy* to *Christiana*, Had I as good ground to hope for a loving reception at the *Wicket-Gate*, as you, I think no Slough of *Despond* would discourage me.

Well, said the other, you know *your sore*, and I know *mine*: and, good friend, we shall all have enough evil before we come at our Journey's end.

For can it be imagined, that the people that design to attain such excellent Glories *as we do*, and that are so envied that Happiness *as we are*; but that we shall meet with what Fears and Scares, with what Troubles and Afflictions they can possibly assault us with, that hate us?

And now Mr. *Sagacity* left me to Dream out my Dream by myself. Wherefore methought I saw *Christiana*, and *Mercy* and the *Boys* go all of them up to the Gate. To which when they were come, they betook themselves to a short debate about *how* they must manage their calling at the Gate, and what should be said to him that did open to them. So it was concluded, since *Christiana* was the eldest, that she should knock for entrance, and that she should speak to him that did open, for the rest. So *Christiana* began to knock, and as her poor Husband did she *knocked*, and *knocked* again. But instead of any that answered, they all thought that they heard, as if a Dog came barking upon them. A

Prayer should be made with Consideration, and Fear: As well as in Faith and Hope.  
1 Part, page 27.

*The Dog, the Devil an Enemy to Prayer.*

*Christiana and her Companions perplexed about Prayer.*

Dog and a great one too, and this made the Women and Children afraid. Nor durst they for a while to knock any more for fear the *Mastiff* should fly upon them. Now therefore they were greatly tumbled up and down in their minds, and knew not what to do. Knock they durst not, for fear of the Dog: go back they durst not, for fear that the Keeper of that Gate should espy them, as they so went, and should be offended with them. At last they thought of knocking again, and knocked more vehemently than they did at the first. Then said the Keeper of the Gate, who is there? So the *Dog* left off to bark, and he opened unto them.

Then *Christiana* made low obeisance, and said, Let not our Lord be offended with his Handmaidens, for that we have knocked at his Princely Gate. Then said the Keeper, Whence come ye, and what is that you would have?

*Christiana* answered, We are come from whence *Christian* did come, and upon the same *Errand* as he; to wit, to be, if it shall please you, graciously admitted by this Gate, into the way that leads to the Celestial City. And I answer, my Lord, in the next place, that I am *Christiana*, once the Wife of *Christian*, that now is gotten above.

With that the Keeper of the Gate did marvel, saying, *What is she become now a Pilgrim, that but a while ago abhorred that Life?* Then she bowed her Head, and said, yes; and so are these my sweet Babes also.

*How Christiana is entertained at the Gate.*

Then he took her by the hand, and let her in and said also, *Suffer the little Children to come unto me*, and with that he shut up the Gate. This done, he called to a trumpeter that was above over the Gate, to entertain *Christiana* with shouting and sound of trumpet for joy.



So he obeyed and sounded, and filled the Air with his Melodious Notes.

Now all this while, poor *Mercy* did stand without, trembling and crying for fear that she was rejected. But when *Christiana* had gotten admittance for herself and her Boys: Then she began to make Intercession for *Mercy*.

*Chris.* And she said, my Lord, I have a Companion of mine that stands yet without, that is come hither upon the same account as myself. One that is much dejected in her mind, for that she comes, as she thinks, without sending for, whereas I was sent to, by my Husband's King to come. Christiana's prayer for her friend Mercy.

Now *Mercy* began to be very impatient, for each Minute was as long to her as an hour, wherefore she prevented *Christiana* from a fuller interceding for her, by knocking at the Gate herself. And she knocked then so loud, that she made *Christiana* to start. Then said the Keeper of the Gate who is there? And said *Christiana*, it is my Friend. The Delays make the hungry Soul the ferventer.

So he opened the Gate, and looked out; but *Mercy* was fallen down without in a Swoon, for she fainted, and was afraid that no Gate would be opened to her. Mercy faints.

Then he took her by the hand, and said, *Damsel*, I bid thee arise.

O sir, she said, I am faint, there is scarce Life left in me. But he answered, that one once said, *When my Soul fainted within me, I remembered the Lord and my prayer came in unto thee, into thy Holy Temple.* Fear not, but stand upon thy Feet, and tell me wherefore thou art come. Jonah 2. 7.

*Mer.* I am come, for that, unto which I was never invited as my Friend *Christiana* was. *Hers* was from The cause of her fainting.

the King, and mine was but from *her* : Wherefore I fear I presume.

*Did she desire thee to come with her to this Place ?*

*Mer.* Yes, And as my Lord sees, I am come. And if there is any Grace or forgiveness of Sins to spare, I beseech that I thy poor Handmaid may be partaker thereof.

*Mark this.*

Then he took her again by the Hand, and led her gently in and said, I pray for all them that believe on me, by what means soever they come unto me. Then said he to those that stood by : Fetch something, and give it *Mercy* to smell on, thereby to stay her fainting. So they fetcht her a *Bundle of Myrrh*, and a while after she was revived.

And now was *Christiana* and her Boys and *Mercy* received of the Lord at the head of the way, and spoke kindly unto by him.

Then said they yet further unto him, We are sorry for our Sins, and beg of our Lord his Pardon, and further information, what we must do.

Song 1. 2.  
John 20. 20.

I grant Pardon, said he, by word, and deed ; by word in the promise of forgiveness : by deed in the way I obtained it. Take the first from my Lips with a kiss, and the other, as it shall be revealed.

*Christ Crucified seen afar off.*

Now I saw in my Dream that he spake many good words unto them, whereby they were greatly gladdened. He also had them up to the top of the Gate and shewed them by what *deed* they were saved, and told them withal that that sight they would have again as they went along in the way, to their comfort.

*Talk between the Christians.*

So he left them a while in a Summer-Parlor below, where they entred into talk by themselves. And thus *Christiana* began, *O Lord ! How glad am I, that we are got in hither !*

*Mer.* So you well may ; but I, of all, have cause to leap for joy.

*Chris.* I thought, one time, as I stood at the Gate (because I had knocked and none did answer) that all our Labour had been lost : Specially when that ugly Cur made such a heavy barking at us.

*Mer.* But my worst Fears was after I saw that you was taken in to his favour, and that I was left behind : Now thought I, 'tis fulfilled which is Written, *Two* Mat. 24. 41. *Women shall be Grinding together ; the one shall be taken, and the other left.* I had much ado to forbear crying out Undone, undone.

And afraid I was to knock any more ; but when I looked up, to what was Written over the Gate, I took 1 Part, page 27. Courage. I also thought that I must either knock again or die. So I knocked ; but I cannot tell how, for my spirit now *struggled* betwixt life and death.

*Chris.* Can you not tell how you knocked ? I am Christiana thinks her Companion prays better than she. sure your knocks were so earnest, that the very sound of them made me start, I thought I never heard such knocking in all my Life. I thought you would a come in by violent hands, or a took the Kingdom by storm. Mat. 11. 12.

*Mer.* Alas, to be in my Case, who that so was, could but a done so ? You saw that the Door was shut upon me and that there was a most cruel Dog thereabout. Who, I say, that was so faint-hearted as I, that would not a knocked with all their might ? But pray, what said my Lord to my rudeness, was he not angry with me ?

*Chris.* When he heard your lumbring noise, he gave a Christ pleased with loud and restless prayer. wonderful Innocent smile. I believe what you did pleas'd him well enough. For he shewed no sign to the contrary, But I marvel in my heart why he keeps such a dog ; had

*If the Soul at first did know all it should meet with in its Journey to Heaven it would hardly ever set out.*

*I know that afore, I fear I should not have had heart enough to a ventured myself in this manner. But now we are in, we are in, and I am glad with all my heart.*

*Mer.* I will ask if you please next time he comes down, why he keeps such a filthy Cur in his yard. I hope he will not take it amiss.

*The Children are afraid of the dog.*

*Ay do, said the Children, and perswade him to hang him, for we are afraid he will bite us when we go hence.*

So at last he came down to them again, and *Mercy* fell to the Ground on her Face before him and worshipped, and said, Let my Lord accept of the Sacrifice of praise which I now offer unto him, with the calves of my Lips.

*So he said unto her, Peace be to thee, stand up.*

*Jer. 12. 1, 2.*

But she continued upon her Face and said, *Righteous art thou O Lord when I plead with thee, yet let me talk with thee of thy Judgments: Wherefore dost thou keep so cruel a Dog in thy Yard, at the sight of which such Women and Children as we, are ready to fly from thy Gate for fear?*

*Mercy exposes and laments about the dog.*

*Devil.*

He answered, and said; *That Dog* has another Owner, he also is kept close in another man's ground; only my Pilgrims hear his barking. He belongs to the Castle which you see there at a distance: but can come up to the Walls of this Place. He has frightened many an honest Pilgrim from worse to better, by the great voice of his roaring. Indeed he that owneth him, doth not keep him of any good will to me or mine; but with intent to keep the Pilgrims from coming to me, and that they may be afraid to knock at this Gate for entrance. Sometimes also he has broken out, and has *worried* some that I love; but I take all at present patiently, I also give my Pilgrims timely help: So they are not delivered up to his power to do to them what his *Doggish* nature

*1 Part, page 28.*

*A check to the carnal fear of the Pilgrims.*

would prompt him to. But what ! My purchased one, I tro, hadst thou known never so much beforehand, thou wouldst not have been afraid of a Dog.

*The Beggars that go from Door to Door, will, rather than they will lose a supposed Alms, run the hazard of the bawling, barking, and biting too of a Dog: And shall a Dog, a Dog in another Man's Yard: a Dog whose barking I turn to the Profit of Pilgrims, keep any from coming to me? I deliver them from the Lions, their Darling from the power of the Dog.*

*Mer.* Then said *Mercy*, *I confess my Ignorance: I spake what I understood not: I acknowledge thou doest all things well.*

*Christians when wise enough acquiesce in the wisdom of their Lord.*

*Chris.* Then *Christiana* began to talk of their Journey, and to enquire after the way. So he fed them, and washed their feet, and set them in the way of his Steps, according as he had dealt with her Husband before.

*1 Part, page 30.*

So I saw in my Dream, that they walkt on their way, and had the weather very comfortable to them.

Then *Christiana* began to sing, saying.

*Bless'd be the Day that I began,  
A Pilgrim for to be ;  
And blessed also be that man,  
That thereto moved me.*

*'Tis true, 'twas long ere I began  
To seek to live for ever :  
But now I run fast as I can,  
'Tis better late than never.*

*Our Tears to joy, our fears to Faith  
Are turned, as we see :  
Thus our beginning (as one saith,)  
Shews what our end will be.*

Now there was, on the other side of the Wall that

*The Devil's  
Garden.*

fenced in the way up which *Christiana* and her Companions were to go, a Garden ; and that Garden belonged to him whose was that *Barking Dog* of whom mention was made before. And some of the Fruit-Trees that grew in that Garden shot their Branches over the Wall, and being mellow, they that found them did gather them up and oft eat of them to their hurt. So *Christiana's Boys*, as Boys are apt to do, being pleas'd with the Trees, and with the Fruit that did hang thereon, did *Plash* them, and began to eat. Their Mother did also chide them for so doing, but still the Boys went on.

*The Children  
eat of the  
Enemy's  
Fruit.*

Well, said she, my Sons, you Transgress, for that Fruit is none of ours : but she did not know that they did belong to the Enemy ; I'll warrant you if she had, she would a been ready to die for fear. But that passed, and they went on their way. Now by that they were gone about two Bows-shot from the place that led them into the way : they espied two very *ill-favoured ones* coming down apace to meet them. With that *Christiana*, and *Mercy* her Friend, covered themselves with their Vails, and so kept on their Journey : The Children also went on before, so that at last they met together. Then they that came down to meet them, came just up to the Women, as if they would embrace them ; but *Christiana* said, Stand back, or go peaceably by as you should. Yet these two, as men that are deaf, regarded not *Christiana's* words ; but began to lay hands upon them ; at that *Christiana* waxing very wroth, spurned at them with her feet. *Mercy* also, as well as she could, did what she could to shift them. *Christiana* again, said to them, Stand back and be gone, for we have no Money to lose being Pilgrims as ye see, and such too as live upon the Charity of our Friends.

*Two ill-fa-  
voured ones.*

*They assault  
Christiana.*

*The Pilgrims  
struggle with  
them.*

*Ill-fav.* Then said one of the two of the Men, we make no assault upon you for Money, but are come out to tell you, that if you will but grant one small request which we shall ask, we will make Women of you for ever.

*Chris.* Now *Christiana* imagining what they should mean, made answer again, *We will neither hear nor regard, nor yield to what you shall ask, We are in haste, cannot stay, our Business is a Business of Life and Death.* So again she and her Companions made a fresh assay to go past them. But they letted them in their way.

*Ill-fav.* And they said, we intend no hurt to your lives, 'tis another thing we would have.

*Chris.* Ay, quoth *Christiana*, you would have us Body and Soul, for I know 'tis for that you are come; but we will die rather upon the spot, than suffer ourselves to be brought into such Snares as shall hazard our well-being hereafter. And with that they both *Shrieked* out, *She cries out.* and cried Murder, Murder; and so put themselves under those Laws that are provided for the Protection of Women. But the men still made their approach upon them, with design to prevail against them: They therefore cried out again.

Now they being, as I said, not far from the Gate in at which they came, their voice was heard from where they were, thither: Wherefore some of the House came out, and knowing that it was *Christiana's* Tongue, they made haste to her relief. But by that they were got within sight of them, the Women were in a very great scuffle, the Children also stood crying by. Then did he that came in for their relief, call out to the Ruffians saying, What is that thing that you do? Would you make my Lord's People to transgress? He also attempted to take them; but they did make their escape over the Wall into

Dent. 22. 23,  
26, 27.

'Tis good to  
cry out when  
we are as-  
saulted.

The Reliever  
comes.

The Ill-ones  
fly to the  
devil for  
relief.

the Garden of the Man, to whom the great Dog belonged, so the Dog became their Protector. This *Reliever* then came up to the Women, and asked them how they did. So they answered, we thank thy Prince, pretty well, only we have been somewhat affrighted, we thank thee also for that thou camest in to our help, for otherwise we had been overcome.

*The Reliever  
talks to the  
Women.*

*Reliever.* So after a few more words, this *Reliever* said as followeth: *I marvelled much when you were entertained at the Gate above, being ye knew that ye were but weak Women, that you petitioned not the Lord there for a Conductor: Then might you have avoided these Troubles, and Dangers: For he would have granted you one.*

*Mark this.*

*Chris.* Alas said *Christiana*, we were so taken with our present blessing, that Dangers to come were forgotten by us; beside, who could have thought that so near the King's Palace there should have lurked such naughty ones: Indeed it had been well for us had we asked our Lord for one; but since our Lord knew 'twould be for our profit, I wonder he sent not one along with us.

*We lose for  
want of ask-  
ing for.*

*Relie.* *It is not always necessary to grant things not asked for, lest by so doing they become of little esteem; but when the want of a thing is felt, it then comes, under, in the Eyes of him that feels it, that estimate, that properly is its due, and so consequently will be thereafter used. Had my Lord granted you a Conductor, you would not neither, so have bewailed that oversight of yours in not asking for one, as now you have occasion to do. So all things work for good, and tend to make you more wary.*

*Chris.* Shall we go back again to my Lord, and confess our folly and ask one?

*Relie.* *Your confession of your folly, I will present him with: To go back again, you need not. For in all*



*places where you shall come, you will find no want at all, for in every of my Lord's Lodgings which he has prepared for the reception of his Pilgrims, there is sufficient to furnish them against all attempts whatsoever. But as, I said, he will be inquired of by them to do it for them: Ezek. 36. 37. and 'tis a poor thing that is not worth asking for. When he had thus said he went back to his place, and the Pilgrims went on their way.*

*Mer.* Then said *Mercy*, what a sudden blank is here? *The mistake of Mercy.* I made account we had now been past all danger, and that we should never see sorrow more.

*Chris.* Thy *Innocency*, my Sister, said *Christiana* to *Mercy*, may excuse thee much; but as for me my fault is so much the greater, for that I saw this danger before I came out of the Doors, and yet did not provide for it where Provision might a been had. I am therefore much to be blamed. *Christiana's guilt.*

*Mer.* Then said *Mercy*, how knew you this before you came from home? pray open to me this Riddle.

*Chris.* Why, I will tell you. Before I set Foot out of Doors, one Night, as I lay in my Bed, I had a Dream about this. For methought I saw two men, as like these as ever the World they could look, stand at my *Bed's-feet*, plotting how they might prevent my Salvation. I will tell you their very words. They said, ('twas when I was in my Troubles,) *Christiana's Dream repeated.* *What shall we do with this Woman? For she cries out waking and sleeping for forgiveness, if she be suffered to go on as she begins, we shall lose her as we have lost her Husband.* This you know might a made me take heed, and have provided when Provision might a been had.

*Mer.* Well said *Mercy*, as by this neglect, we have an occasion ministred unto us, to behold our own imperfect- *Mercy makes good use of their neglect of duty.*

tions: So our Lord has taken occasion thereby, to make manifest the Riches of his Grace. For he, as we see, has followed us with unasked kindness, and has delivered us from their hands that were stronger than we, of his mere good pleasure.

Thus now when they had talked away a little more time, they drew nigh to an House which stood in the way, which House was built for the relief of Pilgrims, as you will find more fully related in the first part of these Records of the *Pilgrim's Progress*. So they drew on towards the House (the House of the Interpreter) and when they came to the Door they heard a great talk in the House, they then gave ear, and heard, as they thought, *Christiana* mentioned by name. For you must know that there went along, even before her, a talk of her and her Children's going on Pilgrimage. And this thing was the more pleasing to them, because they had heard that she was *Christian's Wife*; that Woman who was sometime ago, so unwilling to hear of going on Pilgrimage. Thus therefore they stood still and heard the good people within commending her, who they little thought stood at the Door. At last *Christiana* knocked as she had done at the Gate before. Now when she had knocked, there came to the Door a young Damsel, and opened the Door and looked, and behold two Women were there.

Dams. Then said the Damsel to them, *With whom would you speak in this place?*

Chris. *Christiana* answered, we understand that this is a Privileged place for those that are become Pilgrims, and we now at this Door are such: Wherefore we pray that we may be partakers of that for which we at this time are come; for the day, as thou seest, is very far spent, and we are loth to-night to go any further.

*1 Part, page 30.*

*Talk in the Interpreter's house about Christiana's going on pilgrimage.*

*She knocks at the door.*

*The door is opened to them by Innocent.*

*Dams.* Pray what may I call your name, that I may tell it to my Lord within?

*Chris.* My name is *Christiana*, I was the wife of that Pilgrim that some years ago did travel this way, and these be his four children. This Maiden also is my Companion, and is going on Pilgrimage too.

*Innocent.* Then ran *Innocent* in (for that was her name) and said to those within, Can you think who is at the Door! There is *Christiana* and her Children, and her Companion, all waiting for entertainment here. Then they leaped for Joy, and went and told their Master. So he came to the Door, and looking upon her, he said, *Art thou that Christiana, whom Christian, the Good-man, left behind him, when he betook himself to a Pilgrim's Life?*

*Joy in the House of Interpreter that Christiana is turned Pilgrim.*

*Chris.* I am that Woman that was so hard-hearted as to slight my Husband's Troubles, and that left him to go on in his Journey alone, and these are his four Children; but now I also am come, for I am convinced that no way is right but this.

*Inter.* *Then is fulfilled that which also is Written of the Man that said to his Son, go work to-day in my Vineyard, and he said to his Father, I will not; but afterwards repented and went.*

*Mat. 21. 29.*

*Chris.* Then said *Christiana*, So be it, *Amen*. God make it a true saying upon me, and grant that I may be found at the last of him in peace without spot and blameless.

*Inter.* *But why standest thou thus at the Door, come in thou Daughter of Abraham, we were talking of thee but now: For tidings have come to us before, how thou art become a Pilgrim. Come Children, come in; Come Maiden, come in; so he had them all in to the House.*

*Old Saints  
glad to see  
the young  
ones walk in  
God's ways.*

So when they were within, they were bidden sit down and rest them, the which when they had done, those that attended upon the Pilgrims in the House, came into the Room to see them. And one smiled, and another smiled, and they all smiled for Joy that *Christiana* was become a Pilgrim. They also looked upon the Boys, they stroaked them over the Faces with the Hand, in token of their kind reception of them; they also carried it lovingly to *Mercy*, and bid them all welcome into their Master's House.

*The Signi-  
ficant Rooms.  
1 Part, pages  
32-40*

After a while, because Supper was not ready, the *Interpreter* took them into his *Significant Rooms* and shewed them what *Christian*, *Christiana's* Husband had seen some time before. Here therefore they saw the *Man* in the *Cage*, the *Man* and his Dream, the man that cut his way through his Enemies, and the Picture of the biggest of them all: together with the rest of those things that were then so profitable to *Christian*.

*The man  
with the  
Muck-rake  
expounded.*

This done, and after these things had been somewhat digested by *Christiana* and her Company, the *Interpreter* takes them apart again: and has them first into a Room, where was a man that could look no way but downwards, with a Muck-rake in his hand. There stood also one over his head with a Celestial Crown in his Hand, and proffered to give him that Crown, for his Muck-rake; but the man did neither look up, nor regard; but raked to himself the Straws, the small Sticks, and Dust of the Floor.

Then said *Christiana*, *I perswade myself that I know somewhat the meaning of this: For this is a Figure of a Man of this World: Is it not, good Sir?*

*Inter.* Thou hast said the right, said he, and his Muck-rake doth shew his Carnal mind. And whereas

thou seest him rather give heed to rake up Straws and Sticks, and the dust of the Floor, than to what he says that calls to him from above with the Celestial Crown in his Hand; it is to show, That Heaven is but as a Fable to some, and that things here are counted the only things substantial. Now whereas it was also shewed thee, that the man could look no way but downwards: It is to let thee know that earthly things when they are with Power upon Men's minds, quite carry their hearts away from God.

Chris. *Then said Christiana, O! deliver me from this Muck-rake.*

*Christiana's prayer against the Muck-rake.*

*Inter.* That Prayer, said the *Interpreter*, has lain by till 'tis almost rusty: *Give me not Riches*, Is scarce the Prayer of one of ten thousand. Straws, and Sticks, and Dust, with most, are the great things now looked after.

*Prov. 30. 8.*

With that *Mercy* and *Christiana* wept, and said, It is alas! too true.

When the *Interpreter* had shewed them this, he has them into the very best Room in the House, (a very brave Room it was) so he bid them look round about, and see if they could find anything profitable there. Then they looked round and round: For there was nothing there to be seen but a very great *Spider* on the Wall: and that they overlookt.

*Mer.* *Then said Mercy, Sir, I see nothing; but Christiana held her peace.*

*Inter.* But, said the *Interpreter*, look again: she therefore lookt again and said, Here is not anything but an *ugly Spider*, who hangs by her Hands upon the Wall. Then said he, Is there but one *Spider* in all this spacious Room? Then the water stood in *Christiana's* Eyes, for she was a Woman quick of apprehension: and she said,

*Of the Spider.*

*Talk about  
the Spider.*

Yes, Lord, there is here more than one. Yea, and *Spiders* whose Venom is far more destructive than that which is in her. The *Interpreter* then looked pleasantly upon her, and said, Thou hast said the Truth. This made *Mercy* blush, and the Boys to cover their Faces: For they all began now to understand the Riddle.

Pro. 30. 28.

Then said the *Interpreter* again, *The Spider taketh hold with her hands as you see, and is in Kings' Palaces.* And wherefore is this recorded, but to show you, that how full of the Venom of Sin soever you be, yet you may by the hand of Faith lay hold of, and dwell in the best Room that belongs to the King's House above?

*The Interpre-  
tation.*

*Chris.* I thought, said *Christiana*, of something of this; but I could not imagine it all. I thought that we were like *Spiders*, and that we looked like ugly Creatures, in what fine Room soever we were: But that by this *Spider*, this venomous and ill-favoured Creature, we were to learn *how to act Faith*, came not into my mind. And yet she has taken hold with her hands, as I see, and dwells in the best Room in the House. God has made nothing in vain.

Then they seemed all to be glad; but the water stood in their Eyes: Yet they looked one upon another, and also bowed before the *Interpreter*.

*Of the Hen  
and Chickens.*

He had them then into another Room where was a Hen and Chickens, and bid them observe a while. So one of the Chickens went to the Trough to drink, and every time she drank she lift up her head and her eyes towards Heaven. See, said he, what this little Chick doth, and learn of her to acknowledge whence your Mercies come, by receiving them with looking up. Yet again, said he, observe and look: So they gave heed, and perceived that the Hen did walk in a fourfold Method

towards her Chickens. 1. She had a *common call*, and that she hath all day long. 2. She had a *special call*, and that she had but sometimes. 3. She had a *brooding note*, and 4. She had an *outcry*.

Now, said he, compare this *Hen* to your King, and these Chickens to his Obedient ones. For answerable Matt. 23. 37. to her, himself has his Methods, which he walketh in towards his People. By his common call, *he gives nothing*, by his special call, he always *has something to give*, he has also a brooding voice, *for them that are under his Wing*, and he has an outcry, to give *the Alarm when he seeth the Enemy come*. I chose, my Darlings, to lead you into the Room where such things are, because you are Women, and they are easy for you.

*Chris.* And Sir, said *Christiana*, pray let us see some more: So he had them into the Slaughter-house, where was a *Butcher* a killing of a Sheep: And behold the Of the Butcher and the Sheep. Sheep was quiet, and took her Death patiently. Then said the *Interpreter*: you must learn of this Sheep, to suffer: And to put up wrongs without murmurings and complaints. Behold how quietly she takes her Death, and without objecting she suffereth her Skin to be pulled over her Ears. Your King doth call you his Sheep.

After this, he led them into his Garden, where was Of the Garden. great variety of Flowers: and he said, do you see all these? So *Christiana* said, yes. Then said he again, Behold the Flowers are divers in *Stature*, in *Quality*, in *Colour*, and *Smell*, and *Virtue*, and some are better than some: Also where the Gardener has set them, there they stand, and quarrel not one with another.

Again, he had them into his Field, which he had sowed Of the Field. with Wheat, and Corn: but when they beheld the tops of all was cut off, only the Straw remained. He said

again, This Ground was Dunged, and Plowed, and sowed; but what shall we do with the Crop? Then said *Christiana*, burn some and make muck of the rest. Then said the *Interpreter* again, Fruit you see is that thing you look for, and for want of that you condemn it to the Fire, and to be trodden under foot of men: Beware that in this you condemn not yourselves.

*Of the  
Robin and  
the Spider.*

Then, as they were coming in from abroad, they espied a little *Robin* with a great *Spider* in his mouth. So the *Interpreter* said, look here. So they looked, and *Mercy* wondred; but *Christiana* said, what a disparagement is it to such a little pretty Bird as the *Robin-red-breast* is, he being also a Bird above many, that loveth to maintain a kind of Sociableness with Man? I had thought they had lived upon crumbs of Bread, or upon other such harmless matter. I like him worse than I did.

The *Interpreter* then replied, This *Robin* is an Emblem very apt to set forth some Professors by; for to sight they are as this *Robin*, pretty of Note, Colour, and Carriage, they seem also to have a very great Love for Professors that are sincere; and above all other to desire to sociate with, and to be in their Company, as if they could live upon the good Man's Crumbs. They pretend also that therefore it is, that they frequent the House of the Godly, and the appointments of the Lord: but when they are by themselves as the *Robin*, they can catch and gobble up *Spiders*, they can change their Diet, drink *Iniquity*, and swallow down *Sin* like Water.

*Pray, and  
you will get  
at that which  
yet lies un-  
revealed.*

So when they were come again into the House, because Supper as yet was not ready, *Christiana* again desired that the *Interpreter* would either show or tell of some other things that are Profitable.

Then the *Interpreter* began and said, *The fatter the*



*Sow is, the more she desires the Mire ; the fatter the Ox is, the more gamesomely he goes to the Slaughter ; and the more healthy the lusty man is, the more prone he is unto Evil.*

*There is a desire in Women, to go neat and fine, and it is a comely thing to be adorned with that, that in God's sight is of great price.*

*'Tis easier watching a night or two, than to sit up a whole year together : So 'tis easier for one to begin to profess well, than to hold out as he should to the end.*

*Every Ship-Master, when in a Storm, will willingly cast that overboard that is of the smallest value in the Vessel ; but who will throw the best out first ? none but he that feareth not God.*

*One leak will sink a Ship, and one Sinner will destroy a Sinner.*

*He that forgets his Friend, is ungrateful unto him ; but he that forgets his Saviour is unmerciful to himself.*

*He that lives in Sin, and looks for Happiness hereafter, is like him that soweth Cockle, and thinks to fill his Barn with Wheat or Barley.*

*If a man would live well, let him fetch his last day to him, and make it always his company-Keeper.*

*Whispering and change of thoughts, proves that Sin is in the World.*

*If the World, which God sets light by, is counted a thing of that worth with men : what is Heaven that God commendeth ?*

*If the Life that is attended with so many troubles, is so loth to be let go by us, What is the Life above ?*

*Everybody will cry up the goodness of Men ; but who is there that is, as he should, affected with the Goodness of God ?*

*We seldom sit down to Meat, but we eat, and leave ;  
So there is in Jesus Christ more Merit and Righteousness  
than the whole World has need of.*

When the *Interpreter* had done, he takes them out into his Garden again, and had them to a Tree whose *inside* was all Rotten, and gone, and yet it grew and had Leaves. Then said *Mercy*, what means this? This Tree, said he, whose *outside* is fair, and whose *inside* is Rotten ; it is to which many may be compared that are in the Garden of God : Who with their mouths speak high in behalf of God, but indeed will do nothing for him : whose Leaves are fair ; but their heart Good for nothing, but to be *Tinder* for the Devil's *Tinder-Box*.

*Of the Tree  
that is rotten  
at heart.*

Now Supper was ready, the Table spread, and all things set on the Board ; so they sate down and did eat when one had given thanks. And the *Interpreter* did usually entertain those that lodged with him, with Musick at Meals, so the Minstrels played. There was also one that did Sing. And a very fine voice he had.

*They are at  
Supper.*

His Song was this.

*The Lord is only my Support,  
And he that doth me feed :  
How can I then want anything,  
Whereof I stand in need ?*

When the Song and Musick was ended, the *Interpreter* asked *Christiana*, *What it was that at first did move her to betake herself to a Pilgrim's Life ?*

*Christiana* answered. *First*, the loss of my Husband came into my mind, at which I was heartily grieved : but all that was but natural Affection. Then after that, came the Troubles, and Pilgrimage of my Husband's into my mind, and also how like a Churl I had carried it to him as

*Talk at  
Supper.*

*A Repetition  
of Christiana's Ex-  
perience.*

to that. So guilt took hold of my mind, and would have drawn me into the *Pond*; but that opportunely I had a Dream of the well-being of my Husband, and a Letter sent me by the King of that Country where my Husband dwells, to come to him. The Dream and the Letter together so wrought upon my mind, that they forced me to this way.

*Inter.* But met you with no opposition afore you set out of Doors?

*Chris.* Yes, a Neighbour of mine, one Mrs. *Timorous*. (She was akin to him that would have perswaded my Husband to go back for fear of the Lions.) She all-to-be-fooled me; for, as she called it, my intended desperate adventure; she also urged what she could, to dishearten me to it, the hardship and Troubles that my Husband met with in the way; but all this I got over pretty well. But a Dream that I had, of two ill-lookt ones, that I thought did Plot how to make me miscarry in my Journey, that hath troubled me much: Yea, it still runs in my mind, and makes me afraid of every one that I meet, lest they should meet me to do me a mischief, and to turn me out of the way. Yea, I may tell my Lord, tho' I would not have everybody know it, that between this and the Gate by which we got into the way, we were both so sorely assaulted, that we were made to cry out Murder, and the two that made this assault upon us, were like the two that I saw in my Dream.

Then said the *Interpreter*, Thy beginning is good, thy latter end shall greatly increase. So he addressed himself to *Mercy*, and said unto her, *And what moved thee to* A question put to Mercy *come hither, sweetheart?*

*Mercy.* Then *Mercy* blushed and trembled, and for a while continued silent.

Interpreter. *Then said he, be not afraid, only believe, and speak thy mind.*

Mercy's  
answer.

*Mer.* So she began and said. Truly Sir, my want of Experience, is that that makes me covet to be in silence, and that also that fills me with fears of coming short at last. I cannot tell of Visions, and Dreams as my friend *Christiana* can; nor know I what it is to mourn for my refusing of the Counsel of those that were good Relations.

Interpreter. *What was it then, dear heart, that hath prevailed with thee to do as thou hast done?*

*Mer.* Why, when our friend here, was packing up to be gone from our Town, I and another went accidentally to see her. So we knocked at the Door and went in. When we were within, and seeing what she was doing, we asked what was her meaning. She said, she was sent for to go to her Husband, and then she up and told us, how she had seen him in a Dream, dwelling in a curious place among *Immortals* wearing a Crown, playing upon a Harp, eating and drinking at his Prince's Table, and singing Praises to him for bringing him thither, &c. Now methought, while she was telling these things unto us, my heart burned within me. And I said in my Heart, if this be true, I will leave my Father and my Mother, and the Land of my Nativity, and will, if I may, go along with *Christiana*.

So I asked her further of the truth of these things, and if she would let me go with her: For I saw now that there was no dwelling, but with the danger of ruin, any longer in our Town. But yet I came away with a heavy heart, not for that I was unwilling to come away; but for that so many of my Relations were left behind. And I am come with all the desire of my heart, and will go if I may with *Christiana* unto her Husband, and his King.

*Inter.* Thy setting out is good, for thou hast given credit to the truth. Thou art a *Ruth*, who did for the love that she bore to *Naomi* and to the Lord her God, leave Father and Mother, and the land of her Nativity to come out, and go with a People that she knew not heretofore, *The Lord recompense thy work, and a full reward be given thee of the Lord God of Israel, under whose Wings thou art come to trust.*

Ruth 2. 11,  
12.

Now Supper was ended, and Preparations were made for Bed, the Women were laid singly alone, and the Boys by themselves. Now when *Mercy* was in Bed, she could not sleep for joy, for that now her doubts of missing at last, were removed further from her than ever they were before. So she lay blessing and Praising God who had had such favour for her.

*They address themselves for bed.*

*Mercy's good night's rest.*

In the Morning they arose with the *Sun*, and prepared themselves for their departure: But the *Interpreter* would have them tarry a while, for, said he, you must orderly go from hence. Then said he to the Damsel that at first opened unto them, Take them and have them into the Garden to the *Bath*, and there wash them, and make them clean from the soil which they have gathered by travelling. Then *Innocent* the Damsel took them and had them into the Garden, and brought them to the *Bath*, so she told them that there they must wash and be clean, for so her Master would have the Women to do that called at his House as they were going on *Pilgrimage*. They then went in and washed, yea they and the Boys and all, and they came out of that *Bath* not only sweet, and clean, but also much enlivened and strengthened in their Joints: So when they came in, they looked fairer a deal, than when they went out to the washing.

*The Bath Sanctification.*

*They wash in it.*

When they were returned out of the Garden from the

*Bath*, the *Interpreter* took them and looked upon them and said unto them, *fair as the Moon*. Then he called for the *Seal* wherewith they used to be *Sealed* that were washed in his *Bath*. So the *Seal* was brought, and he set his *Mark* upon them, that they might be known in the *Places* whither they were yet to go: Now the seal was the contents and sum of the *Passover* which the Children of *Israel* did eat when they came out from the Land of *Egypt*: and the mark was set between their *Eyes*. This seal greatly added to their *Beauty*, for it was an *Ornament* to their *Faces*. It also added to their gravity and made their *Countenances* more like them of *Angels*.

They are sealed.

Ex. 13. 8-10.

Then said the *Interpreter* again to the *Damsel* that waited upon these *Women*, Go into the *Vestry* and fetch out *Garments* for these *People*: So she went and fetched out white *Raiment*, and laid it down before him; so he commanded them to put it on. *It was fine Linen, white and clean*. When the *Women* were thus adorned they seemed to be a *Terror* one to the other; For that they could not see that glory each one on herself, which they could see in each other. Now therefore they began to esteem each other better than themselves. For you are fairer than I am, said one, and you are more comely than I am, said another. The *Children* also stood amazed to see into what fashion they were brought.

They are clothed.

True humility.

The *Interpreter* then called for a *Man-servant* of his, one *Great-heart*, and bid him take *Sword*, and *Helmet*, and *Shield*, and take these my *Daughters*, said he, and conduct them to the *House* called *Beautiful*, at which place they will rest next. So he took his *Weapons*, and went before them, and the *Interpreter* said, *God speed*. Those also that belonged to the *Family* sent them away

with many a good wish. So they went on their way,  
and Sung,

*This place has been our second Stage,  
Here we have heard and seen  
Those good things that from Age to Age,  
To others hid have been.  
The Dunghill-raker, Spider, Hen,  
The Chicken too to me  
Hath taught a Lesson, let me then  
Conformed to it be.  
The Butcher, Garden and the Field,  
The Robin and his bait,  
Also the Rotten-tree doth yield  
Me Argument of Weight  
To move me for to watch and pray,  
To strive to be sincere,  
To take my Cross up day by day,  
And serve the Lord with fear.*

Now I saw in my Dream That they went on, and <sup>1 Part, page 41.</sup> *Great-heart* went before them, so they went and came to the place where *Christian's* Burthen fell off his Back, and tumbled into a Sepulchre. Here then they made a pause, and here also they blessed God. Now said *Christiana*, it comes to my mind what was said to us at the Gate, to wit, that we should have Pardon, by *Word* and *Deed*; by word, that is, by the promise; by *Deed*, to wit, in the way it was obtained. What the promise is, of that I know something: But what is it to have Pardon by deed, or in the way that it was obtained, Mr. *Great-heart*, I suppose you know; wherefore if you please let us hear you discourse thereof.

*Great-heart*. Pardon by the deed done, is Pardon obtained by some one, for another that hath need thereof: <sup>A comment upon what was said at the Gate, or a</sup> Not by the Person pardoned, but in the way, *saith*

*discourse of  
our being  
justified by  
Christ.*

*another*, in which I have obtained it. So then to speak to the question more large, the pardon that you and *Mercy* and these Boys have *attained*, was *obtained* by another, to wit, by him that let you in at the Gate: And he hath obtain'd it in this double way. He has performed Righteousness to cover you, and spilt blood to wash you in.

Chris. *But if he parts with his Righteousness to us: What will he have for himself?*

*Great-heart.* He has more Righteousness than you have need of, or than he needeth himself.

Chris. *Pray make that appear.*

*Great-heart.* With all my heart, but first I must premise that he of whom we are now about to speak, is one that has not his Fellow. He has two Natures in one Person, plain to be *distinguished*, *impossible* to be *divided*. Unto each of these Natures a Righteousness belongeth, and each Righteousness is essential to that Nature. So that one may as easily cause the Nature to be extinct, as to separate its Justice or Righteousness from it. Of *these* Righteousnesses therefore, we are not made partakers so as that they, or any of them, should be put upon us that we might be made just, and live thereby. Besides these there is a Righteousness which this Person has, as these two Natures are joined in one. And this is not the Righteousness of the *Godhead*, as distinguished from the *Manhood*; nor the Righteousness of the *Manhood*, as distinguished from the *Godhead*; but a Righteousness which standeth in the Union of both Natures: and may properly be called, the Righteousness that is essential to his being prepared of God to the capacity of the Mediatory Office which he was to be intrusted with. If he parts with his first Righteousness, he parts with his



*Godhead* ; if he parts with his second Righteousness, he parts with the purity of his *Manhood* ; if he parts with this third, he parts with that perfection that capacitates him to the office of Mediation. He has therefore another Righteousness which standeth in *performance*, or obedience to a revealed Will : And that is it that he puts upon Sinners, and that by which their Sins are covered. Wherefore he saith, *as by one man's disobedience many were made Sinners : So by the obedience of one shall many be made Righteous.* Rom. 5. 19.

Chris. *But are the other Righteousnesses of no use to us ?*

*Great-heart.* Yes, for though they are essential to his Natures and Office, and so cannot be communicated unto another, yet it is by Virtue of them that the Righteousness that justifies, is for that purpose efficacious. The *Righteousness* of his *Godhead* gives *Virtue* to his Obedience ; the *Righteousness* of his *Manhood* giveth capability to his obedience to justify, and the Righteousness that standeth in the Union of these two Natures to his Office, giveth Authority to that Righteousness to do the work for which it is ordained.

So then, here is a Righteousness that Christ, as God, has no need of, for he is God without it : here is a Righteousness that Christ, as Man, has no need of to make him so, for he is perfect Man without it. Again, here is a Righteousness that Christ as God-man has no need of, for he is perfectly so without it. Here then is a Righteousness that Christ, as God, as Man, as God-man has no need of, with Reference to himself, and therefore he can spare it, a justifying Righteousness, that he for himself wanteth not, and therefore he giveth it away. Hence 'tis called the *gift of Righteousness.* This Rom. 5. 17.

Righteousness, since Christ Jesus the Lord, has made himself under the Law, *must* be given away: For the Law doth not only bind him that is under it, *to do justly*, but to use Charity: Wherefore he *must*, he *ought* by the Law, if he hath two Coats, to give one to him that hath none. Now our Lord indeed hath two *Coats*, one for himself, and one to spare: Wherefore he freely bestows one upon those that have none. And thus *Christiana*, and *Mercy*, and the rest of you that are here, doth your Pardon come by *deed*, or by the work of another man? Your Lord Christ is he that has worked, and given away what he wrought for, to the next poor Beggar he meets.

But again, in order to Pardon by *deed*, there must something be paid to God as a price, as well as something prepared to cover us withal. Sin has delivered us up to the just Curse of a Righteous law: Now from this Curse we must be justified by way of Redemption, a price being paid for the harms we have done, and this is by the Blood of your Lord, Who came and stood in your place and stead, and died your Death for your Transgressions. Thus has he ransomed you from your Transgressions by Blood, and covered your polluted and deformed Souls with Righteousness: For the sake of which, God passeth by you, and will not hurt you, when he comes to Judge the World.

Chris. *This is brave. Now I see that there was something to be learnt by our being pardoned by word and deed. Good Mercy, let us labour to keep this in mind, and my Children do you remember it also. But, Sir, was not this it that made my good Christian's Burden fall from off his Shoulder, and that made him give three leaps for Joy?*

Great-heart. Yes, 'twas the belief of this, that cut

Rom. 4. 24.

Gal. 3. 13

Christiana  
affected with  
this way of  
Redemption

those Strings that could not be cut by other means, and 'twas to give him a proof of the Virtue of this, that he was suffered to carry his Burden to the Cross.

*How the Strings that bound Christian's burden to him were cut.*

Chris. *I thought so, for tho' my heart was lightful and joyous before, yet it is ten times more lightsome and joyous now. And I am perswaded by what I have felt, tho' I have felt but little as yet, that if the most burdened Man in the World was here, and did see and believe, as I now do, 'twould make his heart the more merry and blithe.*

Great-heart. There is not only comfort, and the ease of a Burden, brought to us, by the sight and Consideration of these ; but an endeared Affection begot in us by it : For who can, if he doth but once think that Pardon comes, not only by promise, but thus, but be affected with the way and means of his Redemption, and so with the man that hath wrought it for him ?

*How affection to Christ is begot in the soul.*

Chris. *True, methinks it makes my Heart bleed to think that he should bleed for me. Oh ! thou loving one, Oh ! thou Blessed one. Thou deservest to have me, thou hast bought me : Thou deservest to have me all, thou hast paid for me ten thousand times more than I am worth. No marvel that this made the Water stand in my Husband's Eyes, and that it made him trudge so nimbly on. I am perswaded he wished me with him ; but vile Wretch, that I was, I let him come all alone. O Mercy, that thy Father and Mother were here, yea, and Mrs. Timorous also. Nay I wish now with all my Heart, that here was Madam Wanton too. Surely, surely, their Hearts would be affected, nor could the fear of the one, nor the powerful Lusts of the other, prevail with them to go home again, and to refuse to become good Pilgrims.*

*1 Part, page 41.*

*Cause of admiration.*

Great-heart. You speak now in the warmth of your Affections, will it, think you, be always thus with you ?

Besides, this is not communicated to every one, nor to every one that did see your Jesus bleed. There was that stood by, and that saw the Blood run from his Heart to the Ground, and yet was so far off this, that instead of lamenting, they laughed at him, and instead of becoming his Disciples, did harden their Hearts against him. So that all that you have my Daughters, you have by a peculiar impression made by a Divine contemplating upon what I have spoken to you. Remember that 'twas told you, that the *Hen* by her common call, gives no meat to her *Chickens*. This you have therefore by a special Grace.

*To be affected with Christ and with what he has done is a thing special.*

*Simple, and Sloth and Presumption hanged, and why.*

Now I saw still in my Dream, that they went on until they were come to the place, that *Simple*, and *Sloth*, and *Presumption*, lay and slept in, when *Christian* went by on Pilgrimage. And behold they were hanged up in Irons a little way off on the other side.

*Mercy*. Then said *Mercy* to him that was their Guide, and Conductor, What are those three men? and for what are they hanged there?

*Great-heart*. These three men, were Men of very bad Qualities, they had no mind to be Pilgrims themselves, and whosoever they could they hindered; they were for *Sloth* and *Folly* themselves, and whoever they could perswade with, they made so too, and withal taught them to presume that they should do well at last. They were asleep when *Christian* went by, and now you go by they are hanged.<sup>1</sup>

*Mercy*. But could they perswade any to be of their Opinion?

<sup>1</sup> Behold here how the slothful are a sign Hung up, 'cause holy ways they did decline. See here too how the Child did play the man, And weak grow strong, when *Great-heart* leads the Van.

*Great-heart.* Yes, they turned several out of the way. There was *Slow-pace* that they perswaded to do as they. They also prevailed with one *Short-wind*, with one *No-heart*, with one *Linger-after-lust*, and with one *Sleepy-head*, and with a young Woman her name was *Dull*, to turn out of the way and become as they. Besides, they brought up an ill-report of your Lord, perswading others that he was a Task-master. They also brought up an evil report of the good Land, saying, 'twas not half so good as some pretend it was : They also began to vilify his Servants, and to count the very best of them meddling, troublesome busy-bodies : Further, they would call the Bread of God, *Husks* ; the *Comforts* of his Children, *Fancies*, the Travel and Labour of Pilgrims, things to no purpose.

*Their Crimes.*

*Who they prevailed upon to turn out of the way.*

*Chris. Nay, said Christiana, if they were such, they shall never be bewailed by me, they have but what they deserve, and I think it is well that they hang so near the Highway that others may see and take warning. But had it not been well if their Crimes had been engraven in some Plate of Iron or Brass, and left here, even where they did their Mischiefs, for a caution to other bad Men ?*

*Great-heart.* So it is, as you well may perceive if you will go a little to the Wall.

*Mercy.* No, no, let them hang and their Names Rot, and their Crimes live for ever against them ; I think it a high favour that they were hanged afore we came hither, who knows else what they might a done to such poor Women as we are ? Then she turned it into a Song, saying,

*Now then you three, hang there and be a Sign  
To all that shall against the Truth combine ;*

*And let him that comes after, fear this end,  
If unto Pilgrims he is not a Friend.*

*And thou my Soul of all such men beware,  
That unto Holiness Opposers are.*

1 Part, page  
45.

Thus they went on till they came at the foot of the Hill *Difficulty*. Where again their good Friend, Mr. *Great-heart*, took an occasion to tell them of what happened there when *Christian* himself went by. So he had them first to the Spring. *Lo*, saith he, *This is the Spring that Christian drank of*, before he went up this Hill, and then 'twas clear, and good; but now 'tis Dirty with the feet of some that are not desirous that Pilgrims here should quench their Thirst: Thereat *Mercy* said, *And why so envious tro?* But said their Guide, It will do, if taken up, and put into a Vessel that is sweet and good; for then the Dirt will sink to the bottom, and the Water come out by itself more clear. Thus therefore *Christiana* and her Companions were compelled to do. They took it up, and put it into an Earthen-pot and so let it stand till the Dirt was gone to the bottom, and then they drank thereof.

'Tis difficult  
getting of  
good Doctrine  
in erroneous  
Times.

Ezek. 34. 18.

By-paths tho'  
barred up  
will not keep  
all from  
going in  
them.

Next he shewed them the two *by-ways* that were at the foot of the Hill, where *Formality* and *Hypocrisy*, lost themselves. And, said he, these are dangerous Paths: Two were here cast away when *Christian* came by. And although, as you see, these ways are since stopt up with *Chains*, *Posts* and a *Ditch*: Yet there are that will chuse to adventure here, rather than take the pains to go up this Hill.

1 Part, page  
46.

Pro. 13. 15.

*Christiana*. *The Way of Transgressors is hard. 'Tis a wonder that they can get into those ways, without danger of breaking their Necks.*

*Great-heart*. They will venture, yea, if at any time any

of the King's Servants doth happen to see them, and doth call unto them, and tell them that *they* are in the wrong ways, and do bid them beware the danger; then they will railingly return them answer and say, *As for the Word that thou hast spoken unto us in the name of the King, we will not hearken unto thee; but we will certainly do whatsoever thing goeth out of our own Mouths, &c.* Jer. 44. 16, 17. Nay if you look a little farther, you shall see that these ways, are made cautionary enough, not only by these *Posts* and *Ditch* and *Chain*; but also by being hedged up. Yet they will choose to go there.

*Christiana. They are Idle, they love not to take Pains, up-hill-way is unpleasant to them. So it is fulfilled unto them as it is written, The way of the slothful man is a Hedge of Thorns. Yea, they will rather chuse to walk upon a Snare, than to go up this Hill, and the rest of this way to the City.* The reason why some do chuse to go in by-ways. Prov. 15. 19.

Then they set forward and began to go up the Hill, and up the Hill they went; but before they got to the top, *Christiana* began to *pant*, and said, I daresay this is a breathing Hill, no marvel if they that love their ease more than their Souls, chuse to themselves a smoother way. Then said *Mercy*, I must sit down, also the least of the Children began to cry. Come, come, said *Great-heart*, sit not down here, for a little above is the Prince's *Arbour*. Then took he the little Boy by the Hand, and led him up thereto. The Hill puts the Pilgrims to it. They sit in the Arbour.

When they were come to the *Arbour* they were very willing to sit down, for they were all in a pelting heat. 1 Part, page 46. Then said *Mercy*, *How sweet is rest to them that Labour!* Matt. 11. 28. And how good is the Prince of Pilgrims, to provide such resting places for them! Of *this Arbour* I have heard much; but I never saw it before. But here let us be-

ware of sleeping: For as I have heard, for that it cost poor *Christian* dear.

*The little Boys answer to the guide, and also to Mercy.*

Then said Mr. *Great-heart* to the little ones, Come my pretty *Boys*, how do you do? what think you now of going on Pilgrimage? Sir, said the least, I was almost beat out of heart; but I thank you for lending me a hand at my need. And I remember now what my Mother has told me, namely, That the way to Heaven is as up a Ladder, and the way to Hell is as down a Hill. But I had rather go up the Ladder to Life, than down the Hill to Death.

*Which is hardest—up-hill or down-hill?*

Then said *Mercy*, But the Proverb is, *To go down the Hill is easy*: But *James* said (for that was his Name) The day is coming when in my Opinion, *going down Hill will be the hardest of all*. 'Tis a Good Boy, said his Master, thou hast given her a right answer. Then *Mercy* smiled, but the little Boy did blush.

*They refresh themselves.*

*Chris*. Come, said *Christiana*, will you eat a bit, a little to sweeten your Mouths, while you sit here to rest your Legs? For I have here a piece of Pomgranate which Mr. *Interpreter* put in my Hand, just when I came out of his Doors; he gave me also a piece of an Honeycomb, and a little Bottle of Spirits. I thought he gave you something, said *Mercy*, because he called you a to-side. Yes, so he did, said the other. But *Mercy*, it shall still be as I said it should, when at first we came from home: Thou shalt be a sharer in all the good that I have, because thou so willingly didst become my Companion: Then she gave to them, and they did eat, both *Mercy*, and the Boys. And said *Christiana* to Mr. *Great-heart*, Sir, will you do as we? But he answered, You are going on Pilgrimage, and presently I shall return; much good may what you have, do to you. At home I eat the same



every day. Now when they had eaten and drank, and had chatted a little longer, their guide said to them, The day wears away, if you think good, let us prepare to be going. So they got up to go, and the little Boys went before; but *Christiana* forgot to take her Bottle of Spirits with her, so she sent her little Boy back to fetch it. Then said *Mercy*, I think this is a *losing* place. Here *Christian* lost his *Roll*, and here *Christiana* left her Bottle behind her: Sir what is the cause of this? so their guide made answer and said, The cause is *sleep*, or *forgetfulness*: some *sleep*, when they should keep *awake*: and some *forget*, when they should *remember*; and this is the very cause, why often at the resting places, some Pilgrims in some things come off losers. Pilgrims should watch and remember what they have already received under their greatest enjoyments: But for want of doing so, oft-times their rejoicing ends in Tears, and their Sunshine in a Cloud: Witness the story of *Christian* at this place.

*Christiana  
forgets her  
bottle of  
spirits.*

*Mark this.*

*1 Part, pages  
46-49.*

When they were come to the place where *Mistrust* and *Timorous* met *Christian* to persuade him to go back for fear of the Lions, they perceived as it were a Stage, and before it towards the Road, a broad plate with a Copy of Verses written thereon, and underneath, the reason of raising up of that Stage in that place, rendered. The Verses were these.

*Let him that sees this Stage take heed  
Unto his Heart and Tongue:  
Lest if he do not, here he speed  
As some have long ago.*

The words underneath the Verses were, *This Stage was built to punish such upon, who through Timorousness*

or Mistrust, shall be afraid to go further on Pilgrimage. Also on this Stage both Mistrust and Timorous were burned through the Tongue with an hot Iron, for endeavouring to hinder Christian in his Journey.

Then said *Mercy*. This is much like to the saying of the beloved, *What shall be given unto thee? or what shall be done unto thee thou false Tongue? sharp Arrows of the mighty, with Coals of Juniper.*

Psal. 120. 3,  
4.

*An Emblem of those that go on bravely, when there is no danger; but shrink when troubles come.*

So they went on, till they came within sight of the Lions. Now Mr. *Great-heart* was a strong man, so he was not afraid of a Lion: But yet when they were come up to the place where the Lions were, the Boys that went before, were glad to cringe behind, for they were afraid of the Lions, so they stept back and went behind. At this their guide smiled, and said, How now my Boys, do you love to go before when no danger doth approach, and love to come behind so soon as the Lions appear?

*Of Grim the Giant, and of his backing the Lions.*

Now as they went up, Mr. *Great-heart* drew his Sword with intent to make a way for the Pilgrims in spite of the Lions. Then there appeared one, that it seems, had taken upon him to back the Lions. And he said to the Pilgrims' guide, What is the cause of your coming hither? Now the name of that man was *Grim*, or *Bloody-man*, because of his slaying of Pilgrims, and he was of the race of the *Giants*.

*Great-heart*. Then said the *Pilgrims'* guide, these Women and Children, are going on Pilgrimage, and this is the way they must go, and go it they shall in spite of thee and the Lions.

*Grim*. This is not their way, neither shall they go therein. I am come forth to withstand them, and to that end will back the Lions.

Now to say truth, by reason of the fierceness of the

Lions, and of the *Grim*-Carriage of him that did back them, this way had of late lain much unoccupied, and was almost all grown over with Grass.

*Christiana*. Then said *Christiana*, tho' the Highways have been unoccupied heretofore, and tho' the Travellers have been made in time past, to walk through by-paths, it must not be so now I am risen, *Now I am Risen a* Judges 5. 6, 7.  
*Mother in Israel*.

*Grim*. Then he swore *by the Lions*, but it should ; and therefore bid them turn aside, for they should not have passage there.

*Great-heart*. But their guide made first his Approach unto *Grim*, and laid so heavily at him with his Sword, that he forced him to a retreat.

*Grim*. Then said he (that attempted to back the Lions) will you slay me upon mine own Ground ?

*Great-heart*. 'Tis the King's Highway that we are in, and in his way it is that thou hast placed thy Lions ; but these Women and these Children, tho' weak, shall hold on their way in spite of thy Lions. And with that he gave him again, a downright blow, and brought him upon his Knees. With this blow he also broke his Helmet, and with the next he cut off an Arm. Then did the *Giant* roar so hideously, that his Voice frightened the Women, and yet they were glad to see him lie sprawling upon the Ground. Now the Lions were chained, and so of themselves could do nothing. Wherefore when old *Grim* that intended to back them was dead, Mr. *Great-heart* said to the Pilgrims, Come now and follow me, and no hurt shall happen to you from the Lions. They therefore went on ; but the Women trembled as they passed by them, the Boys also looked as if they would die ; but they all got by without further hurt.

*A fight be-  
twixt Grim  
and Great-  
heart.*

*The Victory.*

*They pass by  
the Lions.*

*They come to  
the Porter's  
Lodge.*

Now then they were within Sight of the *Porter's* Lodge, and they soon came up unto it; but they made the more haste after this to go thither, because 'tis dangerous travelling there in the Night. So when they were come to the Gate, the guide knocked, and the Porter cried, *who is there*; but as soon as the Guide had said, *it is I*, he knew his Voice and came down. (For the Guide had oft before that, come thither as a Conductor of Pilgrims) when he was come down, he opened the Gate, and seeing the Guide standing just before it (for he saw not the Women, for they were behind him) he said unto him, How now, Mr. *Great-heart*, what is your business here so late to-night? I have brought, said he, some Pilgrims hither, where by my Lord's Commandment they must lodge. I had been here some time ago, had I not been opposed by the Giant that did use to back the Lions. But I after a long and tedious combat with him, have cut him off, and have brought the Pilgrims hither in safety.

*Great-heart  
attempts to go  
back.*

*The Pilgrims  
implore his  
company  
still.*

Porter. *Will you not go in, and stay till Morning?*

*Great-heart.* No, I will return to my Lord to-night.

*Christiana.* Oh Sir, I know not how to be willing you should leave us in our Pilgrimage, you have been so faithful, and so loving to us, you have fought so stoutly for us, you have been so hearty in counselling of us, that I shall never forget your favour towards us.

*Mercy.* Then said *Mercy*, O that we might have thy Company to our Journey's end! How can such poor Women as we, hold out in a way so full of Troubles as this way is, without a Friend, and Defender?

*James.* Then said *James*, the youngest of the Boys, Pray Sir be perswaded to go with us and help us, because we are so weak, and the way so dangerous as it is.

*Great-heart.* I am at my Lord's Commandment. If he shall allot me to be your Guide quite through, I will willingly wait upon you; but here you failed at first; for when he bid me come thus far with you, then you should have begged me of him to have gone quite through with you, and he would have granted your request. However, at present I must withdraw, and so good *Christiana, Mercy,* and my brave Children, Adieu.

Then the Porter, Mr. *Watchful*, asked *Christiana* of her Country, and of her Kindred, and she said, *I came from the City of Destruction, I am a Widow Woman, and my Husband is dead, his Name was Christian the Pilgrim.* How, said the Porter, was he your Husband? Yes, said she, and these are his Children: and this, pointing to *Mercy*, is one of my Towns-women. Then the Porter rang his Bell, as at such times he is wont, and there came to the Door one of the Damsels, whose Name was *Humble-mind*. And to her the Porter said, Go tell it within that *Christiana* the Wife of *Christian* and her Children are come hither on Pilgrimage. She went in therefore and told it. But Oh what a Noise for gladness was there within, when the Damsel did but drop that word out of her Mouth?

*Help lost for want of asking for.*

*1 Part, page 50. Christiana makes herself known to the Porter, he tells it to a damsel.*

*Joy at the noise of the Pilgrims' coming.*

So they came with haste to the Porter, for *Christiana* stood still at the Door; then some of the most grave, said unto her, *Come in Christiana, come in thou Wife of that Good Man, come in thou Blessed Woman, come in with all that are with thee.* So she went in, and they followed her that were her Children, and her Companions. Now when they were gone in, they were had into a very large Room, where they were bidden to sit down: So they sat down, and the chief of the House was called to

Christians' love is kindled at the sight of one another.

see and welcome the Guests. Then they came in, and, understanding who they were, did salute each other with a kiss, and said, Welcome ye Vessels of the Grace of God, welcome to us your Friends.

Exo. 12. 38.

Joh. 1. 29.

1 Part, page 58.

Now because it was somewhat late, and because the Pilgrims were weary with their Journey, and also made faint with the sight of the Fight, and of the terrible Lions: Therefore they desired as soon as might be, to prepare to go to Rest. Nay, said those of the Family, refresh yourselves first with a morsel of Meat: For they had prepared for them a Lamb, with the accustomed Sauce belonging thereto. For the Porter had heard before of their coming, and had told it to them within. So when they had Supped, and ended their Prayer with a Psalm, they desired they might go to rest. But let us, said *Christiana*, if we may be so bold as to chuse, be in that Chamber that was my Husband's, when he was here. So they had them up thither, and they lay all in a Room. When they were at Rest, *Christiana* and *Mercy* entred into discourse about things that were convenient.

Christ's Bosom is for all Pilgrims.

*Chris.* *Little did I think once, that when my Husband went on Pilgrimage I should ever a followed.*

*Mercy.* And you as little thought of lying in his Bed, and in his Chamber to Rest, as you do now.

*Chris.* *And much less did I ever think of seeing his Face with Comfort, and of worshipping the Lord the King with him, and yet now I believe I shall.*

*Mercy.* Hark, don't you hear a Noise?

*Christiana.* Yes, 'tis as I believe a Noise of Musick, for Joy that we are here.

Musick.

*Mer.* Wonderful! Musick in the House, Musick in the Heart, and Musick also in Heaven, for joy that we are here.

Thus they talked a while, and then betook themselves to sleep; so in the Morning, when they were awake, *Christiana* said to *Mercy*.

*Chris.* *What was the matter that you did laugh in your sleep to-night? I suppose you were in a Dream?* *Mercy did laugh in her sleep.*

*Mercy.* So I was, and a sweet Dream it was; but are you sure I laughed?

*Christiana.* *Yes, you laughed heartily; but prithee Mercy tell me thy Dream?*

*Mercy.* I was a dreamed that I sat all alone in a solitary place, and was bemoaning of the hardness of my Heart. Now I had not sat there long, but methought many were gathered about me to see me, and to hear what it was that I said. So they hearkened, and I went on bemoaning the hardness of my Heart. At this, some of them laughed at me, some called me Fool, and some began to thrust me about. With that, methought I looked up, and saw one coming with Wings towards me. So he came directly to me, and said *Mercy*, what aileth thee? Now when he had heard me make my complaint; he said, *Peace be to thee!* he also wiped mine Eyes with his Handkerchief, and clad me in *Silver and Gold*; he put a Chain about my Neck, and Earrings in mine Ears, and a beautiful Crown upon my Head. Then he took me by the Hand, and said *Mercy*, come after me. So he went up, and I followed, till we came at a Golden Gate. Then he knocked, and when they within had opened, the man went in and I followed him up to a Throne, upon which one sat, and he said to me, *welcome Daughter.* The place looked bright, and twinkling like the Stars, or rather like the *Sun*, and I thought that I saw your Husband there, so I awoke from my Dream. But did I laugh? *Mercy's Dream.* *What her Dream was.* *Ezek. 16. 8, 9, 10, 11.*

Job 33. 14,  
15.

Christiana. *Laugh! Ay, and well you might to see yourself so well. For you must give me leave to tell you, that I believe it was a good Dream, and that as you have begun to find the first part true, so you shall find the second at last.* God speaks once, yea twice, yet **Man** perceiveth it not, in a Dream, in a Vision of the Night, when deep Sleep falleth upon men, in slumbring upon the Bed. *We need not, when a-bed, lie awake to talk with God; he can visit us while we sleep, and cause us then to hear his Voice. Our Heart oft-times wakes when we sleep, and God can speak to that, either by Words, by Proverbs, by Signs, and Similitudes, as well as if one was awake.*

Mercy glad  
of her  
Dream

*Mercy.* Well I am glad of my Dream, for I hope ere long to see it fulfilled, to the making of me laugh again.

Christiana. *I think it is now high time to rise, and to know what we must do?*

*Mercy.* Pray, if they invite us to stay a while, let us willingly accept of the proffer. I am the willinger to stay a while here, to grow better acquainted with these Maids; methinks *Prudence, Piety* and *Charity*, have very comely and sober Countenances.

Chris. *We shall see what they will do.* So when they were up and ready, they came down. And they asked one another of their rest, and if it was comfortable, or not?

Mer. *Very good, said Mercy, it was one of the best night's Lodging that ever I had in my Life.*

They stay  
here some  
time.

Then said *Prudence*, and *Piety*, if you will be perswaded to stay here a while, you shall have what the House will afford.

*Charity.* *Ay, and that with a very good will, said Charity.* So they consented, and stayed there about a



Month or above : And became very Profitable one to another. And because *Prudence* would see how *Christiana* had brought up her Children, she asked leave of her to Catechise them : So she gave her free consent. Then she began at the youngest whose Name was *James*.

*Prudence desires to Catechise Christiana's children.*

*Pru.* And she said, Come *James*, canst thou tell who made thee ?

*James Catechised.*

*Jam.* God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Ghost.

*Pru.* Good Boy. And canst thou tell who saves thee ?

*Jam.* God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Ghost.

*Pru.* Good Boy still. But how doth God the Father save thee ?

*Jam.* By his Grace.

*Pru.* How doth God the Son save thee ?

*Jam.* By his Righteousness, Death, and Blood, and Life.

*Pru.* And how doth God the Holy Ghost save thee ?

*Jam.* By his Illumination, by his Renovation, and by his Preservation.

Then said *Prudence* to *Christiana*, You are to be commended for thus bringing up your Children. I suppose I need not ask the rest these Questions, since the youngest of them can answer them so well. I will therefore now apply myself to the Youngest next.

*Prudence.* Then she said, Come *Joseph*, (for his Name was *Joseph*) will you let me Catechise you ?

*Joseph Catechised.*

*Joseph.* With all my Heart.

*Pru.* What is Man ?

*Joseph.* A Reasonable Creature, so made by God, as my Brother said.

*Pru.* What is supposed by this Word, saved ?

*Joseph.* That man by Sin has brought himself into a state of Captivity and Misery.

*Pru.* *What is supposed by his being saved by the Trinity?*

*Joseph.* That Sin is so great and mighty a Tyrant, that none can pull us out of its clutches but God, and that God is so good and loving to man, as to pull him indeed out of this Miserable State.

*Pru.* *What is God's design in saving of poor Men?*

*Joseph.* The glorifying of his Name, of his Grace, and Justice, &c. And the everlasting Happiness of his Creature.

*Pru.* *Who are they that must be saved?*

*Joseph.* Those that accept of his Salvation.

Good Boy *Joseph*, thy Mother has taught thee well, and thou hast hearkened to what she has said unto thee.

Then said *Prudence* to *Samuel*, who was the eldest but one,

*Prudence.* Come *Samuel*, are you willing that I should catechise you also.

*Sam.* Yes, forsooth, if you please.

*Pru.* *What is Heaven?*

*Sam.* A Place and State most blessed, because God dwelleth there.

*Pru.* *What is Hell?*

*Sam.* A Place and State most woful, because it is the dwelling place of Sin, the Devil, and Death.

*Prudence.* *Why wouldest thou go to Heaven?*

*Sam.* That I may see God, and serve him without weariness; that I may see Christ, and love him everlastingly; that I may have that fulness of the Holy Spirit in me, that I can by no means here enjoy.

Pru. *A very good Boy also, and one that has learned well.*

Then she addressed herself to the eldest, whose Name was *Matthew*, and she said to him, Come *Matthew*, shall I also Catechise you ?

Mat. *With a very good Will.*

Matthew  
Catechised.

Pru. *I ask then if there was ever anything that had a being, antecedent to, or before God.*

Mat. No, for God is Eternal, nor is there anything excepting himself, that had a being until the beginning of the first day. *For in six days the Lord made Heaven and Earth, the Sea and all that in them is.*

Pru. *What do you think of the Bible ?*

Mat. It is the Holy Word of God.

Pru. *Is there nothing written therein, but what you understand ?*

Mat. Yes, a great deal.

Pru. *What do you do when you meet with such places therein, that you do not understand ?*

Mat. I think God is wiser than I. I pray also that he will please to let me know all therein that he knows will be for my good.

Pru. *How believe you as touching the Resurrection of the Dead ?*

Mat. I believe they shall rise, the same that was buried: the same in *Nature*, tho' not in *Corruption*. And I believe this upon a double account. First, because God has promised it. Secondly, because he is able to perform it.

Then said *Prudence* to the Boys, You must still hearken to your Mother, for she can learn you more. You must also diligently give ear to what good talk you shall hear from others, for for your sakes do they speak

Prudence's  
conclusion  
upon the  
Catechising  
of the Boys.

good things. Observe also and that with carefulness, what the Heavens and the Earth do teach you; but especially be much in the Meditation of that Book that was the cause of your Father's becoming a Pilgrim. I for my part, my Children, will teach you what I can while you are here, and shall be glad if you will ask me Questions that tend to godly edifying.

*Mercy has a sweetheart.*

Now by that these Pilgrims had been at this place a week, *Mercy* had a Visitor that pretended some good Will unto her, and his name was *Mr. Brisk*; A man of some breeding, and that pretended to Religion; but a man that stuck very close to the World. So he came once or twice or more to *Mercy*, and offered love unto her. Now *Mercy* was of a fair Countenance, and therefore the more alluring.

*Mercy's temper.*

Her mind also was, to be always busying of herself in doing, for when she had nothing to do for herself, she would be making of Hose and Garments for others, and would bestow them upon them that had need. And *Mr. Brisk* not knowing where or how she disposed of what she made, seemed to be greatly taken, for that he found her never Idle. I will warrant her a good Housewife, quoth he to himself.

*Mercy enquires of the Maids concerning Mr. Brisk.*

*Mercy* then revealed the business to the Maidens that were of the House, and enquired of them concerning him: for they did know him better than she. So they told her that he was a very busy Young Man, and one that pretended to Religion; but was as they feared, a stranger to the Power of that which was good.

*Nay then, said Mercy, I will look no more on him, for I purpose never to have a clog to my Soul.*

*Prudence* then replied, That there needed no great matter of discouragement to be given to him, her con-

tinuing so as she had begun to do for the Poor, would quickly cool his Courage.

So the next time he comes, he finds her at her old work, a making of things for the Poor. Then said he, What, always at it? Yes, said she, either for myself, or for others. And what canst thou *earn* a day, quoth he? I do these things, said she, *That I may be Rich in good Works, laying up in store a good Foundation against the time to come, that I may lay hold on Eternal Life*: Why prithee what dost thou with them? said he; Cloath the naked, said she. With that his Countenance fell. So he forbore to come at her again. And when he was asked the reason why, he said, *That Mercy was a pretty Lass; but troubled with ill Conditions.*

*Talk betwixt Mercy and Mr. Brisk.*

1 Tim. 6. 17, 18, 19.

*He forsakes her, and why.*

When he had left her, *Prudence* said, Did I not tell thee that *Mr. Brisk* would soon forsake thee? yea, he will raise up an ill report of thee; For notwithstanding his pretence to Religion, and his seeming love to *Mercy*, yet *Mercy* and he are of tempers so different, that I believe they will never come together.

*Mercy in the Practice of Mercy rejected; while Mercy in the Name of Mercy is liked.*

*Mercy. I might a had Husbands afore now, tho' I spake not of it to any; but they were such as did not like my Conditions, tho' never did any of them find fault with my Person: So they and I could not agree.*

*Prudence. Mercy* in our days is little set by, any further than as to its Name: the Practice, which is set forth by thy Conditions, there are but few that can abide.

*Mercy. Well, said Mercy, if nobody will have me, I will die a Maid, or my Conditions shall be to me as a Husband. For I cannot change my Nature, and to have one that lies cross to me in this, that I purpose never to admit of, as long as I live. I had a Sister named Bountiful, that was married to one of these Churls; but*

*Mercy's resolution.*  
*How Mercy's sister was*

served by her  
Husband.

he and she could never agree ; but because my Sister was resolved to do as she had begun, that is, to shew Kindness to the Poor, therefore her Husband first cried her down at the Cross and then turned her out of his Doors.

*Pru.* And yet he was a Professor, I warrant you ?

*Mer.* Yes, such a one as he was, and of such as he, the World is now full ; but I am for none of them all.

Matthew  
falls sick.

Now *Matthew* the eldest Son of *Christiana*, fell Sick, and his Sickness was sore upon him, for he was much pained in his Bowels, so that he was with it, at times, pulled as 'twere both ends together. There dwelt also not far from thence, one *Mr. Skill*, an antient and well approved Physician. So *Christiana* desired it, and they sent for him, and he came. When he was entred the Room, and had a little observed the Boy, he concluded that he was sick of the Gripes. Then he said to his Mother, *What diet has Matthew of late fed upon ?* Diet said *Christiana*, nothing but that which is wholesome. The Physician answered, *This Boy has been tampering with something that lies in his Maw undigested and that will not away without means.* And I tell you he must be purged or else he will die.

Gripes of  
Conscience.

The  
Physician's  
Judgment.

Samuel puts  
his Mother in  
mind of the  
fruit his  
Brother did  
eat.

*Samuel.* Then said *Samuel*, *Mother, Mother, what was that which my Brother did gather up and eat, so soon as we were come from the Gate, that is at the head of this way ?* You know that there was an Orchard on the left hand, on the other side of the Wall, and some of the Trees hung over the Wall, and my Brother did plash and did eat.

*Christiana.* True my Child, said *Christiana*, he did take thereof and did eat ; naughty Boy as he was, I did chide him, and yet he would eat thereof.

*Skill.* I knew he had eaten something that was not

*wholesome Food. And that Food, to wit, that Fruit, is even the most hurtful of all. It is the Fruit of Beelzebub's Orchard. I do marvel that none did warn you of it; many have died thereof.*

*Christiana.* Then *Christiana* began to cry, and she said, O naughty Boy, and O careless Mother what shall I do for my Son?

*Skill.* *Come, do not be too much dejected; the Boy may do well again; but he must purge and vomit.*

*Christiana.* Pray Sir try the utmost of your Skill with him whatever it costs.

*Skill.* *Nay, I hope I shall be reasonable:* So he made him a Purge; but it was too weak. 'Twas said, it was made of the Blood of a Goat, the Ashes of an Heifer, and with some of the Juice of Hyssop, &c. When Mr. *Skill* had seen that that Purge was too weak, he made him one to the Purpose, 'Twas made *Ex Carne & Sanguine Christi.* (You know Physicians give strange Medicines to their Patients) and it was made up into Pills with a Promise or two, and a proportionable quantity of Salt. Now he was to take them three at a time fasting in half a quarter of a Pint of the Tears of Repentance. When this potion was prepared, and brought to the Boy, he was loth to take it, tho' torn with the Gripes, as if he should be pulled in pieces. *Come, come, said the Physician, you must take it.* It goes against my Stomach, said the Boy. *I must have you take it, said his Mother.* I shall Vomit it up again, said the Boy. Pray Sir, said *Christiana* to Mr. *Skill*, how does it taste? It has no ill taste, said the Doctor, and with that she touched one of the pills with the tip of her Tongue. Oh *Matthew*, said she, this potion is sweeter than Honey. If thou lovest thy Mother, if thou

Heb. 10. 1, 2,  
3, 4.  
*Potion prepared.*

John 6. 54,  
55, 56, 57.  
*The Lattine  
I borrow.*

Mark 9. 49.

Heb. 9. 14.

*The boy loth  
to take the  
Physick.*

Zech. 12. 10.

*The Mother  
tastes it and  
perswades  
him.*

lovest thy Brothers, if thou lovest *Mercy*, if thou lovest thy Life, take it. So with much ado, after a short Prayer for the blessing of God upon it, he took it; and it wrought kindly with him. It caused him to purge, it caused him to sleep, and rest quietly, it put him into a fine heat and breathing sweat, and did quite rid him of his Gripes.

*A word of  
God in the  
hand of his  
Faith.*

So in little time he got up, and walked about with a Staff, and would go from Room to Room, and talk with *Prudence*, *Piety*, and *Charity* of his Distemper, and how he was healed.

So when the Boy was healed, *Christiana* asked Mr. *Skill*, saying, Sir, what will content you for your pains and care to and of my Child? And he said, you must pay the *Master of the College* of Physicians, according to rules made in that case, and provided.

Heb. 13. 11,  
12, 13, 14, 15.

*Chris.* But Sir, said she, what is this Pill good for else?

*This Pill an  
Universal  
Remedy.*

*Skill.* It is an universal Pill, 'tis good against all the Diseases that Pilgrims are incident to, and when it is well prepared it will keep good, *time* out of *mind*.

*Christiana.* Pray Sir, make me up twelve boxes of them: For if I can get these, I will never take other Physick.

*Skill.* These Pills are good to prevent Diseases, as well as to *cure* when one is Sick. Yea, I dare say it, and stand to it, that if a Man will but use this Physick as he should, *it will make him live for ever*. But, good

Joh. 6. 50.

*In a Glass of  
the Tears of  
Repentance.*

*Christiana*, thou must give these Pills, *no other way* but as I have prescribed: For if you do, they will do no good. So he gave unto *Christiana* Physick for herself, and her Boys, and for *Mercy*: and bid *Matthew* take heed how he eat any more *Green Plums*, and kissed them and went his way.



It was told you before that *Prudence* bid the Boys, that if at any time they would, they should ask her some Questions, that might be profitable, and she would say something to them.

*Mat.* Then *Matthew* who had been sick, asked her, *Why for the most part Physick should be bitter to our Palates?* *Of Physick.*

*Pru.* To shew how unwelcome the word of God, and the Effects thereof are to a Carnal Heart. *Of the Effects of Physick.*

*Matthew.* *Why does Physick, if it does good, purge, and cause that we vomit?*

*Prudence.* To shew that the Word when it works effectually, cleanseth the Heart and Mind. For look what the one doth to the Body, the other doth to the Soul.

*Matthew.* *What should we learn by seeing the Flame of our Fire go upwards? and by seeing the Beams, and sweet Influences of the Sun strike downwards?* *Of Fire and of the Sun.*

*Prudence.* By the going up of the Fire, we are taught to ascend to Heaven, by fervent and hot desires. And by the Sun his sending his Heat, Beams, and sweet Influences downwards, we are taught, that the Saviour of the World, tho' high, reaches down with his Grace and Love to us below.

*Matthew.* *Where have the Clouds their Water?* *Of the Clouds.*

*Pru.* Out of the Sea.

*Matthew.* *What may we learn from that?*

*Pru.* That Ministers should fetch their Doctrine from God.

*Mat.* *Why do they empty themselves upon the Earth?*

*Pru.* To shew that Ministers should give out what they know of God to the World.

*Mat.* *Why is the Rainbow caused by the Sun?*

*Of the Rainbow.*

*Prudence.* To shew that the Covenant of God's Grace is confirmed to us in Christ.

*Of the Springs.*

*Matthew.* *Why do the Springs come from the Sea, to us, through the Earth.*

*Prudence.* To shew that the Grace of God comes to us through the Body of Christ.

*Mat.* *Why do some of the Springs rise out of the tops of high Hills?*

*Prudence.* To shew that the Spirit of Grace shall spring up in *some* that are Great and Mighty, as well as in *many* that are Poor and Low.

*Of the Candle.*

*Mat.* *Why doth the Fire fasten upon the Candlewick?*

*Pru.* To shew that unless Grace doth kindle upon the Heart, there will be no true Light of Life in us.

*Matthew.* *Why is the Wick and Tallow and all, spent to maintain the light of the Candle?*

*Prudence.* To shew that Body and Soul and all, should be at the service of, and spend themselves to maintain in good Condition that Grace of God that is in us.

*Of the Pelican.*

*Mat.* *Why doth the Pelican pierce her own Breast with her Bill?*

*Pru.* To nourish her young ones with her Blood, and thereby to shew that Christ the blessed, so loveth his Young, his People, as to save them from Death by his Blood.

*Of the Cock.*

*Mat.* *What may one learn by hearing the Cock to Crow.*

*Prudence.* Learn to remember *Peter's* Sin, and *Peter's* Repentance. The Cock's crowing, shews also that day is coming on, let then the crowing of the Cock put thee in mind of that last and terrible Day of Judgment.

Now about this time their Month was out, wherefore they signified to those of the House, that 'twas convenient

for them to up and be going. Then said *Joseph* to his Mother, It is convenient that you forget not to send to the House of Mr. *Interpreter*, to pray him to grant that Mr. *Great-heart* should be sent unto us, that he may be our Conductor the rest of our way. Good *Boy*, said she, I had almost forgot. So she drew up a Petition, and prayed Mr. *Watchful* the Porter to send it by some fit man to her good Friend Mr. *Interpreter*; who when it was come, and he had seen the contents of the Petition, said to the Messenger, Go tell them that I will send him.

*The weak may sometimes call the strong to Prayers.*

When the Family where *Christiana* was, saw that they had a purpose to go forward, they called the whole House together to give thanks to their King, for sending of them such profitable Guests as these. Which done, they said to *Christiana*, And shall we not shew thee something, according as our Custom is to do to Pilgrims, on which thou mayest meditate when thou art upon the way? So they took *Christiana*, her Children, and *Mercy* into the Closet, and shewed them one of the *Apples* that *Eve* did eat of, and that she also did give to her Husband, and that for the eating of which they both were turned out of Paradise, and asked her what she thought that was? Then *Christiana* said, 'Tis Food, or Poison, I know not which; so they opened the matter to her, and she held up her hands and wondered.

*They provide to be gone on their way.*

*Eve's Apple.*

*A sight of Sin is amazing.*  
Gen. 3. 6.  
Ro. 7. 24.

Then they had her to a Place, and shewed her *Jacob's Ladder*. Now at that time there were some Angels ascending upon it. So *Christiana* looked and looked to see the Angels go up, and so did the rest of the Company. Then they were going into another place to shew them something else: But *James* said to his Mother, Pray bid them stay here a little longer, for this is a curious sight.

*Jacob's Ladder.*

*A sight of Christ is taking.*

So they turned again, and stood feeding their Eyes with this *so pleasant a Prospect*. After this they had them into a Place where did hang up a *Golden Anchor*, so they bid *Christiana* take it down; for, said they, you shall have it with you, for 'tis of absolute necessity that you should, that you may lay hold of that within the veil, and stand stedfast, in case you should meet with turbulent weather: So they were glad thereof. Then they took them, and had them to the mount upon which *Abraham* our Father, had offered up *Isaac* his Son, and shewed them the *Altar*, the *Wood*, the *Fire*, and the *Knife*, for they remain to be seen to this very day. When they had seen it, they held up their hands and blest themselves, and said, Oh! What a man, for love to his Master, and for denial to himself was *Abraham*! After they had shewed them all these things, *Prudence* took them into the Dining-Room, where stood a pair of excellent *Virginals*, so she played upon them, and turned what she had shewed them into this excellent Song, saying;

*Eve's Apple we have shewed you,  
 Of that be you aware:  
 You have seen Jacob's Ladder too,  
 Upon which Angels are.  
 An Anchor you received have;  
 But let not these suffice,  
 Until with Abra'm you have gave,  
 Your best, a Sacrifice.*

Now about this time one knocked at the Door, so the Porter opened, and behold *Mr. Great-heart* was there; but when he was come in, what Joy was there? For it came now fresh again into their minds, how but a while ago he had slain old *Grim Bloody-man*, the Giant, and had delivered them from the Lions.

Gen. 28. 12.  
*Golden  
 Anchor.*  
 John 1. 51.

Heb. 6. 19.

*Of Abraham  
 offering up  
 Isaac.*  
 Gen. 22. 9.

*Prudence's  
 Virginals.*

*Mr. Great-  
 heart come  
 again.*

Then said Mr. *Great-heart* to *Christiana*, and to *Mercy*,  
 My Lord has sent each of you a Bottle of Wine, and also  
 some parched Corn, together with a couple of Pomgran- He brings a  
 token from  
 his Lord with  
 him.  
 ates. He has also sent the Boys some Figs, and Raisins  
 to refresh you in your way.

Then they addressed themselves to their Journey, and  
*Prudence*, and *Piety* went along with them. When they  
 came at the Gate *Christiana* asked the Porter if any of  
 late went by. He said, No, only one some time since :  
 who also told me that of late there had been a great  
 Robbery committed on the King's High-way, as you go : Robbery.  
 But he saith, the Thieves are taken, and will shortly be  
 Tried for their Lives. Then *Christiana*, and *Mercy*,  
 were afraid ; but *Matthew* said, Mother fear nothing, as  
 long as Mr. *Great-heart* is to go with us, and to be our  
 Conductor.

Then said *Christiana* to the Porter, Sir, I am much Christiana  
 takes her  
 leave of the  
 Porter.  
 obliged to you for all the Kindnesses that you have  
 shewed me since I came hither, and also for that you have  
 been so loving and kind to my Children. I know not  
 how to gratify your Kindness : Wherefore pray as a token  
 of my respects to you, accept of this small mite : So she  
 put a Gold Angel in his Hand, and he made her a low  
 obeisance, and said, Let thy Garments be always white,  
 and let thy Head want no Ointment. Let *Mercy* live The Porter's  
 blessing.  
 and not die, and let not her Works be few. And to the  
 Boys he said, Do you fly youthful lusts, and follow after  
 Godliness with them that are Grave, and Wise, so shall  
 you put Gladness into your Mother's Heart, and obtain  
 Praise of all that are sober-minded. So they thanked the  
 Porter and departed.

Now I saw in my Dream, that they went forward until they were come to the Brow of the Hill, where *Piety* bethinking herself cried out, *Alas!* I have forgot what I intended to bestow upon *Christiana*, and her Companions. I will go back and fetch it. So she ran, and fetched it. While she was gone, *Christiana* thought she heard in a Grove a little way off, on the right-hand, a most curious Melodious Note, with Words much like these,

*Through all my Life thy favour is  
So frankly shew'd to me,  
That in thy House for evermore  
My dwelling place shall be.*

And listning still she thought she heard another answer it, saying.

*For why, The Lord our God is good,  
His Mercy is for ever sure :  
His Truth at all times firmly stood :  
And shall from Age to Age endure.*

So *Christiana* asked *Prudence*, what 'twas that made those curious Notes? They are, said she, our Country Birds: They sing these Notes but seldom, except it be at the Spring, when the Flowers appear, and the Sun shines warm, and then you may hear them all day long. I often, said she, go out to hear them, we also oft-times keep them tame in our House. They are very fine Company for us when we are *Melancholy*, also they make the Woods, and Groves, and Solitary places, places desirous to be in.

Song 2. 11,  
12.

*Piety bestow-  
eth something  
on them at  
parting.*

By this Time *Piety* was come again, so she said to *Christiana*, look here, I have brought thee a *Scheme* of all those things that thou hast seen at our House, upon

which thou mayest look when thou findest thyself forgetful, and call those things again to remembrance for thy edification, and comfort.

Now they began to go down the Hill into the Valley <sup>1 Part, page 61.</sup> of *Humiliation*. It was a steep Hill, and the way was slippery; but they were very careful, so they got down pretty well. When they were down in the Valley, *Piety* said to *Christiana*, This is the place where *Christian* your Husband met with the foul Fiend *Apollyon*, and where they had that dreadful fight that they had. I know you cannot but have heard thereof. But be of good courage, as long as you have here Mr. *Great-heart* to be your Guide and Conductor, we hope you will fare the better. So when these two had committed the Pilgrims unto the Conduct of their Guide, he went forward and they went after.

*Great-heart*. Then said Mr. *Great-heart*, We need not be so afraid of this Valley: For here is nothing to hurt us, unless we procure it to ourselves. 'Tis true, *Christian* did here meet with *Apollyon*, with whom he also had a sore Combat; but that *fray* was the fruit of those slips that he got in his going down the Hill. For they that get *slips there*, must look for *Combats here*. And hence it is that this Valley has got so hard a name. For the common People when they hear that some frightful thing has befallen such an one in such a place, are of an Opinion that that place is haunted with some foul Fiend, or evil Spirit; when alas it is for the fruit of their doing, that such things do befall them there. <sup>1 Part, page 62.</sup>

This Valley of *Humiliation* is of itself as fruitful a place, as any the Crow flies over; and I am perswaded <sup>The reason why Christian was so beset here.</sup>

if we could hit upon it, we might find somewhere hereabouts something that might give us an account why *Christian* was so hardly beset in this place.

Then *James* said to his Mother, Lo, yonder stands a Pillar, and it looks as if something was written thereon: let us go and see what it is. So they went, and found there written, *Let Christian's slips before he came hither, and the Battles that he met with in this place, be a warning to those that come after.* Lo, said their Guide, did not I tell you, that there was something hereabouts that would give intimation of the reason why *Christian* was so hard beset in this place? Then turning himself to *Christiana*, he said: No disparagement to *Christian* more than to many others, whose Hap and Lot his was. For 'tis easier going *up*, than *down this Hill*; and that can be said but of few Hills in all these parts of the World. But we will leave the good Man, he is at rest, he also had a brave Victory over his Enemy; let him grant that dwelleth above that we fare no worse when we come to be tried than he.

*A Pillar with an Inscription on it.*

*This Valley a brave place.*

But we will come again to this Valley of *Humiliation*. It is the best, and most fruitful piece of Ground in all those parts. It is fat Ground, and as you see, consisteth much in Meadows: and if a man was to come here in the Summer-time as we do now, if he knew not anything before thereof, and if he also delighted himself in the sight of his Eyes, he might see that that would be delightful to him. Behold, how green this Valley is, also how beautiful *with Lilies*. I have also known many labouring Men that have got good Estates in this Valley of *Humiliation*. (For God resisteth the Proud; but gives *more, more* Grace to the Humble); for indeed

Song 2. 1.

Jam. 4. 6.

1 Pet. 5. 5.



it is a very fruitful Soil, and doth bring forth by handfals. Some also have wished that the next way to their Father's House were here, that they might be troubled no more with either Hills or Mountains to go over; but the way is the way, and there's an end.

Now as they were going along and talking, they espied a Boy feeding his Father's Sheep. The Boy was in very mean Cloaths, but of a very fresh and well-favoured Countenance, and as he sate by himself he Sang. Hark, said Mr. *Great-heart*, to what the Shepherd's Boy saith. So they hearkened, and he said,

*He that is down, needs fear no fall,  
He that is low, no Pride :  
He that is humble, ever shall  
Have God to be his Guide.*

Philip 4. 12,  
13.

*I am content with what I have,  
Little be it, or much :  
And, Lord, contentment still I crave,  
Because thou savest such.*

*Fulness to such a burden is  
That go on Pilgrimage :  
Here little, and hereafter Bliss,  
Is best from Age to Age.*

Heb. 13. 5.

Then said their *Guide*, do you hear him? I will dare to say, that this Boy lives a merrier Life, and wears more of that Herb called *Heart's-ease* in his Bosom, than he that is clad in Silk and Velvet; but we will proceed in our Discourse.

In this Valley, our Lord formerly had his *Country-House*, he loved much to be here. He loved also to walk these Meadows, for he found the Air was pleasant. Besides here a man shall be free from the Noise, and from the hurryings of this Life; all States are full of

*Christ, when  
in the Flesh,  
had his Coun-  
try-House  
in the Valley  
of Humilia-  
tion.*

Noise and Confusion, only the Valley of *Humiliation*, is that empty and Solitary Place. Here a man shall not be so let, and hindred in his Contemplation, as in other places he is apt to be. This is a Valley that nobody walks in, but those that love a Pilgrim's Life. And tho' *Christian* had the hard hap to meet here with *Apollyon*, and to enter with him a brisk encounter,

Hos. 12. 4, 5.

yet I must tell you, that in former times men have met with Angels here, have found Pearls here, and have in this place found the words of Life.

Did I say, our Lord had here in former days his Country-house, and that he loved here to walk? I will add, in this Place, and to the People that live, and trace these

Mat. 11. 20.

Grounds, he has left a yearly revenue to be faithfully paid them at certain Seasons, for their maintenance by the way, and for their further encouragement to go on in their Pilgrimage.

Now as they went on, *Samuel* said to Mr. *Great-heart*: *Sir, I perceive that in this Valley, my Father and Apollyon had their Battle; but whereabouts was the Fight, for I perceive this Valley is large?*

*Great-heart*. Your Father had that Battle with *Apollyon* at a place yonder, before us, in a narrow Passage just beyond *Forgetful-Green*: And indeed that place is the most dangerous place in all these Parts. For if at any time the Pilgrims meet with any brunt, it is when they forget what Favours they have received, and how unworthy they are of them. This is the Place also where others have been hard put to it: But more of the place when we are come to it: for I perswade myself, that to this day there remains either some sign of the Battle, or some Monument to testify that such a Battle there was fought.

*Forgetful  
Green.*

*Mercy.* Then said *Mercy*, I think I am as well in this Valley, as I have been anywhere else in all our Journey: The place methinks suits with my Spirit. I love to be in such places where there is no rattling with Coaches, nor rumbling with Wheels: Methinks here one may without much molestation, be thinking what he is, whence he came, what he has done, and to what the King has called him: Here one may think, and break at Heart, and melt in one's Spirit until one's Eyes become like the *Fish Pools of Heshbon*. They that go rightly through this Valley of *Baca* make it a Well, the Rain that God sends down from Heaven upon them that are here also filleth the Pools. This Valley is that from whence also the King will give to them Vineyards, and they that go through it, shall sing, (as *Christian* did, for all he met with *Apollyon*).

*Humility a  
sweet Grace.*

Song 7. 4.  
Psal. 84. 5, 6,  
7.

Hos. 2. 15.

*Great-heart.* 'Tis true, said their Guide, I have gone through this Valley many a time, and never was better than when here.

*An Experi-  
ment of it.*

I have also been a Conduct to several Pilgrims, and they have confessed the same; *To this man will I look, saith the King, even to him that is Poor, and of a contrite Spirit, and that trembles at my Word.*

Now they were come to the place where the aforementioned Battle was fought. Then said the Guide to *Christiana*, her Children, and *Mercy*: This is the place, on this Ground *Christian* stood, and up there came *Apollyon* against him. And look, did not I tell you, here is some of your Husband's Blood upon these Stones to this day: Behold also how here and there, are yet to be seen upon the place, some of the Shivers of *Apollyon's* broken *Darts*: See also how they did beat the Ground with their Feet as they fought, to make good their Places against

*The place  
where Chris-  
tian and the  
Fiend did  
fight, some  
signs of the  
Battle re-  
main.*

each other, how also with their by-blows, they did split the very Stones in pieces. Verily *Christian* did here play the Man, and showed himself as stout, as could, had he been there, even *Hercules* himself. When *Apollyon* was beat, he made his retreat to the next Valley, that is called *The Valley of the Shadow of Death*, unto which we shall come anon.

*A Monument  
of the Battle.*

Lo yonder also stands a Monument on which is engraven this Battle, and *Christian's* Victory to his Fame, throughout all Ages: So because it stood just on the way-side before them, they stept to it and read the Writing, which word for word was this;

*A Monument  
of Christian's  
Victory.*

*Hard by, here was a Battle fought,  
Most strange, and yet most true.  
Christian and Apollyon sought  
Each other to subdue.*

*The Man so bravely play'd the Man,  
He made the Fiend to fly:  
Of which a Monument I stand,  
The same to testify.*

*1 Part, page  
67.*

When they had passed by this place, they came upon the Borders of the Shadow of Death, and this Valley was longer than the other, a place also most strangely haunted with Evil things, as many are able to testify: But these Women and Children went the better through it because they had daylight; and because Mr. *Great-heart* was their Conductor.

*Groanings  
heard.*

When they were entred upon this Valley, they thought that they heard a groaning as of dead men: a very great groaning. They thought also they did hear words of Lamentation spoken, as of some in extreme Torment. These things made the Boys to quake, the Women also

looked pale and wan ; but their Guide bid them be of Good Comfort.

So they went on a little further, and they thought that they felt the ground begin to shake under them, as if The Ground shakes. some hollow place was there ; they heard also a kind of a hissing as of Serpents ; but nothing as yet appeared. Then said the Boys, Are we not yet at the end of this doleful place ? But the Guide also bid them be of good Courage, and look well to their Feet lest haply, said he, you be taken, in some Snare.

Now *James* began to be sick ; but I think the cause James sick with Fear. thereof was Fear, so his Mother gave him some of that Glass of Spirits that she had given her at the *Interpreter's* House, and three of the Pills that Mr. *Skill* had prepared, and the Boy began to revive. Thus they went on till they came to about the middle of the Valley, and then *Christiana* said, Methinks I see something yonder upon the Road before us, a thing of such a shape such as I have not seen. Then said *Joseph*, Mother, what is it ? An ugly thing, Child ; an ugly thing, said she. But Mother, what is it like, said he ? 'Tis like I cannot tell what, said she. And now it was but a little way off : Then said she, The Fiend appears. it is nigh. The Pilgrims are afraid.

Well, well, said Mr. *Great-heart*, let them that are most afraid keep close to me. So the *Fiend* came on, and the Conductor met it ; but when it was just come to him, it vanished to all their sights. Then remembered they what had been said some time ago ; *Resist the Devil, and he will fly from you.*

They went therefore on, as being a little refreshed ; Great-heart encourages them. but they had not gone far, before *Mercy* looking behind A Lion. her, saw as she thought, something most like a Lion, and it came a great padding pace after ; and it had a hollow

Voice of Roaring, and at every Roar that it gave, it made all the Valley echo, and their Hearts to ake, save the Heart of him that was their Guide. So it came up, and Mr. *Great-heart* went behind, and put the Pilgrims all before him. The Lion also came on apace, and Mr. *Great-heart* addressed himself to give him Battle: But when he saw that it was determined that resistance should be made, he also drew back and came no further.

1 Pet. 5. 8, 9.

*A pit and darkness.*

Then they went on again, and their Conductor did go before them, till they came at a place where was cast up a pit, the whole breadth of the way, and before they could be prepared to go over that, a great mist and a darkness fell upon them, so that they could not see. Then said the Pilgrims, alas! now what shall we do? But their Guide made answer, fear not, stand still and see what an end will be put to this also; so they stayed there because their Path was marr'd. They then also thought that they did hear more apparently the noise and rushing of the Enemies, the fire also and the smoke of the pit was much easier to be discerned. Then said *Christiana* to *Mercy*, now I see what my poor Husband went through: I have heard much of this place, but I never was here afore now; poor man, he went here all alone in the night; he had night almost quite through the way, also these Fiends were busy about him, as if they would have torn him in pieces. Many have spoke of it, but none can tell what the Valley of the Shadow of Death should mean, until they come in it themselves; *The heart knows its own bitterness, and a stranger intermeddleth not with its Joy*: To be here is a fearful thing.

*Christiana now knows what her Husband felt.*

*Great-heart's Reply.*

*Great.* This is like doing business in great Waters, or like going down into the deep; this is like being in the heart of the Sea, and like going down to the Bottoms of

the Mountains : Now it seems as if the Earth with its bars were about us for ever. *But let them that walk in darkness and have no light, trust in the name of the Lord, and stay upon their God.* For my Part, as I have told you already, I have gone often through this Valley, and have been much harder put to it than now I am, and yet you see I am alive. I would not boast, for that I am not mine own Saviour. But I trust we shall have a good deliverance. Come let us pray for light to him that can lighten our darkness, and that can rebuke, not only these, but all the Satans in Hell.

So they cried and prayed, and God sent light and deliverance, for there was now no let in their way, no not there, where but now they were stopt with a pit : *They pray.*

Yet they were not got through the Valley ; so they went on still, and behold great stinks and loathsome smells, to the great annoyance of them. Then said *Mercy to Christiana*, there is not such pleasant being here as at the *Gate*, or at the *Interpreter's*, or at the *House* where we lay last.

*O but*, said one of the *Boys*, *it is not so bad to go through here, as it is to abide here always, and for ought I know, one reason why we must go this way to the House prepared for us, is, that our home might be made the sweeter to us.* *One of the Boys Reply.*

Well said, *Samuel*, quoth the *Guide*, thou hast now spoke like a man. Why, if ever I get out here again, said the *Boy*, I think I shall prize light and good way better than ever I did in all my life. Then said the *Guide*, we shall be out by and by.

So on they went, and *Joseph* said, *cannot we see to the end of this Valley as yet?* Then said the *Guide*, Look to your feet, for you shall presently be among the *Snares*.

So they looked to their feet and went on ; but they were troubled much with the Snares. Now when they were come among the Snares, they espied a man cast into the Ditch on the left hand, with his flesh all rent and torn.

Heedless is slain, and Takeheed preserved.

Then said the *Guide*, That is one *Heedless*, that was a going this way ; he has lain there a great while. There was one *Takeheed* with him, when he was taken, and slain, but *he* escaped their hands. You cannot imagine, how many are killed here about, and yet men are so foolishly venturous, as to set out lightly on Pilgrimage, and to come without a *Guide*. Poor *Christian*, it was a wonder that he here escaped, but he was beloved of his God, also he had a good heart of his own, or else he could never a done it. Now they drew towards the end of the way,

1 Part, pages 71, 72.  
Maul a Giant.

and just there where *Christian* had seen the Cave when he went by, out thence came forth *Maul* a Giant. This *Maul* did use to spoil young Pilgrims with Sophistry, and he called *Great-heart* by his name, and said unto him, how many times have you been forbidden to do these things ? Then said Mr. *Great-heart*, what things ? What things, quoth the Giant, you know what things ; but I will put an end to your trade. But pray, said Mr. *Great-heart*, before we fall to it, let us understand wherefore we must fight. Now the Women and Children stood trembling, and knew not what to do. Quoth the Giant, You rob the Country, and rob it with the worst of thefts. These are but generals, said Mr. *Great-heart*, come to particulars, man.

God's Ministers counted as Kidnapers.

Then said the Giant, Thou practisest the craft of a *Kidnapper*, thou gatherest up Women, and Children, and carriest them into a strange Country, to the weakening of my Master's Kingdom. But now *Great-heart* replied, I am a Servant of the God of Heaven, my



business is to perswade sinners to Repentance, I am commanded to do my endeavour to turn Men, Women, and Children from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan to God, and if this be indeed the ground of thy quarrel, let us fall to it as soon as thou wilt.

*The Giant and Mr. Great-heart must fight.*

Then the Giant came up, and Mr. *Great-heart* went to meet him, and as he went, he drew his *Sword*, but the *Giant* had a *Club*: So without more ado they fell to it, and at the first blow the *Giant* stroke Mr. *Great-heart* down upon one of his knees; with that the women and children cried out. So Mr. *Great-heart* recovering himself, laid about him in full lusty manner, and gave the *Giant* a wound in his arm; thus he fought for the space of an hour, to that height of heat, that the breath came out of the *Giant's* nostrils, as the heat doth out of a boiling Caldron.

*Weak folk's Prayers do sometimes help strong folk's Cries.*

Then they sat down to rest them, but Mr. *Great-heart* betook him to prayer; also the Women and Children did nothing but sigh and cry all the time that the Battle did last.

When they had rested them, and taken breath, they both fell to it again, and Mr. *Great-heart* with a full blow, fetcht the *Giant* down to the ground. Nay hold, and let me recover, quoth he. So Mr. *Great-heart* fairly let him get up; so to it they went again: and the *Giant* missed but little of all-to-breaking Mr. *Great-heart's* Skull with his *Club*.

*The Giant struck down.*

Mr. *Great-heart* seeing that, runs to him in the full heat of his Spirit, and pierceth him under the fifth rib; with that the *Giant* began to faint, and could hold up his *Club* no longer. Then Mr. *Great-heart* seconded his blow, and smit the head of the *Giant* from his shoulders.

Then the Women and Children rejoiced, and Mr. *Great-heart* also praised God for the deliverance he had wrought.

*He is slain  
and his head  
disposed of.*

When this was done, they amongst them erected a Pillar, and fastned the *Giant's* head thereon, and wrote underneath in Letters that Passengers might read.

*He that did wear this head, was one  
That Pilgrims did misuse ;  
He stopt their way, he spared none,  
But did them all abuse ;  
Until that I, Great-heart, arose,  
The Pilgrims' Guide to be ;  
Until that I did him oppose,  
That was their Enemy.*

<sup>1</sup> Part, page  
73.

Now I saw, that they went to the Ascent that was a little way off cast up to be a Prospect for Pilgrims. (That was the place from whence *Christian* had the first sight of *Faithful* his Brother.) Wherefore here they sat down, and rested, they also here did eat and drink, and make merry ; for that they had gotten deliverance from this so dangerous an Enemy. As they sat thus and did eat, *Christiana* asked the *Guide*, *If he had caught no hurt in the battle.* Then said Mr. *Great-heart*, no, save a little on my flesh ; yet that also shall be so far from being to my Determent, that it is at present a proof of my love to my Master, and you, and shall be a means by Grace to increase my reward at last.

<sup>2</sup> Cor. 4.

*Discourse of  
the fights.*

*But were you not afraid, good Sir, when you saw him come out with his Club ?*

It is my Duty, said he, to distrust mine own ability, that I may have reliance on him that is stronger than all. *But what did you think when he fetcht you down to the ground at the first blow ?* Why I thought, quoth he,

that so my master himself was served, and yet he it was that conquered at the last.

Matt. *When you all have thought what you please, I think God has been wonderful good unto us, both in bringing us out of this Valley, and in delivering us out of the hand of this Enemy; for my part I see no reason why we should distrust our God any more, since he has now, and in such a place as this, given us such testimony of his love as this.*

*Mat. here admires Goodness.*

Then they got up and went forward. Now a little before them stood an Oak, and under it when they came to it, they found an old *Pilgrim* fast asleep, they knew that he was a *Pilgrim* by his *Cloths*, and his *Staff* and his *Girdle*.

*Old Honest asleep under an Oak.*

So the *Guide* Mr. *Great-heart* awaked him, and the old *Gentleman*, as he lift up his eyes, cried out; What's the matter? who are you? and what is your business here?

*Great.* Come man be not so hot, here is none but *Friends*; yet the old man gets up and stands upon his guard, and will know of them what they were. Then said the *Guide*, my name is *Great-heart*, I am the guide of these *Pilgrims* which are going to the *Celestial Country*.

*Honest.* Then said Mr. *Honest*, I cry you mercy; I fear'd that you had been of the *Company* of those that some time ago did rob *Little-faith* of his money; but now I look better about me, I perceive you are honester people.

*One Saint sometimes takes another for his Enemy.*

*Great.* Why what would, or could you a done, to a helped yourself, if we indeed had been of that *Company*?

*Talk between Great-heart and he.*

*Hon.* Done! Why I would a fought as long as breath had been in me; and had I so done, I am sure you could never have given me the worst on't, for a

*Christian* can never be overcome, unless he shall yield of himself.

Great. *Well said, Father Honest, quoth the Guide, for by this I know thou art a Cock of the right kind, for thou hast said the Truth.*

Hon. And by this also I know that thou knowest what true Pilgrimage is; for all others do think that we are the soonest overcome of any.

*Whence Mr. Honest came.*

Great. *Well now we are so happily met, pray let me crave your Name, and the name of the Place you came from?*

Hon. My Name I cannot, but I came from the Town of *Stupidity*; it lieth about four Degrees beyond the City of *Destruction*.

Great. Oh! *Are you that Countryman then? I deem I have half a guess of you, your name is old Honesty, is it not?* So the old Gentleman blushed, and said, Not Honesty in the *Abstract*, but *Honest* is my Name, and I wish that my *Nature* shall agree to what I am called.

Hon. But Sir, said the old Gentleman, how could you guess that I am such a Man, since I came from such a place?

*Stupified ones are worse than those merely Carnal.*

Great. *I had heard of you before, by my Master, for he knows all things that are done on the Earth: But I have often wondered that any should come from your place; for your Town is worse than is the City of Destruction itself.*

Hon. Yes, we lie more off from the Sun, and so are more cold and senseless; but was a Man in a Mountain of Ice, yet if the Sun of Righteousness will arise upon him, his frozen heart shall feel a thaw; and thus it hath been with me.

*Great.* I believe it, Father *Honest*, I believe it, for I know the thing is true.

Then the old Gentleman saluted all the Pilgrims with a holy Kiss of Charity, and asked them of their Names, and how they had fared since they set out on their Pilgrimage.

*Christ.* Then said *Christiana*, my Name I suppose you have heard of, good *Christian* was my Husband, and these four were his Children. But can you think how the old Gentleman was taken, when she told them who she was! He skipped, he smiled, and blessed them with a thousand good Wishes, saying,

*Hon.* I have heard much of your Husband, and of his Travels and Wars which he underwent in his days. Be it spoken to your Comfort, the Name of your Husband rings all over these parts of the World; His Faith, his Courage, his Enduring, and his Sincerity under all, have made his Name Famous. Then he turned him to

the Boys, and asked them of their Names, which they told him: And then said he unto them, *Matthew*, be thou like *Matthew* the Publican, not in Vice, but in Virtue. *Samuel*, said he, be thou like *Samuel* the Prophet, a Man of Faith and Prayer. *Joseph*, said he, be thou like *Joseph* in *Potiphar's* House, Chaste and one that flies from Temptation. And, *James*, be thou like *James* the *Just*, and like *James* the Brother of our Lord.

*Old Honest and Christiana talk.*

*He also talks with the Boys.*

*Old Mr. Honest's Blessing on them.*

*Mat. 10. 3.*

*Ps. 99. 6.*

*Gen. 39.*

*Acts 1. 13.*

Then they told him of *Mercy*, and how she had left her Town and her Kindred to come along with *Christiana*, and with her Sons. At that the old *Honest* Man said, *Mercy*, is thy Name? by *Mercy* shalt thou be sustained, and carried through all those Difficulties that shall assault thee in thy way; till thou shalt come thither

*He blesseth Mercy.*

where thou shalt look the Fountain of Mercy in the face with comfort.

All this while the Guide Mr. *Great-heart*, was very much pleased, and smiled upon his Companion.

*Talk of one  
Mr. Fearing.*

Now as they walked along together, the Guide asked the old Gentleman, *if he did not know one Mr. Fearing that came on Pilgrimage out of his parts.*

*Hon.* Yes, very well, said he ; he was a Man that had the Root of the Matter in him, but he was one of the most troublesome Pilgrims that ever I met with in all my days.

*Great.* *I perceive you knew him, for you have given a very right character of him.*

*Hon.* Knew him ! I was a great Companion of his, I was with him most an end ; when he first began to think of what would come upon us hereafter, I was with him.

*Great.* *I was his Guide from my Master's House, to the Gates of the Celestial City.*

*Hon.* Then you knew him to be a troublesome one ?

*Great.* *I did so, but I could very well bear it : for Men of my calling, are oftentimes intrusted with the Conduct of such as he was.*

*Hon.* Well then, pray let us hear a little of him, and how he managed himself under your Conduct ?

*Mr. Fear-  
ing's trouble-  
some Pil-  
grimage.*

*Great.* Why he was always afraid that he should come short of whither he had a desire to go. Everything frightened him that he heard anybody speak of, that had but the least appearance of Opposition in it. I hear that he lay roaring at the *Slough of Dispond*, for above a month together, nor durst he, for all he saw several go over before him, venture, tho' they, many of them, offered to lend him their Hand. *He would not go back again neither.* The Celestial City, he said he should die

*His behavi-  
our at the  
Slough of  
Dispond.*

if he came not to it, and yet was dejected at every Difficulty, and stumbled at every Straw that anybody cast in his way. Well, after he had lain at the *Slough of Dispond* a great while, as I have told you, one sunshine Morning, I do not know how, he ventured, and so got over. But when he was over, he would scarce believe it. He had, I think, a *Slough of Dispond* in his Mind, a *Slough* that he carried everywhere with him, or else he would never have been as he was. So he came up to the Gate, you know what I mean, that stands at the head of this way, and there also he stood a good while before he would adventure to knock. When the Gate was opened he would give back, and give place to others, and say that he was not worthy. For, for all he gat before some to the Gate, yet many of them went in before him. There the poor Man would stand shaking and shrinking: I daresay it would have pitied one's Heart to have seen him: *Nor would he go back again.* At last he took the Hammer that hanged on the Gate in his hand, and gave a small Rap or two; then one opened to him, but he shrunk back as before. He that opened stept out after him, and said, Thou trembling one, what wantest thou? with that he fell to the ground. He that spoke to him wondered to see him so faint. So he said to him, *Peace be to thee,* up for I have set open the Door to thee: come in, for thou art blest. With that he gat up, and went in trembling, and when he was in, he was ashamed to shew his Face. Well, after he had been entertained there a while, as you know how the manner is, he was bid go on his way, and also told the way he should take. So he came till he came to our House, but as he behaved himself at the Gate, so he did at my Master the *Interpreter's* Door.

*His behaviour at the Gate.*

*His behaviour at the Interpreter's Door.*

He lay thereabout in the Cold a good while, before he would adventure to call; *Yet he would not go back.* And the Nights were long and cold then. Nay he had a Note of *Necessity* in his Bosom to my Master, to receive him, and grant him the Comfort of his House, and also to allow him a stout and valiant Conduct, because he was himself so *Chicken-hearted* a Man; and yet for all that he was afraid to call at the Door. So he lay up and down thereabouts till, poor man, he was almost starved; yea so great was his Dejection, that tho' he saw several others for knocking got in, yet he was afraid to venture. At last, I think I looked out of the Window, and perceiving a man to be up and down about the Door, I went out to him, and asked what he was; but poor man, the water stood in his Eyes. So I perceived what he wanted. I went therefore in, and told it in the House, and we shewed the thing to our Lord; So he sent me out again, to entreat him to come in, but I daresay I had hard work to do it. At last he came in, and I will say that for my Lord, he carried it wonderful lovingly to him. There were but a few good bits at the Table, but some of it was laid upon his Trencher. Then he presented the *Note*, and my Lord looked thereon and said, his Desire should be granted. So when he had been there a good while, he seemed to get some Heart, and to be a little more Comfortable. For my Master, you must know, is one of very tender Bowels, specially to them that are afraid, wherefore he carried it so towards him, as might tend most to his encouragement. Well, when he had had a sight of the things of the place, and was ready to take his Journey to go to the City, my Lord, as he did to *Christian* before, gave him a Bottle of Spirits, and some comfortable things

*How he was entertained there.*

*He is a little encouraged at the Interpreter's House.*



to eat. Thus we set forward, and I went before him ; but the man was but of few Words, only he would sigh aloud.

When we were come to where the three Fellows were hanged, he said, that he doubted that that would be his end also. Only he seemed glad when he saw the Cross and the Sepulchre. There I confess he desired to stay a little to look ; and he seemed for a while after to be a little *Cheery*. When we came at the Hill *Difficulty*, he made no stick at that, nor did he much fear the Lions : For you must know that his Trouble *was not about such things as those*, his Fear was about his Acceptance at last.

*He was greatly afraid when he saw the Gibbet, Cheery when he saw the Cross.*

I got him in at the House *Beautiful*, I think before he was willing ; also when he was in, I brought him acquainted with the Damsels that were of the Place, but he was ashamed to make himself much for Company, he desired much to be alone, yet he always loved good talk, and often would get behind the *Screen* to hear it ; he also loved much to see *antient* Things, and to be *pondering* them in his Mind. He told me afterwards, that he loved to be in those two Houses from which he came last, to wit, at the Gate, and that of the *Interpreter's*, but that he durst not be so bold to ask.

*Dumpish at the House Beautiful.*

When we went also from the House *Beautiful*, down the Hill, into the Valley of *Humiliation*, he went down as well as ever I saw man in my Life, for he cared not how mean he was, so he might be happy at last. Yea, I think there was a kind of a Sympathy betwixt that Valley and him. For I never saw him better in all his Pilgrimage, than when he was in that Valley.

*He went down into and was very Pleasant in the Valley of Humiliation.*

Here he would lie down, embrace the Ground, and kiss the very flowers that grew in this Valley. He would now be up every Morning by break of Day, tracing, and walking to and fro in this Valley.

*Lam. 3. 27, 28, 29.*

*Much perplexed in the Valley of the Shadow of Death.*

But when he was come to the entrance of the Valley of the Shadow of Death, I thought I should have lost my Man; not for that he had any Inclination to go back, that he always abhorred, but he was ready to die for Fear. O, the *Hobgoblins* will have me, the *Hobgoblins* will have me, cried he; and I could not beat him out on't. He made such a noise, and such an outcry here, that, had they but heard him, 'twas enough to encourage them to come and fall upon us.

But this I took very great notice of, that this Valley was as quiet while he went through it, as ever I knew it before or since. I suppose, those Enemies here, had now a special check from our Lord, and a command not to meddle until Mr. *Fearing* was past over it.

*His Behaviour at Vanity Fair.*

It would be too tedious to tell you of all; we will therefore only mention a Passage or two more. When he was come at *Vanity Fair*, I thought he would have fought with all the men in the Fair, I feared there we should both have been knock'd o' th' Head, so hot was he against their Fooleries; upon the Incharnted Ground, he was also very wakeful. But when he was come at the *River* where was no Bridge there again he was in a heavy case; now, now he said he should be drowned for ever, and so never see that Face with Comfort, that he had come so many miles to behold.

And here also I took notice of what was very remarkable, the Water of that River was lower at this time, than ever I saw it in all my Life: so he went over at last, not much above wet-shod. When he was going up to the Gate, Mr. *Great-heart* began to take his Leave of him, and to wish him a good Reception above; So he said, *I shall, I shall*. Then parted we asunder, and I saw him no more.

Honest. *Then it seems he was well at last.*

*His boldness  
at last.*

Great. Yes, yes, I never had doubt about him, he was a man of a choice Spirit, only he was always kept very low, and that made his Life so burthensome to himself, and so troublesome to others. He was above many, tender of Sin ; he was so afraid of doing Injuries to others, that he often would deny himself of that which was lawful, because he would not offend.

Psal. 88.

Rom. 14. 21.

1 Cor. 8. 13.

Hon. *But what should be the reason that such a good Man should be all his days so much in the dark ?*

Great. There are two sorts of Reasons for it ; one is, The wise God will have it so, Some must *Pipe*, and some must *Weep*: Now Mr. *Fearing* was one that played upon *this Base*. He and his Fellows found the *Sackbut*, whose Notes are more doleful, than the Notes of other Musick are. Tho' indeed some say, The Base is the Ground of Musick. And for my part I care not at all for that Profession that begins not in heaviness of Mind. The first string that the Musician usually touches, *is the Base*, when he intends to put all in tune ; God also plays upon this string first, when he sets the Soul in tune for himself. Only here was the imperfection of Mr. *Fearing*, he could play upon no other Musick but this, till towards his latter end.

*Reason why  
good men are  
so in the  
dark.*

Matt. 11. 16,  
17, 18.

I make bold to talk thus metaphorically, for the ripening of the Wits of young Readers, and because in the Book of the Revelations, the Saved are compared to a company of Musicians that play upon their *Trumpets* and Harps, and sing their Songs before the Throne.

Revel. 8. 2.  
Chap. 14.  
2, 3.

Hon. *He was a very zealous man, as one may see by what Relation you have given of him. Difficulties, Lions, or Vanity Fair, he feared not at all: 'Twas only Sin, Death, and Hell, that was to him a Terror ; because he*

had some Doubts about his Interest in that Celestial Country.

*A Close about him.*

*Great.* You say right. *Those* were the things that were his Troublers, and they, as you have well observed, arose from the weakness of his Mind thereabout, not from weakness of Spirit as to the practical part of a Pilgrim's Life. I dare believe that as the Proverb is, he could have bit a Firebrand, had it stood in his Way: But the things with which he was oppressed, no man ever yet could shake off with ease.

*Christiana's Sentence.*

*Christiana.* *Then said Christiana, This Relation of Mr. Fearing has done me good. I thought nobody had been like me, but I see there was some Semblance 'twixt this good man and I, only we differed in two things. His Troubles were so great they brake out, but mine I kept within. His also lay so hard upon him, they made him that he could not knock at the Houses provided for Entertainment; but my Trouble was always such, as made me knock the louder.*

*Mercy's Sentence.*

*Mer.* If I might also speak my Heart, I must say something of him has also dwelt in me. For I have ever been more afraid of the Lake and the loss of a place in *Paradise*, than I have been of the loss of other things. Oh, thought I, may I have the Happiness to have a Habitation *there*, 'tis enough, though I part with all the World to win it.

*Matthew's Sentence.*

*Matt.* *Then said Matthew, Fear was one thing that made me think that I was far from having that within me, that accompanies Salvation, but if it was so with such a good man as he, why may it not also go well with me?*

*James's Sentence.*

*Jam.* No fears, no Grace, said *James*. Though there is not always Grace where there is the fear of Hell; yet

to be sure there is no Grace where there is no fear of God.

Great. *Well said, James, thou hast hit the mark, for the fear of God is the beginning of Wisdom; and to be sure they that want the beginning, have neither middle, nor end. But we will here conclude our discourse of Mr. Fearing after we have sent after him this Farewell.*

*Well, Master Fearing, thou didst fear  
Thy God: and wast afraid  
Of doing anything, while here,  
That would have thee betray'd.  
And didst thou fear the Lake and Pit?  
Would others did so too:  
For, as for them that want thy Wit,  
They do themselves undo.*

*Their Farewell about him.*

Now I saw, that they still went on in their Talk. For after Mr. *Great-heart* had made an end with Mr. *Fearing*, Mr. *Honest* began to tell them of another, but his Name was Mr. *Self-will*. He pretended himself to be a *Pilgrim*, said Mr. *Honest*; But I perswade myself, he never came in at the Gate that stands at the head of the way.

*Of Mr. Self-will.*

Great. *Had you ever any talk with him about it?*

Hon. Yes, more than once or twice; but he would always be like himself, *self-willed*. He neither cared for man, nor Argument, nor yet Example; what his Mind prompted him to, that he would do, and nothing else could he be got to.

*Old Honest had talked with him.*

Great. *Pray what Principles did he hold, for I suppose you can tell?*

Hon. He held that a man might follow the Vices, as well as the Virtues of the Pilgrims, and that if he did both, he should be certainly saved.

*Self-will's Opinions.*

Great. *How? If he had said, 'tis possible for the best to be guilty of the Vices, as well as to partake of the Virtues of Pilgrims, he could not much have been blamed. For indeed we are exempted from no Vice absolutely, but on condition that we Watch and Strive. But this I perceive is not the thing. But if I understand you right, your meaning is, that he was of that Opinion, that it was allowable so to be?*

Hon. Ay, ay, so I mean, and so he believed and practised.

Great. *But what ground had he for his so saying?*

Hon. Why, he said he had the Scripture for his Warrant.

Great. *Prithee, Mr. Honest, present us with a few Particulars.*

Hon. So I will, He said To have to do with other men's Wives, had been practised by *David*, God's Beloved, and therefore he could do it. He said to have more Women than one, was a thing that *Solomon* practised, and therefore he could do it. He said that *Sarah*, and the godly midwives of *Egypt* lied, and so did save *Rahab*, and therefore he could do it. He said that the Disciples went at the bidding of their Master, and took away the Owner's Ass, and therefore he could do so too. He said that *Jacob* got the Inheritance of his Father in a way of Guile and Dissimulation, and therefore he could do so too.

Great. *High base! indeed, and you are sure he was of this Opinion?*

Hon. I have heard him plead for it, bring Scripture for it, bring Argument for it, &c.

Great. *An Opinion that is not fit to be with any allowance in the World.*

*Hon.* You must understand me rightly. He did not say that any man might do this; but, that those that had the Virtues of those that did such things, might also do the same.

*Great.* *But what more false than such a conclusion? For this is as much as to say, that because good men heretofore have sinned of Infirmary, therefore he had allowance to do it of a presumptuous Mind. Or if because a Child, by the blast of the Wind, or for that it stumbled at a stone, fell down and defiled itself in Mire, therefore he might wilfully lie down and wallow like a Boar therein. Who could a thought that any one could so far a been blinded by the power of Lust? But what is written must be true. They stumble at the Word,* 1 Pet. 2. 8. *being disobedient, whereunto also they were appointed.*

*His supposing that such may have the godly Man's Virtues, who addict themselves to their Vices, is also a Delusion as strong as the other. 'Tis just as if the Dog should say, I have, or may have the Qualities of the Child, because I lick up its stinking Excrements. To eat up the Sin of God's People, is no sign of one that is possessed* Hos. 4. 8. *with their Virtues. Nor can I believe that one that is of this Opinion, can at present have Faith or Love in him. But I know you have made strong Objections against him, prithee what can he say for himself?*

*Hon.* Why, he says, To do this by way of Opinion, seems abundance more honest, than to do it, and yet hold contrary to it in Opinion.

*Great.* *A very wicked Answer, for tho' to let loose the Bridle to Lusts, while our Opinions are against such things, is bad; yet to sin and plead a Toleration so to do, is worse; the one stumbles Beholders accidentally, the other pleads them into the Snare.*

*Hon.* There are many of this man's mind, that have not this man's mouth, and *that* makes going on Pilgrimage of so little esteem as it is.

*Great.* *You have said the Truth, and it is to be lamented. But he that feareth the King of Paradise, shall come out of them all.*

*Christiana.* There are strange Opinions in the World, I know one that said, 'twas time enough to repent when they came to die.

*Great.* *Such are not over-wise. That man would a been loth, might he have had a week to run twenty mile in for his Life, to have deferred that Journey to the last hour of that Week.*

*Hon.* You say right, and yet the generality of them that count themselves Pilgrims, do indeed do thus. I am, as you see, an old Man, and have been a Traveller in this Road many a day; and I have taken notice of many things.

I have seen some that have set out as if they would drive all the World afore them: Who yet have in few days, died as they in the Wilderness, and so never gat sight of the promised Land.

I have seen some that have promised nothing at the first setting out to be Pilgrims, and that one would a thought could not have lived a day, that have yet proved very good Pilgrims.

I have seen some, that have run hastily forward, that again have after a little time, run as fast just back again.

I have seen some who have spoke very well of a Pilgrim's Life at first, that after a while, have spoken as much against it.

I have heard some, when they first set out for Paradise, say positively, there is such a place, who when they have



been almost there, have come back again, and said there is none.

I have heard some vaunt what they would do in case they should be opposed, that have even at a false Alarm fled Faith, the Pilgrim's way, and all.

Now as they were thus in their way, there came one running to meet them, and said, Gentlemen, and you of the weaker sort, if you love Life, shift for yourselves, for the Robbers are before you. Fresh News of Trouble.

*Great.* Then said Mr. *Great-heart*. They be the three that set upon *Little-faith* heretofore. Well, said he, we are ready for them; So they went on their way. Now they looked at every Turning when they should a met with the Villains. But whether they heard of Mr. *Great-heart*, or whether they had some other Game, they came not up to the Pilgrims. 1 Part, page 138. Great-heart's Resolution.

*Chris.* *Christiana* then wished for an Inn for herself and her Children; because they were weary. Then said Mr. *Honest*, there is one a little before us, where a very honorable Disciple, one *Gaius*, dwells. So they all concluded to turn in thither; and the rather, because the old Gentleman gave him so good a Report. So when they came to the Door, they went in, not knocking, for Folks use not to knock at the Door of an Inn. Then they called for the Master of the House, and he came to them. *So they asked if they might lie there that Night?* Christiana wisheth for an Inn. Rom. 16. 23. Gaius. They enter into his House.

*Gaius.* Yes Gentlemen, if you be true Men, for my House is for none but Pilgrims. Then was *Christiana*, *Mercy*, and the *Boys*, the more glad, for that the Inn-keeper was a Lover of Pilgrims. So they called for Rooms; and he shewed them one for *Christiana* and her Children and *Mercy*, and another for Mr. *Great-heart* and the old Gentleman. Gaius Entertains them and how.

Great. *Then said Mr. Great-heart, good Gaius, what hast thou for Supper ? for these Pilgrims have come far to-day and are weary.*

*Gaius.* It is late, said *Gaius* ; so we cannot conveniently go out to seek Food ; but such as we have you shall be welcome to, if that will content.

Great. *We will be content with what thou hast in the House, forasmuch as I have proved thee ; thou art never destitute of that which is convenient.*

Gaius his  
Cook.

Then he went down, and spake to the cook, whose name was *Taste-that-which-is-good*, to get ready Supper for so many Pilgrims. This done, he comes up again, saying, come my good Friends, you are welcome to me, and I am glad that I have an House to entertain you ; and while Supper is making ready, if you please, let us entertain one another with some good Discourse. So they all said, Content.

Talk between  
Gaius and  
his Guests.

*Gaius.* Then said *Gaius*, whose Wife is this aged Matron, and whose Daughter is this young Damsel ?

Mark this.

*Great.* The Woman is the Wife of one *Christian*, a Pilgrim of former times, and these are his four Children. The Maid is one of her Acquaintance ; one that she hath perswaded to come with her on Pilgrimage. The Boys take all after their Father, and covet to tread in his Steps. Yea, if they do but see any place where the old Pilgrim hath lain, or any print of his Foot, it ministreth Joy to their Hearts, and they covet to lie or tread in the same.

Acts 11. 26.

*Gaius.* Then said *Gaius*, Is this *Christian's* Wife, and are these *Christian's* Children ? I knew your Husband's Father, yea, also, his Father's Father. Many have been good of this stock, their Ancestors dwelt first at *Antioch*. *Christian's* Progenitors (I suppose you have heard your

Husband talk of them) were very worthy men. They have above any that I know, shewed themselves men of great Virtue and Courage, for the Lord of the Pilgrims, his ways, and them that loved him. I have heard of many of your Husband's Relations that have stood all Trials for the sake of the Truth. *Stephen* that was one of the first of the Family from whence your Husband sprang, was knocked o' th' Head with Stones. *James*, another of this Generation, was slain with the edge of the Sword. To say nothing of *Paul* and *Peter*, men antiently of the Family from whence your Husband came. There was *Ignatius*, who was cast to the Lions; *Romanus*, whose Flesh was cut by pieces from his Bones; and *Polycarp*, that played the man in the Fire. There was he that was hanged up in a Basket in the Sun, for the Wasps to eat; and he who they put into a Sack and cast him into the Sea, to be drowned. 'Twould be impossible, utterly to count up all of that Family that have suffered Injuries and Death, for the love of a Pilgrim's Life. Nor can I, but be glad, to see that thy Husband has left behind him four such Boys as these. I hope they will bear up their Father's Name, and tread in their Father's Steps, and come to their Father's End.

*Of Christian's Ancestors.*

Acts 7. 59, 60.

Chap. 12. 2.

Great. *Indeed Sir, they are likely Lads, they seem to chuse heartily their Father's Ways.*

*Gaius.* That is it that I said, wherefore *Christian's* Family is like still to spread abroad upon the face of the Ground, and yet to be numerous upon the face of the Earth. Wherefore let *Christiana* look out some Damsels for her Sons, to whom they may be Betrothed, &c. that the Name of their Father, and the House of his Progenitors may never be forgotten in the World.

*Advice to Christiana about her Boys.*

Hon. 'Tis pity this Family should fall, and be extinct.

*Gaius*. Fall it cannot, but be diminished it may; but let *Christiana* take my Advice, and that's the way to uphold it.

And *Christiana*, said *This* Innkeeper, I am glad to see thee and thy Friend *Mercy* together here, a lovely Couple. And may I advise, take *Mercy* into a nearer Relation to thee. If she will, let her be given to *Matthew* thy eldest Son. 'Tis the way to preserve you a Posterity in the Earth. So this Match was concluded, and in process of time they were married. But more of that hereafter.

*Gaius* also proceeded, and said, I will now speak on the behalf of Women, to take away their Reproach. For as Death and the Curse came into the World by a Woman, so also did Life and Health; *God sent forth his Son, made of a Woman*. Yea, to shew how much those that came after, did abhor the Act of their Mother, this Sex, in the old Testament, coveted Children, if happily this or that Woman might be the Mother of the Saviour of the World. I will say again, that when the Saviour was come, Women rejoiced in him, before either Man or Angel. I read not that ever any man did give unto Christ so much as one Groat, but the Women followed him, and ministred to him of their Substance. 'Twas a Woman that washed his Feet with Tears, and a Woman that anointed his Body to the Burial. They were Women that wept, when he was going to the Cross; And Women that followed him from the Cross, and that sat by his Sepulchre when he was buried. They were Women that were first with him at his Resurrection-morn, and Women that brought Tiding first to his

*Mercy and Matthew marry.*

Gen. 3.

Gal. 4. 4.

*Why Women of old so much desired Children.*

Luke 2.

Chap. 8. 2, 3.

Chap. 7. 37, 50.

John 11. 2.  
Chap. 12. 3.

Luke 23. 27.  
Matt. 27. 55, 56, 61.

Luke 24. 22, 23.

Disciples that he was risen from the Dead. Women therefore are highly favoured, and shew by these things that they are sharers with us in the Grace of Life.

Now the Cook sent up to signify that Supper was almost ready, and sent one to lay the Cloth, the Trenchers, and to set the Salt and Bread in order. Supper ready.

Then said *Matthew*, *the sight of this Cloth, and of this forerunner of the Supper, begetteth in me a greater Appetite to my Food than I had before.*

*Gaius*. So let all ministring Doctrines to thee in this Life, beget in thee a greater desire to sit at the Supper of the great King in his Kingdom; for all Preaching, Books and Ordinances here, are but as the laying of the Trenchers, and as setting of Salt upon the Board, when compared with the Feast that our Lord will make for us when we come to his House. What to be gathered from laying of the Board with the Cloth and Trenchers.

So Supper came up, and first a *Heave-shoulder*, and a *wave-Breast* was set on the Table before them, to shew that they must begin their *Meal* with Prayer and Praise to God. The *heave-shoulder* *David* lifted his Heart up to God with, and with the *wave-Breast*, where his Heart lay, with that he used to lean upon his Harp when he played. These two Dishes were very fresh and good, and they all eat heartily-well thereof. Levit. 7. 32, 33, 34. Chap. 10. 14, 15. Psal. 25. 1. Heb. 13. 15.

The next they brought up, was a Bottle of Wine, red as Blood. So *Gaius* said to them, Drink freely, this is the Juice of the true Vine, that makes glad the Heart of God and Man. So they drank and were merry. Deut. 32. 14. Judg. 9. 13. Joh. 15. 1.

The next was a Dish of Milk well crumbed. But *Gaius* said, *Let the Boys have that, that they may grow thereby.* 1 Pet. 2. 1, 2. A Dish of Milk.

Then they brought up in course a Dish of *Butter* and *Honey*. Then said *Gaius*, Eat freely of *this*, for this is Of Honey and Butter.

good to cheer up, and strengthen your Judgments and Understandings. This was our Lord's Dish when he was a Child. *Butter and Honey shall he eat, that he may know to refuse the Evil, and chuse the Good.*

Isa. 7. 15.

*A Dish of Apples.*

Then they brought them up a dish of Apples, and they were very good tasted Fruit. Then said *Matthew*, May we eat Apples, since they were such, by, and with which, the Serpent beguiled our first Mother?

Then said *Gaius*,

*Apples were they with which we were beguil'd,  
Yct Sin, not Apples hath our Souls defil'd.  
Apples forbid, if eat, corrupt the Blood:  
To eat such, when commanded, does us good.  
Drink of his Flagons then, thou Church, his Dove,  
And eat his Apples, who are sick of Love.*

Then said *Matthew*, *I made the Scruple, because I a while since, was sick with eating of Fruit.*

*Gaius*. Forbidden Fruit will make you sick, but not what our Lord has tolerated.

Song 6. 11.  
*A dish of Nuts.*

While they were thus talking, they were presented with another Dish; and 'twas a dish of *Nuts*. Then said some at the Table, *Nuts* spoil tender Teeth; specially the Teeth of Children. Which when *Gaius* heard, he said.

*Hard Texts are Nuts (I will not call them Cheaters,) Whose Shells do keep their Kernels from the Eaters. Ope then the Shells, and you shall have the Meat, They here brought are for you to crack and Eat.*

Then were they very Merry, and sate at the Table a long time, talking of many things. Then said the Old Gentleman, My good Landlord, while we are cracking your *Nuts*, if you please, do you open this Riddle.

*A man there was, tho' some did count him mad,  
The more he cast away, the more he had.*

*A Riddle put  
forth by Old  
Honest.*

Then they all gave good heed, wondring what good *Gaius* would say, so he sat still a while, and then thus replied :

*He that bestows his Goods upon the Poor,  
Shall have as much again, and ten times more.*

*Gaius opens  
it.*

Then said *Joseph*, I dare say Sir, I did not think you could have found it out. *Joseph wonders.*

Oh ! said *Gaius*, I have been trained up in this way a great while. Nothing teaches like Experience ; I have learned of my Lord to be kind, and have found by experience that I have gained thereby. *There is that scattereth, yet increaseth, and there is that withholdeth more than is meet, but it tendeth to Poverty. There is that maketh himself Rich, yet hath nothing, There is that maketh himself poor, yet hath great Riches.* *Prov. 11. 24. Chap. 13. 7.*

Then *Samuel* whispered to *Christiana* his Mother, and said, Mother, this is a very good man's House, let us stay here a good while, and let my Brother *Matthew* be married here to *Mercy*, before we go any further.

The which *Gaius* the Host overhearing, said, *with a very good Will, my Child.*

So they stayed there more than a Month, and *Mercy* was given to *Matthew* to Wife. *Matthew and Mercy are married.*

While they stayed here, *Mercy* as her Custom was, would be making Coats and Garments to give to the Poor, by which she brought up a very good Report upon the Pilgrims.

But to return again to our Story. After Supper, the lads desired a Bed, for that they were weary with Travelling. Then *Gaius* called to shew them their *The Boys go to bed, the rest sit up.*

Chamber, but said *Mercy*, I will have them to Bed. So she had them to Bed, and they slept well, but the rest sat up all Night. For *Gaius* and they were such suitable Company, that they could not tell how to part. Then after much talk of their Lord, themselves, and their Journey, old Mr. *Honest*, he that put forth the Riddle to *Gaius*, began to *nod*. Then said *Great-heart*, What Sir, you begin to be drowsy, come rub up, now here's a Riddle for you. Then said Mr. *Honest*, let's hear it.

Then said Mr. *Great-heart*,

Old Honest  
Nods.

A Riddle.

*He that will kill, must first be overcome :  
Who live abroad would, first must die at home.*

*Hah*, said Mr. *Honest*, it is a hard one, hard to expound, and harder to practise. But come Landlord, said he, I will if you please, leave my part to you, do you expound it, and I will hear what you say.

No, said *Gaius*, 'twas put to you, and 'tis expected that you should answer it.

Then said the Old Gentleman,

The Riddle  
opened.

*He first by Grace must conquer'd be,  
That Sin would mortify.  
And who, that lives, would convince me,  
Unto himself must die.*

It is right, said *Gaius*, good Doctrine and Experience teaches this. For first, until Grace displays itself and overcomes the Soul with its Glory, it is altogether without heart to oppose Sin. Besides, if Sin is Satan's Cords, by which the Soul lies bound, how should it make Resistance, before it is loosed from that Infirmity?

*Secondly*, Nor will any that knows either Reason or Grace, believe that such a man can be a living Monument of Grace, that is a Slave to his own Corruptions.



And now it comes in my mind, I will tell you a Story, A question worth the minding. There were two Men that went on Pilgrimage, the one began when he was young, the other when he was old. The young Man had strong Corruptions to grapple with, the old Man's were decayed with the decays of Nature. The young man trod his steps as even as did the old one, and was every way as light as he; who now, or which of them, had their Graces shining clearest, since both seemed to be alike?

Honest. *The young Man's doubtless. For that which heads it against the greatest Opposition, gives best demonstration that it is strongest. Specially when it also holdeth pace with that that meets not with half so much; as to be sure old Age does not.* A Comparison.

Besides, I have observed that old men have blessed A Mistake. themselves with this mistake; Namely, taking the decays of Nature, for a gracious Conquest over Corruptions, and so have been apt to beguile themselves. Indeed old men that are gracious, are best able to give Advice to them that are young, because they have seen most of the emptiness of things. But yet, for an old and a young to set out both together, the young one has the advantage of the fairest discovery of a work of Grace within him, tho' the old Man's Corruptions are naturally the weakest.

Thus they sat talking till break of Day. Now when the Family was up, *Christiana* bid her Son *James* that he should read a Chapter; so he read the 53d of *Isaiah*. When he had done, Mr. *Honest* asked why it was said, *That the Saviour is said to come out of a dry ground, and also that he had no Form nor Comeliness in him?* Another Question.

*Great*. Then said Mr. *Great-heart*, To the first I answer, because, The Church of the Jews, of which

Christ came, had then lost almost all the Sap and Spirit of Religion. To the second I say, The Words are spoken in the Person of the Unbelievers, who because they want that Eye, that can see into our Prince's Heart, therefore they judge of him by the meanness of his outside.

Just like those that know not that precious Stones are covered over with a homely *Crust*; who when they have found one, because they know not what they have found, cast it again away as men do a common Stone.

Well, said *Gaius*, Now you are here, and since, as I know, Mr. *Great-heart* is good at his Weapons, if you please, after we have refreshed ourselves, we will walk into the Fields, to see if we can do any good. About a mile from hence, there is one *Slay-good*, a *Giant* that doth much annoy the King's Highway in these parts. And I know whereabout his Haunt is, he is Master of a number of Thieves; 'Twould be well if we could clear these parts of him.

*Giant Slay-good assaulted and slain.*

So they consented and went, Mr. *Great-heart* with his *Sword*, *Helmet*, and *Shield*; and the rest with Spears and Staves.

*He is found with one Feeble-mind in his hand.*

When they came to the place where he was, they found him with one *Feeble-mind* in his Hands, whom his Servants had brought unto him, having taken him in the Way; now the Giant was rifling of him, with a purpose after that to pick his Bones. For he was of the nature of *Flesh-eaters*.

Well, so soon as he saw Mr. *Great-heart*, and his Friends, at the Mouth of his Cave with their Weapons, he demanded what they wanted?

*Great.* We want thee: for we are come to revenge the Quarrel of the many that thou hast slain of the Pilgrims, when thou hast dragged them out of the King's

Highway; wherefore come out of thy Cave. So he armed himself and came out, and to a Battle they went, and fought for above an Hour, and then stood still to take Wind.

Slay-good. *Then said the Giant, why are you here on my Ground?*

*Great.* To revenge the Blood of Pilgrims, as I also told thee before; so they went to it again, and the Giant made Mr. *Great-heart* give back, but he came up again, and in the greatness of his Mind, he let fly with such stoutness at the Giant's Head and Sides, that he made him let his Weapon fall out of his Hand. So he smote him and slew him, and cut off his Head, and brought it away to the *Inn*. He also took *Feeble-mind* the Pilgrim, and brought him with him to his Lodgings. When they were come home, they shewed his Head to the Family, and then set it up as they had done others before, for a Terror to those that should attempt to do as he, hereafter.

*One Feeble-mind rescued from the Giant.*

Then they asked Mr. *Feeble-mind* how he fell into his hands?

*Feeble.* Then said the poor man, I am a sickly man, as you see, and because *Death* did usually once a day, knock at my Door, I thought I should never be well at home. So I betook myself to a Pilgrim's Life; and have travelled hither from the Town of *Uncertain*, where I and my Father were born. I am a man of no strength at all, of Body, nor yet of Mind, but would, if I could, tho' I can but *crawl*, spend my Life in the Pilgrim's way. When I came at the Gate that is at the head of the Way, the Lord of that place did entertain me freely. Neither objected he against my weakly Looks, nor against my *feeble-Mind*; but gave me such things that were necessary for my Journey, and bid me hope to the end.

*How Feeble-mind came to be a Pilgrim.*

When I came to the House of the *Interpreter*, I received much Kindness there, and because the Hill *Difficulty* was judged too hard for me, I was carried up that by one of his Servants. Indeed I have found much Relief from Pilgrims, tho' none was willing to go so softly as I am forced to do. Yet still as they came on, they bid me be of good Cheer, and said, that it was the will of their

<sup>1</sup> Thes. 5. 14.

Lord, that Comfort should be given to the *feeble-minded*, and so went on their *own* pace. When I was come up to *Assault-Lane*, then this Giant met with me, and bid me prepare for an *encounter*; but alas, feeble one that I was, I had more need of a *Cordial*. So he came up and took me, I conceited he should not kill me; also when he had

Mark this.

got me into his Den, since I went not with him *willingly*, I believed I should come out alive again. For I have heard, that not any Pilgrim that is taken Captive by violent Hands, if he keeps Heart-whole towards his Master, is by the Laws of Providence to die by the Hand of the Enemy. *Robbed*, I looked to be, and Robbed to be sure I am; but I am as you see escaped with Life, for the which I thank my King as Author, and you, as the Means. Other Brunts I also look for, but this I have

Mark this.

resolved on, to wit, to *run* when I can, to *go* when I cannot *run*, and to *creep* when I cannot *go*. As to the main, I thank him that loves me, I am fixed; my way is before me, my Mind is beyond the *River* that has no Bridge, tho' I am, as you see, but of a *feeble Mind*.

Hon. Then said old Mr. Honest, *Have not you some time ago, been acquainted with one Mr. Fearing, a Pilgrim?*

*Feeble*. Acquainted with him, Yes. He came from the Town of *Stupidity*, which lieth *four Degrees* to the Northward of the City of *Destruction*, and as many off,

of where I was born ; Yet we were well acquainted, for indeed he was mine Uncle, my Father's Brother ; he and I have been much of a Temper, he was a little shorter than I, but yet we were much of a complexion.

*Mr. Fearing  
Mr. Feeble-  
mind's  
Uncle.*

Hon. *I perceive you know him, and I am apt to believe also that you were related one to another ; for you have his whitely Look, a Cast like his with your eye, and your Speech is much alike.*

*Feeble-mind  
has some of  
Mr. Fear-  
ing's Fea-  
tures.*

*Feeble.* Most have said so, that have known us both, and besides, what I have read in him, I have for the most part, found in myself.

*Gaius.* *Come Sir, said good Gaius, be of good Cheer, you are welcome to me, and to my House ; and what thou hast a mind to, call for freely ; and what thou would'st have my Servants do for thee, they will do it with a ready Mind.*

*Gaius Com-  
forts him.*

*Feeble.* Then said Mr. *Feeble-mind*, this is unexpected Favour, and as the Sun, shining out of a very dark Cloud. Did Giant *Slay-good* intend me this Favour, when he stopped me, and resolved to let me go no further ? Did he intend that after he had rifled my Pockets, I should go to *Gaius mine Host* ! Yet so it is.

*Notice to be  
taken of Pro-  
vidence.*

Now, just as Mr. *Feeble-mind*, and *Gaius* were thus in talk ; there comes one running and called at the Door, and told, That about a Mile and an half off, there was one Mr. *Not-right*, a Pilgrim, struck dead upon the place where he was, with a *Thunder-bolt*.

*Tidings how  
one Not-  
right was  
slain with  
a Thunder-  
bolt, and Mr.  
Feeble-  
mind's Com-  
ment upon it.*

*Feeble.* Alas ! said Mr. *Feeble-mind*, is he slain, he overtook me some days before I came so far as hither, and would be my Company-keeper. He also was with me when *Slay-good* the Giant took me, but he was nimble of his Heels, and escaped. But it seems, he escaped to die, and I was took to live.

*What, one would think, doth seek to slay outright,  
Oft-times delivers from the saddest Plight.  
That very Providence, whose Face is Death,  
Doth oft-times, to the lowly, Life bequeath.  
I taken was, he did escape and flee,  
Hands Crost, gives Death to him, and Life to me.*

Now about this time *Matthew* and *Mercy* were Married ; also *Gaius* gave his Daughter *Phebe* to *James*, *Matthew's* Brother to Wife ; after which time, they yet stayed above ten days at *Gaius's* House, spending their time, and the Seasons, like as Pilgrims use to do.

*The Pilgrims  
prepare to go  
forward.*

When they were to depart, *Gaius* made them a Feast, and they did eat and drink, and were merry. Now the Hour was come that they must be gone, wherefore *Mr. Great-heart* called for a Reckoning. But *Gaius* told him that at his House, it was not the Custom for *Pilgrims* to pay for their Entertainment. He boarded them by the year, but looked for his Pay from the good *Samaritan*, who had promised him at his return, whatsoever Charge he was at with them, faithfully to repay him. Then said *Mr. Great-heart* to him.

Luke 10. 33,  
34, 35.  
*How they  
greet one  
another at  
parting.*

3 Joh. 5. 6.

*Great. Beloved, thou dost faithfully, whatsoever thou dost, to the Brethren and to Strangers, which have borne Witness of thy Charity before the Church, whom if thou (yet) bring forward on their Journey, after a Godly sort, thou shalt do well.*

*Gaius his  
last kindness  
to Feeble-  
mind.*

Then *Gaius* took his Leave of them all and of his Children, and particularly of *Mr. Feeble-mind*. He also gave him something to drink by the way.

Now *Mr. Feeble-mind*, when they were going out of the Door, made as if he intended to linger. The which, when *Mr. Great-heart* espied, he said, Come, *Mr. Feeble-mind*, Pray do you go along with

us, I will be your *Conductor*, and you shall fare as the rest.

Feeble. *Alas, I want a suitable Companion, you are all lusty and strong, but I, as you see, am weak ; I chuse therefore rather to come behind, lest, by reason of my many Infirmities, I should be both a Burthen to myself and to you. I am, as I said, a man of a weak and feeble Mind, and shall be offended and made weak at that which others can bear. I shall like no Laughing ; I shall like no gay Attire, I shall like no unprofitable Questions. Nay, I am so weak a Man, as to be offended with that which others have a liberty to do. I do not yet know all the Truth ; I am a very ignorant Christian man ; sometimes if I hear some rejoice in the Lord, it troubles me because I cannot do so too. It is with me as it is with a weak Man among the strong, or as with a sick Man among the healthy, or as a Lamp despised. (He that is ready to slip with his feet, is as a Lamp despised in the thought of him that is at ease.)* So that I know not what to do.

Great. But Brother, said Mr. *Great-heart*. I have it in *Commission*, to comfort the *feeble-minded*, and to support the weak. You must needs go along with us ; we will wait for you, we will lend you our help, we will deny ourselves of some things, both *Opinionative* and *Practical*, for your sake ; we will not enter into Doubtful Disputations before you, we will be made all things to you rather than you shall be left behind.

Now, all this while they were at *Gaius's Door* ; and behold as they were thus in the heat of their Discourse, Mr. *Ready-to-halt* came by, with his *Crutches* in his hand, and he also was going on Pilgrimage.

Feeble. Then said Mr. *Feeble-mind* to him, *Man !*

Feeble-mind  
for going  
behind.

His Excuse  
for it.

Job 12. 5.

Great-  
heart's Com-  
mission.  
1 Thes. 5. 14.

Rom. 14.  
1 Cor. 8.  
A Christian  
Spirit.

1 Cor. 9. 22.

Psalms 38. 17.  
Promises.

Feeble-mind  
glad to see  
Ready-to-  
halt come by.

*How camest thou hither? I was but just now complaining that I had not a suitable Companion, but thou art according to my Wish. Welcome, welcome, good Mr. Ready-to-halt, I hope thee and I may be some help.*

*Ready-to.* I shall be glad of thy Company, said the other; and good Mr. *Feeble-mind*, rather than we will part, since we are thus happily met, I will lend thee one of my Crutches.

*Feeble.* *Nay, said he, tho' I thank thee for thy good Will, I am not inclined to halt afore I am Lame. How be it, I think when occasion is, it may help me against a Dog.*

*Ready-to.* If either my *self*, or my *Crutches* can do thee a pleasure, we are both at thy Command, good Mr. *Feeble-mind*.

Thus therefore they went on, Mr. *Great-heart*, and Mr. *Honest* went before, *Christiana* and her Children went next, and Mr. *Feeble-mind*, and Mr. *Ready-to-halt* came behind with his Crutches. Then said Mr. *Honest*,

*New Talk.*

*Hon.* *Pray Sir, now we are upon the Road, tell us some profitable things of some that have gone on Pilgrimage before us.*

<sup>1</sup> Part, pages  
68-72

*Great.* With a good Will. I suppose you have heard how *Christian* of old, did meet with *Apollyon* in the Valley of *Humiliation*, and also what hard work he had to go through the Valley of the Shadow of Death. Also I think you cannot but have heard how *Faithful* was put to it with *Madam Wanton*, with *Adam* the first, with one *Discontent*, and *Shame*; four as deceitful Villains, as a man can meet with upon the Road.

*Hon.* *Yes, I have heard of all this; but indeed, good Faithful, was hardest put to it with Shame, he was an unwearied one.*



*Great.* Ay, for as the Pilgrim well said, He of all men had the wrong Name.

*Hon.* But pray Sir where was it that Christian and Faithful met Talkative? that same was also a notable one. 1 Part, page 82.

*Great.* He was a confident Fool, yet many followed his ways.

*Hon.* He had like to a beguiled Faithful?

*Great.* Ay, but Christian put him into a way quickly to find him out. Thus they went on till they came at the place where *Evangelist* met with *Christian* and *Faithful*, and prophesied to them of what should befall them at *Vanity-Fair*. 1 Part, page 95.

*Great.* Then said their *Guide*, hereabouts did *Christian* and *Faithful* meet with *Evangelist*, who prophesied to them of what Troubles they should meet with at *Vanity Fair*.

*Hon.* Say you so! I daresay it was a hard Chapter that then he did read unto them?

*Great.* 'Twas so, but he gave them encouragement withal. But what do we talk of them, they were a couple of lion-like Men; they had set their Faces like flint. Don't you remember how undaunted they were when they stood before the Judge? 1 Part, page 102.

*Hon.* Well, Faithful bravely suffered!

*Great.* So he did, and as brave things came on't: For *Hopeful* and some others, as the Story relates it, were Converted by his Death.

*Hon.* Well, but pray go on; for you are well acquainted with things.

*Great.* Above all that *Christian* met with after he had past through *Vanity Fair*, one *By-ends* was the arch one.

*Hon.* *By-Ends*; What was he?

*Great.* A very arch Fellow, a downright Hypo crite 1 Part, page 108.

one that would be Religious, which way ever the World went, but so cunning, that he would be sure neither to lose, nor suffer for it.

He had his *Mode* of Religion for every fresh Occasion, and his Wife was as good at it as he. He would turn and change from Opinion to Opinion; yea, and plead for so doing too. But so far as I could learn, he came to an ill End with his *By-Ends*, nor did I ever hear that any of his Children was ever of any Esteem with any that truly feared God.

*They are come within sight of Vanity.* Now by this time they were come within sight of the Town of *Vanity*, where *Vanity Fair* is kept. So when they saw that they were so near the Town, they consulted with one another how they should pass through the Town, and some said one thing, and some another.

*They enter into one Mr. Mnason's to Lodge.*  
Acts 21. 16.

At last Mr. *Great-heart*, said, I have, as you may understand, often been a *Conductor* of Pilgrims through *this* Town; Now I am acquainted with one Mr. *Mnason*, a *Cyprusian* by Nation, an old Disciple, at whose House we may Lodge. If you think good, said he, we will turn in there?

Content, said Old *Honest*; Content, said *Christiana*; Content, said Mr. *Feeble-mind*; and so they said all. Now you must think it was *Even-tide*, by that they got to the outside of the Town, but Mr. *Great-heart* knew the way to the Old Man's House. So thither they came; and he called at the Door, and the old Man within knew his Tongue so soon as ever he heard it; so he opened, and they all came in. Then said *Mnason* their Host, How far have ye come to-day? so they said, from the House of *Gaius* our Friend. I promise you, said he, you have gone a good stitch, you may well be a weary; sit down. So they sat down.

Great. *Then said their Guide, Come, what Cheer* They are glad of entertainment.  
*Sirs, I daresay you are welcome to my Friend.*

*Mna.* I also, said Mr. *Mnason*, do bid you Welcome ; and whatever you want, do but say, and we will do what we can to get it for you.

*Hon.* *Our great Want a while since, was Harbour and good Company, and now I hope we have both.*

*Mna.* For Harbour you see what it is, but for good Company, that will appear in the Trial.

Great. *Well, said Mr. Great-heart, will you have the Pilgrims up into their Lodging ?*

*Mna.* I will, said Mr. *Mnason*. So he had them to their respective Places ; and also shewed them a very fair Dining-Room where they might be and sup together, until time was come to go to Rest.

Now when they were set in their places, and were a little cheery after their Journey, Mr. *Honest* asked his Landlord if there were any store of good People in the Town ?

*Mna.* We have a few, for indeed they are but a few, when compared with them on the other Side.

*Hon.* *But how shall we do to see some of them ? for the Sight of good Men to them that are going on Pilgrimage, is like to the appearing of the Moon and the Stars to them that are sailing upon the Seas.* They desire to see some of the good People in the Town

*Mna.* Then Mr. *Mnason* stamped with his Foot, and his Daughter *Grace* came up ; so he said unto her, *Grace* go you, tell my Friends, Mr. *Contrite*, Mr. *Holy-man*, Some sent for. Mr. *Love-saint*, Mr. *Dare-not-lie*, and Mr. *Penitent*, that I have a Friend or two at my House, that have a mind this evening to see them.

So *Grace* went to call them, and they came, and after Salutation made, they sat down together at the Table.

Then said Mr. *Mnason*, their Landlord, My Neighbours, I have, as you see, a company of *Strangers* come to my House, they are *Pilgrims*: They come from afar, and are going to Mount *Sion*. But who, quoth he, do you think this is? pointing with his Finger to *Christiana*. It is *Christiana*, the wife of *Christian*, that famous Pilgrim, who with *Faithful* his Brother were so shamefully handled in our Town. At that they stood amazed, saying, we little thought to see *Christiana*, when *Grace* came to call us, wherefore this is a very comfortable Surprize. Then they asked her of her welfare, and if these young Men were her Husband's Sons. And when she had told them they were; they said, The King whom you love, and serve, make you as your Father, and bring you where he is in Peace.

*Some Talk  
betwixt Mr  
Honest and  
Contrite.*

Hon. Then Mr. *Honest* (when they were all sat down) asked Mr. *Contrite* and the rest, in what posture their Town was at present.

*The Fruit of  
Watchful-  
ness.*

*Cont.* You may be sure we are full of hurry in Fair time. 'Tis hard keeping our Hearts and Spirits in any good Order, when we are in a cumbered Condition. He that lives in such a place as this is, and that has to do with such as we have, has Need of an Item, to caution him to take heed, every Moment of the Day.

Hon. *But how are your Neighbors for quietness?*

*Persecution  
not so hot at  
Vanity-Fair  
as formerly.*

*Cont.* They are much more moderate now than formerly. You know how *Christian* and *Faithful* were used at our Town; but of late, I say, they have been far more moderate. I think the Blood of *Faithful* lieth with load upon them till now; for since they burned him, they have been ashamed to burn any more: In those Days we were afraid to walk the Streets, but now we can shew our Heads. Then the Name of a Professor

was odious, *now* specially in some parts of our Town (for you know our Town is large) Religion is counted Honourable.

*Then said Mr. Contrite to them, Pray how fareth it with you in your Pilgrimage, how stands the Country affected towards you?*

*Hon.* It happens to us, as it happeneth to Wayfaring men; sometimes our way is clean, sometimes foul; sometimes up hill, sometimes down hill; We are seldom at a Certainty. The Wind is not always on our Backs, nor is every one a Friend that we meet with in the Way. We have met with some notable Rubs already; and what are yet behind we know not, but for the most part we find it true, that has been talked of of old: *A good Man must suffer Trouble.*

*Cont.* *You talk of Rubs, what Rubs have you met withal?*

*Hon.* Nay, ask Mr. *Great-heart* our Guide, for he can give the best Account of that.

*Great.* We have been beset three or four times already: First *Christiana* and her Children were beset with two Ruffians, that they feared would a took away their Lives; We were beset with Giant *Bloody-man*, Giant *Maul*, and Giant *Slay-good*. Indeed we did rather beset the last, than were beset of him. And thus it was: After we had been some time at the House of *Gaius*, *mine Host and of the whole Church*, we were minded upon a time to take our Weapons with us, and so go see if we could light upon any of those that were Enemies to Pilgrims; (for we heard that there was a notable one thereabouts.) Now *Gaius* knew his *Haunt* better than I, because he dwelt thereabout, so we looked and looked, till at last we discerned the Mouth of his Cave; then we

were glad and pluck'd up our Spirits. So we approached up to his *Den*, and lo when we came there, he had dragged by mere force into his Net, this *poor man*, Mr. *Feeble-mind*, and was about to bring him to his End. But when he saw us, supposing, as we thought, he had had another Prey, he left the poor man in his Hole, and came out. So we fell to it full sore, and he lustily laid about him ; but, in conclusion, he was brought down to the Ground, and his Head cut off, and set up by the Wayside for a Terror to such as should after practise such Ungodliness. That I tell you the Truth, here is the man himself to affirm it, who was as a Lamb taken out of the Mouth of the Lion.

*Feeble.* Then said Mr. *Feeble-mind*, I found this true to my Cost, and Comfort ; to my Cost, when he threatened to pick my Bones every Moment, and to my Comfort, when I saw Mr. *Great-heart* and his Friends with their Weapons approach so near for my Deliverance.

Mr. Holy-  
man's Speech.

*Holy.* Then said Mr. *Holy-man*, there are two things that they have need to be possessed with that go on Pilgrimage, *Courage*, and an *unspotted Life*. If they have not *Courage*, they can never hold on their way ; and if their Lives be loose, they will make the very Name of a *Pilgrim* stink.

Mr. Love-  
saint's  
Speech.

*Love.* Then said Mr. *Love-saint* ; I hope this Caution is not needful amongst you. But truly there are many that go upon the Road, that rather declare themselves Strangers to Pilgrimage, than Strangers and Pilgrims in the Earth.

Mr. Dare-  
not-lie his  
Speech.

*Dare-not.* Then said Mr. *Dare-not-lie*, 'Tis true ; they neither have the *Pilgrim's Weed*, nor the *Pilgrim's Courage* ; they go not uprightly, but all awry with their Feet, one shoe goes inward, another outward, and their

*Hosen out behind*; there a *Rag*, and there a *Rent*, to the disparagement of their Lord.

*Penit.* These things said Mr. *Penitent*, they ought to be troubled for, nor are the Pilgrims like to have that Grace put upon them and their pilgrim's Progress, as they desire, until the way is cleared of such Spots and Blemishes. *Mr. Penitent  
his Speech.*

Thus they sat talking and spending the time, until Supper was set upon the Table. Unto which they went and refreshed their weary Bodies, so they went to Rest. Now they stayed in this Fair a great while, at the House of this Mr. *Mnason*, who in process of time, gave his Daughter *Grace* unto *Samuel*, *Christiana's* Son, to Wife, and his Daughter *Martha* to *Joseph*.

The time as I said, that they lay here, was long (for it was not now as in former times.) Wherefore the *Pilgrims* grew acquainted with many of the good people of the Town, and did them what Service they could. *Mercy*, as she was wont, laboured much for the Poor, wherefore their Bellies and Backs blessed her, and she was there an Ornament to her Profession. And to say the truth, for *Grace*, *Phebe*, and *Martha*, they were all of a very good Nature, and did much good in their place. They were also all of them very Fruitful, so that *Christian's* Name, as was said before, was like to live in the World.

While they lay here, there came a *Monster* out of the Woods, and slew many of the People of the Town. It would also carry away their Children, and teach them to suck its Whelps. Now no Man in the Town durst so much as face this *Monster*; but all Men fled when they heard of the noise of his coming. *A Monster*

The *Monster* was like unto no one Beast upon the Rev. 17. 3.

*His Shape.*

*His Nature.*

Earth. Its Body was like a Dragon, and it had seven Heads and ten Horns. *It made great havoc of Children, and yet it was governed by a Woman.* This *Monster* propounded Conditions to men; and such men as loved their Lives more than their Souls, accepted of those Conditions. So they came under.

Now this Mr. *Great-heart*, together with these tha came to visit the Pilgrims at Mr. *Mnason's* House, entered into a Covenant to go and engage this Beast, if perhaps they might deliver the People of this Town, from the Paw and Mouths of this so devouring a Serpent.

*How he is engaged.*

Then did Mr. *Great-heart*, Mr. *Contrite*, Mr. *Holy-man*, Mr. *Dare-not-lie*, and Mr. *Penitent*, with their Weapons go forth to meet him. Now the *Monster* at first was very Rampant, and looked upon these Enemies with great disdain, but they so belaboured him, being sturdy men at Arms, that they made him make a retreat; so they came home to Mr. *Mnason's* house again.

The *Monster*, you must know, had his certain Seasons to come out in, and to make his attempts upon the Children of the People of the Town; also these Seasons did these valiant Worthies watch him in, and did still continually assault him; insomuch, that in process of time, he became not only wounded, but lame; also he has not made that havock of the Town's-men's Children, as formerly he has done. And it is verily believed by some, that this Beast will die of his Wounds.

This therefore made Mr. *Great-heart* and his Fellows, of great Fame in this Town, so that many of the People that wanted their taste of things, yet had a reverend Esteem and Respect for them. Upon this account therefore it was that these Pilgrims got not much hurt here. True, there were some of the baser sort that could see no



more than a *Mole*, nor understand more than a *Beast*, these had no reverence for these men, nor took they notice of their Valour or Adventures.

Well, the time grew on that the Pilgrims must go on their way, wherefore they prepared for their Journey. They sent for their Friends, they conferred with them, they had some time set apart; therein to commit each other to the Protection of their Prince. There was again, that brought them of such things as they had, that were fit for the weak, and the strong, for the Women, and the men; and so *laded* them with such things as were Acts 28. 10. necessary.

Then they set forwards on their way, and their Friends accompanying them so far as was convenient, they again committed each other to the Protection of their King, and parted.

They therefore that were of the Pilgrims' Company went on, and Mr. *Great-heart* went before them. Now the Women and Children being weakly, they were forced to go as they could bear, by this means *Mr. Ready-to-halt*, and *Mr. Feeble-mind*, had more to sympathize with their Condition.

When they were gone from the Townsmen, and when their Friends had bid them farewell, they quickly came to the place where *Faithful* was put to Death. There therefore they made a stand, and thanked him that had enabled him to bear his Cross so well, and the rather, because they now found that they had a benefit by such a manly Suffering as his was.

They went on therefore after this, a good way further, talking of *Christian* and *Faithful*, and how *Hopeful* joined himself to *Christian* after that *Faithful* was dead.

Now they were come up with the *Hill Lucre*, where 1 Part, page 117.

the *Silver-mine* was, which took *Demas* off from his Pilgrimage, and into which, as some think, *By-ends* fell and perished; wherefore they considered that. But when they were come to the old Monument that stood over against the *Hill Lucre*, to wit, to the Pillar of Salt that stood also within view of *Sodom*, and its stinking Lake, they marvelled, as did *Christian* before, that men of that Knowledge and ripeness of Wit as they were, should be so blinded as to turn aside here. Only they considered again, that Nature is not affected with the Harms that others have met with, specially if that thing upon which they look, has an attracting virtue upon the foolish eye.

<sup>1</sup> Part, page  
122.

I saw now that they went on till they came at the River that was on this Side of the Delectable Mountains. To the River where the fine Trees grow on both sides, and whose Leaves, if taken inwardly, are good against Surfeits; where the Meadows are green all the year long, and where they might lie down safely.

Psal. 23.

By this River side in the meadow, there were Cotes and Folds for Sheep, an House built for the *nourishing*, and bringing up of those Lambs, the Babes of those Women that go on Pilgrimage. Also there was here one that was entrusted with them, who could have compassion, and that could gather these Lambs with his Arm, and carry them in his Bosom, and that could gently lead those that were with young. Now to the Care of *this Man*, *Christiana* admonished her four Daughters to commit their little ones; that by these Waters they might be housed, harboured, succoured, and nourished, and that none of them might *be lacking in time to come*.

Heb. 5. 2.  
Isa. 40. 11.

Jer. 23. 4.  
Ezek. 34. 11,  
12, 13, 14,  
15, 16.

This *man*, if any of them go astray, or be lost, he will bring them again, he will also bind up that which was broken, and will strengthen them that are sick. Here

they will never want Meat and Drink and Cloathing, here they will be kept from Thieves and Robbers, for this man will die before one of those committed to his Trust, shall be lost. Besides, here they shall be sure to have good *Nurture* and Admonition, and shall be taught to walk in right Paths, and that you know is a Favour of no small account. Also here, as you see, are delicate *Waters*, pleasant *Meadows*, dainty *Flowers*, Variety of *Trees*, and such as bear *wholesome Fruit*. Fruit, not like that that *Matthew* eat of, that fell over the Wall out of *Beelzebub's* Garden, but Fruit that procureth Health where there is none, and that continueth and increaseth it where it is.

So they were content to commit their little Ones to him : and that which was also an encouragement to them so to do, was, for that all this was to be at the Charge of the King, and so was as an Hospital to young Children, and *Orphans*.

Now they went on : And when they were come to *By-path* Meadow, to the Stile over which *Christian* went with his Fellow *Hopeful*, when they were taken by *Giant Despair*, and put into *Doubting-Castle*, They sat down and consulted what was best to be done, to wit, now they were so strong, and had got such a man as Mr. *Great-heart* for their Conductor ; whether they had not best to make an Attempt upon the Giant, demolish his Castle, and if there were any Pilgrims in it, to set them at liberty before they went any further. So one said one thing, and another said the contrary. One questioned if it was lawful to go upon *unconsecrated* Ground, another said they might, provided their end was good ; but Mr. *Great-heart* said, Though that Assertion offered last, cannot be universally true, yet I have a Commandment

*They being  
come to By-  
path Stile,  
have a mind  
to have a  
pluck with  
Giant Des-  
pair.*

*1 Part, page  
123.*

to resist Sin, to overcome Evil, to fight the good Fight of Faith. And I pray, with whom should I fight this good Fight, if not with *Giant Despair*? I will therefore attempt the taking away of his Life, and the demolishing of *Doubting-Castle*. Then said he, who will go with me? Then said old *Honest*, I will, and so will we too, said *Christian's* four Sons, *Matthew, Samuel, James, and Joseph*, for they were young men and strong.

1 John 2. 13,  
14.

So they left the Women in the Road, and with them Mr. *Feeble-mind*, and Mr. *Ready-to-halt*, with his Crutches, to be their Guard, until they came back, for in that place tho' *Giant Despair* dwelt so near, they keeping in the Road, *A little Child might lead them*.

Isa. 11. 6.

So Mr. *Great-heart*, old *Honest*, and the four young men, went to go up to *Doubting-Castle*, to look for *Giant Despair*. When they came at the Castle Gate they knocked for entrance with an unusual Noise. At that the old *Giant* comes to the Gate, and *Diffidence* his Wife follows. Then said he, Who, and what is he, that is so hardy, as after this manner to molest the *Giant Despair*? Mr. *Great-heart* replied, It is I, *Great-heart*, one of the King of the Celestial Country's Conductors of Pilgrims to their place. And I demand of thee that thou open thy Gates for my Entrance, prepare thyself also to fight, for I am come to take away thy head, and to demolish *Doubting-Castle*.

Despair has  
overcome  
Angels.

Now *Giant Despair*, because he was a *Giant*, thought no man could overcome him, and again, thought he, since heretofore I have made a Conquest of Angels, shall *Great-heart* make me afraid? So he harnessed himself and went out. He had a Cap of Steel upon his Head, a Breast-plate of Fire girded to him, and he came out in Iron Shoes, with a great Club in his Hand. Then these

six men made up to him, and beset him behind and before; also when *Diffidence*, the *Giantess*, came up to help him, old Mr. *Honest* cut her down at one Blow. Then they fought for their Lives, and *Giant Despair* was brought down to the Ground, *but was very loth to die*. He Despair is loth to die. struggled hard, and had, as they say, as many Lives as a Cat, but *Great-heart* was his death, for he left him not till he had severed his Head from his shoulders.

Then they fell to demolishing *Doubting-Castle*,<sup>1</sup> and Doubting-Castle demolished. that you know might with ease be done, since *Giant Despair* was dead. They were seven days in destroying of that; and in it of Pilgrims, they found one Mr. *Dispondency*, almost starved to Death, and one *Much-afraid* his Daughter; these two they saved alive. But it would a made you a wondered to have seen the dead Bodies that lay here and there in the Castle Yard, and how full of dead men's Bones the Dungeon was.

When Mr. *Great-heart* and his Companions had performed this Exploit, they took Mr. *Dispondency*, and his Daughter *Much-afraid*, into their Protection, for they were honest People, tho' they were Prisoners in *Doubting-Castle* to that Tyrant *Giant Despair*. They therefore I say, took with them the Head of the Giant (for his Body they had buried under a heap of Stones) and down to the Road and to their Companions they came, and shewed them what they had done. Now when *Feeble-mind* and *Ready-to-halt* saw that it was the Head of *Giant Despair* indeed, they were very jocund and merry. Now *Christiana*, if need was, could play upon the *Viol*, and

<sup>1</sup> Tho' *Doubting-Castle* be demolished  
And the *Giant Despair* hath lost his head,  
Sin can rebuild the Castle, make't remain,  
And make *Despair* the *Giant* live again.

*They have  
Musick and  
Dancing for  
Joy*

her Daughter *Mercy* upon the *Lute*: So, since they were so merry disposed, she played them a Lesson, and *Ready-to-halt* would dance. So he took *Dispondency's* Daughter, named *Much-afraid*, by the Hand, and to Dancing they went in the Road. True he could not Dance without one Crutch in his hand, but I promise you, he footed it well; also the Girl was to be commended, for she answered the Musick handsomely.

As for Mr. *Dispondency*, the Musick was not much to him, he was for feeding rather than dancing, for that he was almost starved. So *Christiana* gave him some of her Bottle of Spirits for present relief, and then prepared him something to eat; and in little time the old Gentleman came to himself, and began to be finely revived.

Now I saw in my Dream, when all these things were finished, Mr. *Great-heart* took the Head of *Giant Despair*, and set it upon a Pole by the Highway side, right over against the Pillar that *Christian* erected for a *Caution* to Pilgrims that came after, to take heed of entering into his Grounds.

Then he writ under it upon a *Marble-stone*, these Verses following.

*A Monu-  
ment of De-  
liverance.*

*This is the Head of him, Whose Name only  
In former times, did Pilgrims terrify.  
His Castle's down, and Diffidence his Wife,  
Brave Master Great-heart has bereft of Life.  
Dispondency, his Daughter, Much-afraid;  
Great-heart, for them, also the Man has played.  
Who hereof doubts, if he'll but cast his Eye,  
Up hither, may his Scruples satisfy.  
This Head, also when doubting Cripples dance,  
Doth shew from Fears they have Deliverance.*

When these men had thus bravely shewed themselves

against *Doubting-Castle*, and had slain *Giant Despair*, they went forward, and went on till they came to the *Delectable Mountains*, where *Christian* and *Hopeful* refreshed themselves with the varieties of the place. They also acquainted themselves with the *Shepherds* there, who welcomed them as they had done *Christian* before, unto the *Delectable Mountains*.

Now the *Shepherds* seeing so great a train follow *Mr. Great-heart* (for with him they were well acquainted ;) they said unto him, Good Sir, you have got a goodly Company here ; pray where did you find all these ?

Then *Mr. Great-heart* replied.

*First here's Christiana and her train,  
Her Sons, and her Sons' Wives, who like the Wain,  
Keep by the Pole, and do by Compass steer,  
From Sin to Grace, else they had not been here.  
Next here's old Honest come on Pilgrimage,  
Ready-to-halt too, who I dare engage,  
True-hearted is, and so is Feeble-mind,  
Who willing was not to be left behind.  
Dispondency, good-man, is coming after,  
And so also is Much-afraid, his Daughter.  
May we have Entertainment here, or must  
We further go ? let's know whercon to trust ?*

*The Guide's  
Speech to the  
Shepherds.*

Then said the *Shepherds* ; This is a comfortable Company, you are welcome to us for we have for the *Feeble*, *Their Entertainment.* as for the *Strong* ; our Prince has an Eye to what is done to the least of these. Therefore *Infirmity* must not be a Mat. 25. 40. block to our *Entertainment*. So they had them to the *Palace Door*, and then said unto them, come in *Mr. Feeble-mind*, come in *Mr. Ready-to-halt*, come in *Mr. Dispondency* and *Mrs. Much-afraid*, his *Daughter*. *These Mr. Great-heart*, said the *Shepherds* to the *Guide*, we call

in by name for that they are most subject to draw back : but as for you, and the rest that are *strong*, we leave you to your wonted Liberty. Then said *Mr. Great-heart*, This day I see that Grace doth shine in your Faces, and that you are my Lord's Shepherds indeed ; for that you have not *pushed* these diseased neither with Side nor Shoulder, but have rather strewed their way into the Palace with Flowers, as you should.

*A Description  
of false  
Shepherds.  
Ezek. 34. 21.*

So the feeble and weak went in, and *Mr. Great-heart*, and the rest did follow. When they were also set down, the Shepherds said to those of the weakest sort, what is it that you would have ? For said they, all things must be managed here to the supporting of the weak, as well as the warning of the unruly.

So they made them a Feast of things easy of Digestion, and that were pleasant to the Palate and nourishing ; the which when they had received, they went to their rest, each one respectively unto his proper place. When Morning was come, because the mountains were high, and the day clear ; and because it was the Custom of the Shepherds to shew to the Pilgrims, before their Departure, some Rarities ; therefore after they were ready, and had refreshed themselves, the Shepherds took them out into the Fields, and shewed them first what they had shewed to *Christian* before.

*Mount Marvel.*

Then they had them to some new places. The first was to *Mount-Marvel*, where they looked, and beheld a man at a Distance, *that tumbled the Hills about with Words*. Then they asked the Shepherds what that should mean ? So they told him that that man was the Son of one *Great-grace*, of whom you read in the first part of the Records of the *Pilgrim's Progress*. And he is set there to teach Pilgrims how to believe down, or to

*1 Part, page  
139.*



tumble out of their ways, what Difficulties they shall meet with, by faith. Then said *Mr. Great-heart*, I know him, he is a man above many. Mark 11. 23,  
24.

Then they had them to another place, called *Mount Innocent*. Mount In-  
nocent. And there they saw a man cloathed all in White; and two men, *Prejudice* and *Ill-will* continually casting Dirt upon him. Now behold the Dirt, whatsoever they cast at him, would in little time fall off again, and his Garment would look as clear as if no Dirt had been cast thereat.

Then said the Pilgrims what means this? The Shepherds answered, This Man is named *Godly-man*, and this Garment is to shew the Innocency of his Life. Now those that throw Dirt at him, are such as hate his *Well-doing*, but as you see the Dirt will not stick upon his Cloths, so it shall be with him that liveth truly innocently in the World. Whoever they be that would make such men dirty, they labour all in vain; for God, by that a little time is spent will cause that their *Innocence* shall break forth as the Light, and their Righteousness as the Noon-day.

Then they took them, and had them to *Mount Charity*, Mount  
Charity. where they shewed them a man that had a bundle of Cloth lying before him, out of which he cut Coats and Garments for the Poor that stood about him; yet his Bundle or Roll of Cloth was never the less.

Then said they, what should this be? This is, said the Shepherds, to shew you, That he that has a Heart to give of his Labour to the Poor, shall never want where-withal. He that watereth shall be watered himself. And the Cake that the Widow gave to the Prophet, did not cause that she had ever the less in her Barrel.

*The work of  
one Fool  
and one  
Want-wit.*

They had them also to a place where they saw one *Fool*, and one *Want-wit*, washing of an *Ethiopian* with intention to make him white, but the more they washed him, the blacker he was. They then asked the Shepherds what that should mean. So they told them, saying, Thus shall it be with the vile person; all means used to get such an one a good name, shall in Conclusion tend but to make him more abominable. Thus it was with the *Pharisees*, and so shall it be with all *Hypocrites*.

*Mercy has a  
mind to see  
the hole in  
the Hill.  
1 Part, page  
134.*

Then said *Mercy* the Wife of *Matthew* to *Christiana* her Mother, Mother, I would, if it might be, see the Hole in the Hill; or that commonly called the *By-way* to Hell. So her Mother brake her mind to the Shepherds. Then they went to the Door; it was in the side of a Hill, and they opened it, and bid *Mercy* hearken awhile. So she hearkened, and heard one saying, *Cursed be my Father for holding of my Feet back from the way of Peace and Life*; and another said, *O that I had been torn in pieces before I had, to save my Life, lost my Soul*; and another said, *If I were to live again, how would I deny myself rather than come to this place*. Then there was as if the very Earth had groaned, and quaked under the feet of this young Woman for fear; so she looked white, and came trembling away, saying, Blessed be he and she that is delivered from this place.

*Mercy  
longeth, and  
for what.*

Now when the Shepherds had shewed them all these things, then they had them back to the Palace, and entertained them with what the house would afford; But *Mercy* being a young, and breeding Woman, longed for something that she saw there, but was ashamed to ask. Her Mother-in-law then asked her what she ailed, for she looked as one not well. Then said *Mercy*, *There is a Looking-glass hangs up in the Dining-room, off of*

which I cannot take my mind ; if therefore I have it not, I think I shall miscarry. Then said her Mother, I will mention thy wants to the Shepherds, and they will not deny it thee. But she said, I am ashamed that these men should know that I longed. Nay, my Daughter, said she, it is no Shame, but a Virtue, to long for such a thing as that ; so *Mercy* said, Then Mother, if you please, ask the Shepherds if they are willing to sell it.

Now the Glass was one of a thousand. It would present a man, one way with his own Feature exactly, and turn it but another way, and it would shew one the very Face and Similitude of the Prince of Pilgrims himself. Yea I have talked with them that can tell, and they have said, that they have seen the very Crown of Thorns upon his Head, by looking in that Glass, they have therein also seen the holes in his Hands, in his Feet, and his Side. Yea such an excellency is there in that Glass, that it will shew him to one where they have a mind to see him ; whether living or dead, whether in Earth or Heaven, whether in a state of Humiliation, or in his Exaltation, whether coming to Suffer, or coming to Reign.

*Christiana* therefore went to the Shepherds apart. (Now the Names of the Shepherds are *Knowledge*, *Experience*, *Watchful*, and *Sincere*) and said unto them, There is one of my Daughters a breeding Woman, that, I think doth long for something that she hath seen in this house, and she thinks she shall miscarry if she should by you be denied.

*Experience*. Call her, call her, she shall assuredly have what we can help her to. So they called her, and said to her, *Mercy*, what is that thing thou wouldest

*It was the Word of God.*

James 1. 23.

1 Cor. 13. 12

2 Cor. 3. 18.

<sup>1</sup> Part, page 132.

*She doth not lose her Longing.*

have? Then she blushed and said, The great Glass that hangs up in the Dining-room: so *Sincere* ran and fetched it, and with a joyful consent it was given her. Then she bowed her head and gave thanks, and said, by this I know that I have obtained favor in your eyes.

They also gave to the other young Women such things as they desired, and to their Husbands great Commendations for that they joined with Mr. *Great-heart* to the slaying of *Giant Despair*, and the demolishing of *Doubting-Castle*.

*How the  
Shepherds  
adorn the  
Pilgrims*

About *Christiana's Neck*, the Shepherds put a Bracelet, and so they did about the Necks of her four Daughters, also they put Ear-rings in their Ears, and Jewels on their Foreheads.

When they were minded to go hence, they let them go in Peace, but gave not to them those certain Cautions which before were given to *Christian* and his Companion. The reason was, for that these had *Great-heart* to be their Guide, who was one that was well acquainted with things, and so could give them their Cautions more seasonably, to wit, even then when the Danger was nigh the approaching.

*1 Part, page  
136.*

What Cautions *Christian* and his Companions had received of the Shepherds, they had also lost; by that the time was come that they had need to put them in practise. Wherefore here was the Advantage that this Company had over the other.

*1 Part, page  
147*

From hence they went on Singing, and they said,

*Behold, how fitly are the Stages set!  
For their Relief, that Pilgrims are become;  
And how they us receive without one let,  
That make the other Life, our Mark and Home.*

*What Novelties they have, to us they give,  
That we, tho' Pilgrims joyful lives may Live,  
They do upon us too such things bestow,  
That shew we Pilgrims are, where'er we go.*

When they were gone from the Shepherds, they quickly came to the Place where *Christian* met with one *Turn-away*, that dwelt in the Town of *Apostacy*. Wherefore of him Mr. *Great-heart* their Guide did now put them in mind; saying, This is the place where *Christian* met with one *Turn-away*, who carried with him, the character of his Rebellion at his back. And this I have to say concerning this man, He would hearken to no Counsel, but once a falling, perswasion could not stop him. When he came to the place where the Cross and the Sepulchre was, he did meet with one that did bid him *look there*, but he gnashed with his Teeth, and stamped, and said he was resolved to go back to his own Town. Before he came to the Gate, he met with *Evangelist*, who offered to lay hands on him, to turn him into the way again. But this *Turn-away* resisted him, and having done much *despite* unto him, he got away over the Wall, and so escaped his hand.

Then they went on, and just at the place where *Little-Faith* formerly was robbed, there stood a man with his Sword drawn, and his Face all bloody. Then said Mr. *Great-heart*, What art thou? The man made Answer, saying, I am one whose Name is *Valiant-for-Truth*. I am a Pilgrim, and am going to the Celestial City. Now as I was in my way, there were three men did beset me, and propounded unto me these three things. 1. Whether I would become one of them? 2. Or go back from whence I came? 3. Or die upon the place? To the first I answered, I had been a true Man a long

1 Part, page  
138.

How one  
Turn-away  
managed his  
Apostacy.

Heb. 10. 26,  
27, 28, 29.

One Valiant-  
for-Truth  
beset with  
Thieves.

Prov. 1. 10.  
11, 12, 13, 14.

Season, and therefore, it could not be expected that I now should cast in my Lot with Thieves. Then they demanded what I would say to the second. So I told them that the place from whence I came, had I not found Incommodity there, I had not forsaken it at all, but finding it altogether unsuitable to me, and very unprofitable for me, I forsook it for this way. Then they asked me what I said to the third. And I told them, my Life cost more dear far, than that I should lightly give it away. Besides, you have nothing to do thus to put things to my Choice; wherefore at your Peril be it, if you meddle. Then these three, to wit, *Wild-head*, *Inconsiderate*, and *Pragmatick*, drew upon me, and I also drew upon them.

*How he behaved himself and put them to flight.*

So we fell to it, one against three, for the space of above three hours. They have left upon me, as you see, some of the marks of their Valour, and have also carried away with them some of mine. They are but just now gone. I suppose they might, as the saying is, hear your Horse dash, and so they betook them to flight.

Great-heart  
wonders at  
his Valour.

Great. *But here was great Odds, three against one.*

Psaln 27. 3.

*Valiant.* 'Tis true, but *little and more*, are nothing to him that has the Truth on his side. *Though an Host should encamp against me, said one, My Heart shall not fear. Tho' War should rise against me, in this will I be confident, &c.* Besides, said he, I have read in some Records, that one man has fought an Army; and how many did *Samson* slay with the *Jaw-Bone* of an *Ass*!

Great. *Then said the Guide, Why did you not cry out, that some might a come in for your Succour.*

*Valiant.* So I did, to my King, who I knew could hear, and afford invisible help, and that was sufficient for me.

Great. *Then said Great-heart to Mr. Valiant-for-truth, Thou hast worthily behaved thyself. Let me see thy Sword. So he shewed it him.*

When he had taken it in his Hand, and looked thereon a while, he said, Ha ! *It is a right Jerusalem Blade.* Isa. 2. 3.

*Valiant.* It is so. Let a man have one of *these* Ephes. 6. 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17. *Blades*, with a Hand to wield it, and skill to use it, and he may venture upon an Angel with it. He need not fear its holding, if he can but tell how to lay on. Its Edges will never blunt. It will cut *Flesh*, and *Bones*, Heb. 4. 12. and *Soul*, and *Spirit*, and all.

Great. *But you fought a great while, I wonder you were not weary ?*

*Valiant.* I fought till my sword did cleave to my 2 Sam. 23. 10. Hand, and when they were joined together, as if a Sword The Word. The Faith. Blood. grew out of my Arm, and when the Blood ran through my Fingers, then I fought with most Courage.

Great. *Thou hast done well, thou hast resisted unto Blood, striving against Sin. Thou shalt abide by us, come in, and go out with us ; for we are thy Companions.*

Then they took him and washed his Wounds, and gave him of what they had, to refresh him, and so they went on together. Now as they went on, because Mr. *Great-heart* was delighted in him (for he loved one greatly that he found to be a man of his Hands) and because there were with his Company, them that were feeble and weak ; Therefore he questioned with him about many things ; as first, *what Country-man he was ?*

*Valiant.* I am of *Dark-land*, for there I was born, and there my Father and Mother are still.

Great. *Dark-land*, said the Guide, *Doth not that lie upon the same Coast with the City of Destruction ?*

*How Mr. Valiant came to go on Pilgrimage.*

*Valiant.* Yes it doth. Now that which caused me to come on Pilgrimage was this ; We had one Mr. *Tell-true* came into our parts, and he told it about, what *Christian* had done, that went from the City of *Destruction*. Namely, how he had forsaken his *Wife* and *Children*, and had betaken himself to a *Pilgrim's* Life. It was also confidently reported how he had killed a *Serpent* that did come out to resist him in his Journey, and how he got through to whither he intended. It was also told what Welcome he had at all his Lord's Lodgings ; specially when he came to the Gates of the Celestial City. For there, said the man, He was received with sound of Trumpet, by a company of shining ones. He told it also, how all the Bells in the City did ring for Joy at his Reception, and what Golden Garments he was cloathed with ; with many other things that now I shall forbear to relate. In a word, that man so told the Story of *Christian* and his Travels, that my Heart fell into a burning haste to be gone after him, nor could Father or Mother stay me, so I got from them, and am come thus far on my Way.

*Great.* You came in at the Gate, did you not ?

*He begins right.*

*Valiant.* Yes, yes. For the same man also told us, that all would be nothing, if we did not begin to enter this way at the Gate.

*Christian's Name famous.*

*Great.* Look you, said the Guide, to *Christiana*, *The Pilgrimage of your Husband*, and what he has gotten thereby, is spread abroad far and near.

*Valiant.* Why, is this *Christian's* Wife ?

*Great.* Yes, That it is, and these are also her four Sons.

*Valiant.* What ! and going on Pilgrimage too ?

*Great.* Yes, verily they are following after.



*Valiant.* It glads me at Heart! Good man! How joyful will he be, when he shall see them that would not go with him, yet to enter after him, in at the Gates into the City?

*He is much rejoiced to see Christian's Wife.*

*Great.* Without doubt it will be a Comfort to him; For next to the Joy of seeing himself there, it will be a Joy to meet there his Wife and his Children.

*Valiant.* But now you are upon that, pray let me hear your Opinion about it. Some make a Question whether we shall know one another when we are there?

*Great.* Do they think they shall know themselves then? Or that they shall rejoice to see themselves in that Bliss? And if they think they shall know and do these, why not know others, and rejoice in their Welfare also?

*Again,* Since Relations are our second self, tho' that state will be dissolved there, yet why may it not be rationally concluded that we shall be more glad to see them there, than to see they are wanting?

*Valiant.* Well, I perceive whereabouts you are as to this. Have you any more things to ask me about my beginning to come on Pilgrimage?

*Great.* Yes. Were your Father and Mother willing that you should become a Pilgrim?

*Valiant.* Oh, no. They used all means imaginable to perswade me to stay at Home.

*Great.* Why, what could they say against it?

*Valiant.* They said it was an idle life, and if I myself were not inclined to Sloth and Laziness, I would never countenance a Pilgrim's condition.

*The great stumbling-Blocks that by his Friends were laid in his way.*

*Great.* And what did they say else?

*Valiant.* Why, They told me, that it was a dangerous Way, yea the most dangerous Way in the World, said they, is that which the Pilgrims go.

Great. *Did they show wherein this way is so dangerous?*

Valiant. Yes. And that in many Particulars.

Great. *Name some of them.*

*The First  
Stumbling-  
Block.*

Valiant, They told me of the *Slough of Dispond*, where *Christian* was well-nigh smothered. They told me that there were Archers standing ready in *Beelzebub-Castle*, to shoot them that should knock at the *Wicket-Gate* for Entrance. They told me also of the Wood, and dark Mountains, of the Hill *Difficulty*, of the Lions, and also of the three Giants, *Bloody-man*, *Maul*, and *Slay-good*. They said moreover, that there was a foul *Fiend* haunted the Valley of *Humiliation*, and that *Christian* was, by him, almost bereft of Life. Besides, said they, You must go over the *Valley of the Shadow of Death*, where the *Hobgoblins* are, where the Light is Darkness, where the Way is full of Snares, Pits, Traps, and Ginns. They told me also of *Giant Despair*, of *Doubting-Castle*, and of the *Ruins* that the Pilgrims met with there. Further, they said, I must go over the *Inchanted Ground*, which was dangerous. And that after all this, I should find a River, over which I should find no Bridge, and that that River did lie betwixt me and the *Celestial Country*.

Great. *And was this all?*

*The Second.*

Valiant. No, they also told me that this way was full of *Deceivers*, and of persons that laid await there, to turn good men out of the Path.

Great. *But how did they make that out?*

*The Third.*

Valiant. They told me that Mr. *Worldly Wiseman* did there lie in wait to deceive. They also said that there was *Formality* and *Hypocrisy* continually on the Road. They said also that *By-ends*, *Talkative*, or *Demas*, would go near to gather me up; That the *Flatterer* would catch

me in his Net, or that with green-headed *Ignorance* I would presume to go on to the Gate, from whence he always was sent back to the Hole that was in the side of the Hill, and made to go the By-way to Hell.

Great. *I promise you, this was enough to discourage. But did they make an end here?*

Valiant. No, stay. They told me also of many that *The Fourth.* had tried that way of old, and that had gone a great way therein, to see if they could find something of the Glory there, that so many had so much talked of from time to time; and how they came back again, and befooled themselves for setting a foot out of doors in that Path, to the satisfaction of all the Country. And they named several that did so, as *Obstinate* and *Pliable*, *Mistrust*, and *Timorous*, *Turn-away*, and old *Atheist*, with several more; who, they said, had, some of them, gone far to see if they could find, but not one of them found so much Advantage by going, as amounted to the weight of a Feather.

Great. *Said they anything more to discourage you?*

Valiant. Yes, they told me of one Mr. *Fearing*, who *The Fifth.* was a Pilgrim, and how he found this way so Solitary, that he never had comfortable hour therein, also that Mr. *Dispondency* had like to have been starved therein; Yea, and also, which I had almost forgot, that *Christian* himself, about whom there has been such a noise, after all his ventures for a Celestial Crown, was certainly drowned in the black River, and never went foot further, however it was smothered up.

Great. *And did none of these things discourage you?*

Valiant. No. They seemed but as so many Nothings to me.

Great. *How came that about?*

*How he got  
over these  
Stumbling-  
Blocks.*

*Valiant.* Why, I still believed what Mr. *Tell-true* had said, and that carried me beyond them all.

*Great.* Then this was your *Victory, even your Faith.*

*Valiant.* It was so, I believed and therefore came out, got into the Way, fought all that set themselves against me, and by believing am come to this Place.

*Who would true Valour see,  
Let him come hither ;  
One here will Constant be,  
Come Wind, come Weather.  
There's no Discouragement,  
Shall make him once Relent,  
His first avow'd Intent,  
To be a Pilgrim.*

*Who so beset him round,  
With dismal Stories,  
Do but themselves confound ;  
His strength the more is.  
No Lion can him fright,  
He'll with a Giant Fight,  
But he will have a right,  
To be a Pilgrim.*

*Hobgoblin, nor foul Fiend,  
Can daunt his Spirit :  
He knows, he at the end,  
Shall Life Inherit.  
Then Fancies fly away,  
He'll fear not what men say,  
He'll labour Night and Day,  
To be a Pilgrim.*

<sup>1</sup> Part, page  
150.

By this time they were got to the *Inchanted-Ground*, where the Air naturally tended to make one *drowsy*. And that place was all grown over with *Briars* and *Thorns* ; excepting *here* and *there*, where was an *Inchanted Arbor*, upon which, if a man sits, or in which

if a man sleeps, 'tis a question, say some, whether ever they shall rise or wake again in this World. Over this Forest therefore they went, both one with another, and Mr. *Great-heart* went before, for that he was the Guide, and Mr. *Valiant-for-truth*, he came behind, being there a Guard, for fear lest peradventure some *Fiend*, or *Dragon*, or *Giant*, or *Thief*, should fall upon their rear, and so do Mischief. They went on here each man with his Sword drawn in his Hand; for they knew it was a dangerous place. Also they cheered up one another as well as they could. *Feeble-mind*, Mr. *Great-heart* commanded should come up after him, and Mr. *Dispondency* was under the Eye of Mr. *Valiant*.

Now they had not gone far, but a great Mist and a Darkness fell upon them all; so that they could scarce, for a great while, see the one the other. Wherefore they were forced for some time, to feel for one another, by Words; for they walked not by Sight.

But any one must think, that here was but sorry going for the best of them all, but how much worse for the Women and Children, who both of *Feet* and *Heart* were but tender. Yet so it was, that, through the encouraging words of him that led in the Front, and of him that brought them up behind, they made a pretty good shift to wag along.

The Way also was here very wearisome through Dirt and Slabbiness. Nor was there on *all* this Ground, so much as one *Inn* or *Victualling-House*, therein to refresh the feebler sort. Here therefore was *grunting*, and *puffing*, and *sighing*: While one tumbleth over a Bush, another sticks fast in the Dirt, and the Children, some of them, lost their Shoes in the Mire. While one cries out, I am down, and another, Ho, Where are you? and

a third, the Bushes have got such fast hold on me, I think I cannot get away from them.

*An Arbor on the Inchanting Ground.*

Then they came at an *Arbor*, warm, and promising much refreshing to the Pilgrims ; for it was finely wrought above-head, beautified with *Greens*, furnished with *Benches* and *Settles*. It also had in it a soft *Couch* whereon the weary might lean. This, you must think, all things considered, was tempting ; for the Pilgrims already began to be foiled with the badness of the way ; but there was not one of them that made so much as a motion to stop there. Yea, for ought I could perceive, they continually gave so good heed to the Advice of their Guide, and he did so faithfully tell them of *Dangers*, and of the *Nature* of Dangers when they were at them, that usually when they were nearest to them, they did most pluck up their Spirits, and hearten one another to deny the Flesh. This *Arbor* was called *The slothful's Friend*, on purpose to allure, if it might be, some of the Pilgrims there, to take up their Rest when weary.

*The Name of the Arbor.*

I saw then in my Dream, that they went on in this their *solitary* Ground, till they came to a place at which a man is apt to lose his Way. Now, tho' when it was light, their Guide could well enough tell how to miss those ways that led wrong, yet in the dark he was put to a stand : But he had in his Pocket a Map of all ways leading to, or from the Celestial City ; wherefore he struck a Light (for he never goes also without his *Tinder-box*) and takes a view of his Book or Map ; which bids him be careful in that place to turn to the right-hand way. And had he not here been careful to look in his Map, they had all, in probability, been smothered in the Mud, for just a little before them, and that at the end of the cleanest Way too, was a Pit, none knows how deep,

*The way difficult to find.*

*The Guide has a Map of all ways leading to or from the City.*

full of nothing but Mud, there made on purpose to destroy the Pilgrims in.

Then thought I with myself, who, that goeth on Pilgrimage, but would have one of these Maps about him, that he may look when he is at a *stand*, which is the way he must take. God's Book.

They went on then in this *Inchanted* Ground, till they came to where was another *Arbor*, and it was built by the High-way-side. And in that *Arbor* there lay two men whose Names were *Heedless* and *Too-bold*. These two went thus far on Pilgrimage ; but here being wearied with their Journey, they sat down to rest themselves, and so fell fast asleep. When the Pilgrims saw them, they stood still and shook their heads ; for they knew that the Sleepers were in a pitiful case. Then they consulted what to do, whether to go on and leave them in their Sleep, or to step to them and try to awake them. So they concluded to go to them and wake them ; that is, if they could ; but with this Caution, namely, to take heed that themselves did not sit down nor embrace the offered benefit of that *Arbor*. An Arbor and two asleep therein.

So they went in and spake to the men, and called each by his Name, (for the Guide, it seems, did know them) but there was no Voice nor Answer. Then the Guide did shake them, and do what he could to disturb them. Then said one of them, *I will pay you when I take my Money ;* At which the Guide shook his Head. *I will fight so long as I can hold my Sword in my Hand,* said the other. At that, one of the Children laughed. The Pilgrims try to wake them.

Then said *Christiana*, what is the meaning of this ? The Guide said, *They talk in their Sleep.* If you strike them, beat them, or whatever else you do to them, they Their Endeavour is fruitless.

will answer you after this fashion ; or as one of them said in old time, when the Waves of the Sea did beat upon him, and he slept as one upon the Mast of a Ship, *When I awake I will seek it again.* You know when men talk in their Sleeps, they say anything ; but their Words are not governed, either by Faith or Reason. There is an *Incoherency* in their Words *now*, as there was before betwixt their going on Pilgrimage, and sitting down here. This then is the Mischief on't, when *heedless* ones go on Pilgrimage, 'tis twenty to one, but they are served thus. For this *Inchanted* Ground is one of the last Refuges that the Enemy to Pilgrims has ; wherefore it is as you see, placed almost at the end of the Way, and so it standeth against us with the more Advantage. For when, thinks the Enemy, will these Fools be so desirous to sit down, as when they are weary ; and when so like to be weary, as when almost at their Journey's end ? Therefore it is, I say, that the *Inchanted* Ground is placed so nigh to the Land *Beulah*, and so near the end of their Race. Wherefore let Pilgrims look to themselves, lest it happen to them as it has done to these, that, as you see, are fallen asleep, and none can wake them.

*The light of  
the Word.*  
2 Pet. 1. 19.

Then the Pilgrims desired with trembling to go forward, only they prayed their Guide to strike a Light, that they might go the rest of their way by the help of the light of a Lanthorn. So he struck a light, and they went by the help of that through the rest of this way, tho' the Darkness was very great.

*The Children  
cry for weariness.*

But the Children began to be sorely weary, and they cried out unto him that loveth Pilgrims, to make their way more comfortable. So by that they had gone a little further, a Wind arose that drove away the Fog, so the Air became more clear.



Yet they were not off (by much) of the *Inchanted* Ground ; only now they could see one another better, and the way wherein they should walk.

Now when they were almost at the end of this Ground, they perceived that a little before them, was a *solemn* Noise, as of one that was much concerned. So they went on and looked before them, and behold, they saw, as they thought, a *Man upon his Knees*, with Hands and Eyes lift up, and speaking, as they thought, earnestly to one that was above. They drew nigh, but could not tell what he said ; so they went softly till he had done. When he had done, he got up and began to run towards the *Celestial City*. Then Mr. *Great-heart* called after him, saying, So-ho, Friend, let us have your Company if you go, as I suppose you do, to the *Celestial City*. So the man stopped, and they came up to him. But so soon as Mr. *Honest* saw him, he said, I know this man. Then said Mr. *Valiant-for-truth*, Prithee, who is it ? 'Tis one, said he, that comes from whereabouts I dwelt, his name is *Stand-fast*, he is certainly a right good Pilgrim.

*Stand-fast upon his Knees in the Inchanted Ground.*

*The Story of Stand-fast.*

So they came up one to another and presently *Stand-fast* said to old *Honest*, Ho, Father *Honest*, are you there ? Ay, said he, that I am, as sure as you are there. Right glad am I, said Mr. *Stand-fast*, that I have found you on this Road. And as glad am I, said the other, that I espied you upon your Knees. Then Mr. *Stand-fast* blushed, and said, But why, did you see me ? Yes, that I did, quoth the other, and with my Heart was glad at the sight. Why, what did you think, said *Stand-fast* ? Think, said old *Honest*, what should I think ? I thought we had an honest Man upon the Road, and therefore should have his Company by and by. If you thought not amiss, how happy am I ? But if I be not as I

*Talk betwixt him and Mr. Honest.*

should, I alone must bear it. That is true, said the other ; But your fear doth further confirm me that things are right betwixt the Prince of Pilgrims and your Soul, for he saith, *Blessed is the Man that feareth always.*

*They found him at Prayer.*

*Valiant.* Well, but Brother, I pray thee tell us what was it that was the cause of thy being upon thy Knees, even now? Was it for that some special Mercy laid Obligations upon thee, or how?

*What it was that fetched him upon his Knees.*

*Stand.* Why we are as you see, upon the *Inchanted Ground*, and as I was coming along, I was musing with myself of what a dangerous Road, the Road in this place was, and how many that had come even thus far on Pilgrimage, had here been stopt, and been destroyed. I thought also of the manner of the Death, with which this place destroyeth Men. Those that die here, die of no violent Distemper; the Death which such die, is not grievous to them. For he that goeth away in a *Sleep*, begins that Journey with Desire and Pleasure. Yea such acquiesce in the will of that Disease.

Hon. *Then Mr. Honest interrupting of him said, did you see the two Men asleep in the Arbor?*

Prov. 10. 7.

*Stand.* Ay, ay, I saw *Heedless*, and *Too-bold* there; and for ought I know, there they will lie till they rot. But let me go on in my Tale. As I was thus Musing, as I said, there was one in very pleasant attire, *but old*, that presented herself unto me, and offered me three things, to wit, her *Body*, her *Purse*, and her *Bed*. Now the Truth is, I was both aweary and sleepy, I am also as poor as a *Howlet*, and that, perhaps, the *Witch* knew. Well, I repulsed her once and twice, but she put by my repulses, and smiled. Then I began to be angry, but she mattered that nothing at all. Then she made Offers again, and said, if I would be ruled by her, she would make me

great and happy. For, said she, I am the Mistress of the World, and men are made happy by me. Then I asked her Name, and she told me it was *Madam Bubble*. Madam Bubble, or this vain World. This set me further from her; but she still followed me with Inticements. Then I betook me, as you see, to my Knees, and with Hands lift up, and cries, I pray'd to him that had said he would help. So just as you came up, the Gentlewoman went her way. Then I continued to give thanks for this my great Deliverance; for I verily believe she intended no good, but rather sought to make stop of me in my Journey.

Hon. *Without doubt her Designs were bad. But stay, now you talk of her, methinks I either have seen her, or have read some story of her.*

Stand. Perhaps you have done both.

Hon. *Madam Bubble! Is she not a tall comely Dame, something of a swarthy Complexion?*

Stand. Right, you hit it, she is just such an one.

Hon. *Doth she not speak very smoothly, and give you a Smile at the end of a Sentence?*

Stand. You fall right upon it again, for these are her very Actions.

Hon. *Doth she not wear a great Purse by her Side, and is not her Hand often in it, fingering her Money, as if that was her Heart's delight?*

Stand. 'Tis just so. Had she stood by all this while, you could not more amply have set her forth before me, nor have better described her Features.

Hon. Then he that drew her Picture was a good *Limner*, and he that wrote of her, said true.

Great. This Woman is a *Witch*, and it is by virtue The World. of her *Sorceries* that this Ground is *enchanted*; whoever doth lay their Head down in *her Lap*, had as good lay it

Jam. 4. 4.  
1 John 2. 15.

down upon that Block over which the Ax doth hang ; and whoever lay their Eyes upon her Beauty, are counted the Enemies of God. This is she that maintaineth in their splendor, all those that are the Enemies of Pilgrims. Yea, This is she that has bought off many a man from a Pilgrim's Life. She is a great *Gossiper*, she is always, both she and her Daughters, at one Pilgrim's Heels or other, now commending, and then preferring the excellencies of this Life. She is a bold and impudent Slut ; She will talk with any Man. She always laugheth poor Pilgrims to scorn, but highly commends the rich. If there be one cunning to get Money in a place, she will speak well of him, from house to house. She loveth Banqueting, and Feasting, mainly well ; she is always at one full Table or another. She has given it out in some places, that she is a Goddess, and therefore some do Worship her. She has her times and open places of Cheating, and she will say and avow it, that none can shew a good comparable to hers. She promiseth to dwell with Children's Children, if they will but love and make much of her. She will cast out of her Purse Gold like Dust, in some places, and to some persons. She loves to be sought after, spoken well of, and to lie in the Bosoms of Men. She is never weary of commending her Commodities, and she loves them most that think best of her. She will promise to some Crowns, and Kingdoms, if they will but take her Advice, yet many has she brought to the Halter, and ten thousand times more to Hell.

Stand. *O ! said Stand-fast, What a mercy is it that I did resist her ; for whither might she a drawn me ?*

*Great.* Whither ! Nay, none but God knows whither. But in general to be sure, she would a drawn thee into

*many foolish and hurtful Lusts, which drown men in* <sup>1 Tim. 6. 9.</sup>  
*Destruction and Perdition.*

'Twas she that set *Absalom* against his Father, and *Jeroboam* against his Master. 'Twas she that persuaded *Judas* to sell his Lord, and that prevailed with *Demas* to forsake the Godly Pilgrim's Life; none can tell of the Mischief that she doth. She makes variance betwixt Rulers and Subjects, betwixt Parents and Children, 'twixt Neighbor and Neighbor, 'twixt a Man and his Wife, 'twixt a Man and himself, 'twixt the Flesh and the Heart.

Wherefore good Master *Stand-fast*, be as your Name is, and when you have done all, *stand*.

At this Discourse there was among the Pilgrims a mixture of Joy and Trembling, but at length *they brake* out and sang.

*What Danger is the Pilgrim in,  
How many are his Foes?  
How many ways there are to Sin,  
No living Mortal knows.  
Some of the Ditch shy are, yet can  
Lie tumbling on the Mire:  
Some tho' they shun the Frying-pan,  
Do leap into the Fire.*

After this I beheld, until they were come unto the Land of *Beulah*, where the Sun shineth Night and Day. Here, because they were weary, they betook themselves a while to Rest. And because this Country was common for Pilgrims, and because the Orchards and Vineyards that were here, belonged to the King of the Celestial <sup>1 Part, page</sup>  
<sup>170.</sup> Country; therefore they were licensed to make bold with any of his things.

But a little while soon refreshed them here, for the

Bells did so ring, and the Trumpets continually sound so Melodiously, that they could not sleep, and yet they received as much refreshing, as if they had slept their sleep never so soundly. Here also all the noise of them that walked the Streets, was, *More Pilgrims are come to Town.* And another would answer, saying, And so many went over the Water, and were let in at the Golden Gates to-day. They would cry again, There is now a Legion of Shining ones, just come to Town; by which we know that there are more Pilgrims upon the Road, for here they come to wait for them, and to comfort them after all their Sorrow. Then the Pilgrims got up and walked to and fro: But how were their Ears now filled with heavenly Noises, and their Eyes delighted with Celestial Visions? In this Land, they *heard* nothing, *saw* nothing, *felt* nothing, *smelt* nothing, *tasted* nothing, that was offensive to their Stomach or Mind; only when they tasted of the Water of the River, over which they were to go, they thought that tasted a little bitterish to the Palate, but it proved sweeter when 'twas down.

*Death bitter to the Flesh, but sweet to the Soul.*

In this place there was a Record kept of the Names of them that had been Pilgrims of old, and a History of all the famous Acts that they had done. It was here also much discoursed how the *River* to some had had its *flowings*, and what *ebbings* it has had while others have gone over. It has been in a manner *dry* for some, while it has overflowed its Banks for others.

*Death has its Ebbings and Flowings like the Tide.*

In this place, the Children of the Town would go into the King's Gardens and gather Nosegays for the Pilgrims, and bring them to them with much Affection. Here also grew *Camphire*, with *Spikenard*, and *Saffron*, *Calamus*, and *Cinamon*, with all its Trees of *Frankincense*, *Myrrh*, and *Aloes*, with all *chief* Spices. With these the Pilgrims'

Chambers were perfumed, while they stayed here; and with these were their Bodies anointed to prepare them to go over the *River* when the time appointed was come.

Now, while they lay here, and waited for the good hour; there was a noise in the Town, that there was a *Post* come from the Celestial City, with matter of great importance, to one *Christiana*, the Wife of *Christian* the Pilgrim. So enquiry was made for her, and the house was found out where she was, so the *Post* presented her with a Letter, the contents whereof was, *Hail, Good Woman, I bring thee Tidings that the Master calleth for thee, and expecteth that thou shouldest stand in his Presence, in Cloaths of Immortality, within this ten Days.*

*A Messenger of Death sent to Christiana.*

*His Message.*

When he had read this Letter to her, he gave her therewith a sure Token that he was a true Messenger, and was come to bid her make haste to be gone. The Token was, *An Arrow with a Point sharpened with Love, let easily into her Heart, which by degrees wrought so effectually with her, that at the time appointed she must be gone.*

*How welcome is Death to them that have nothing to do but to die.*

When *Christiana* saw that her time was come, and that she was the first of this Company that was to go over: She called for Mr. *Great-heart* her Guide, and told him how matters were. So he told her he was heartily glad of the News, and could a been glad had the *Post* come for him. Then she bid that he should give advice how all things should be prepared for her Journey.

*Her Speech to her Guide.*

So he told her, saying, Thus and thus it must be, and we that survive will accompany you to the *River-side*.

Then she called for her Children, and gave them her *Blessing*; and told them that she yet read with Comfort the Mark that was set in their Foreheads, and was glad

*To her Children.*

to see them with her there, and that they had kept their Garments so white. Lastly, She bequeathed to the Poor that little she had, and commanded her Sons and her Daughters to be ready against the Messenger should come for them.

To Mr.  
Valiant.

When she had spoken these Words to her Guide and to her Children, she called for Mr. *Valiant-for-truth*, and said unto him, Sir, You have in all places shewed yourself true-hearted, be faithful unto Death, and my King will give you a Crown of Life. I would also intreat you to have an eye to my Children, and if at any time you see them faint, speak comfortably to them. For my Daughters, my Sons' Wives, they have been faithful, and a fulfilling of the Promise upon them, will be their end. But she gave Mr. *Stand-fast* a Ring.

To Mr.  
Stand-fast

To Old  
Honest.

Then she called for old Mr. *Honest*, and said of him, Behold an Israelite indeed, in whom is no Guile. Then said *he*, I wish you a fair day when you set out for Mount *Sion*, and shall be glad to see that you go over the River dry-shod. But she answered, Come *Wet*, come *Dry*, I long to be gone; for however the Weather is in my Journey, I shall have time enough when I come there to sit down and rest me, and dry me.

To Mr.  
Ready-to-  
halt.

Then came in that good Man Mr. *Ready-to-halt* to see her. So she said to him, Thy Travel hither has been with Difficulty, but that will make thy Rest the sweeter. But watch, and be ready, for at an hour when you think not, the Messenger may come.

To Dispond-  
ency and his  
Daughter.

After him, came in Mr. *Dispondency*, and his Daughter *Much-afraid*. To whom she said, You ought with Thankfulness for ever, to remember your Deliverance from the Hands of Giant *Despair*, and out of *Doubling-Castle*. The effect of that Mercy is, that you are brought



with Safety hither. Be ye watchful, and cast away Fear ; be sober and hope to the End.

Then she said to Mr. *Feeble-Mind*, Thou wast delivered from the Mouth of Giant *Slay-good*, that thou mightest live in the Light of the Living for ever, and see thy King with Comfort. Only I advise thee to repent thee of thy aptness to fear and doubt of his Goodness before he sends for thee, lest thou shouldest when he comes, be forced to stand before him for that Fault with blushing.

Now the day drew on that *Christiana* must be gone. So the Road was full of People to see her take her Journey. But behold all the Banks beyond the River were full of Horses and Chariots, which were come down from above to accompany her to the City Gate. So she came forth and entered the *River*, with a *Beckon* of Farewell to those that followed her to the River side. The last word she was heard to say here, was, *I come Lord, to be with thee and bless thee.*

So her Children and Friends returned to their place, for that those that waited for *Christiana*, had carried her out of their Sight. So she went, and called, and entered in at the Gate with all the Ceremonies of Joy that her Husband *Christian* had done before her.

At her Departure her Children wept, but Mr. *Great-heart*, and Mr. *Valiant* played upon the well-tuned Cymbal and Harp for Joy. So all departed to their respective places.

In process of time there came a *Post* to the Town again, and his business was with Mr. *Ready-to-halt*. So he enquired him out, and said to him, I am come to thee in the name of him whom thou hast loved and followed, tho' upon *Crutches*. And my Message is to

*To Feeble-mind.*

*Her last Day and manner of Departure*

*Ready-to-halt Summoned.*

tell thee, that he expects thee at his Table to Sup with him in his Kingdom the next Day after *Easter*. Wherefore prepare thyself for this Journey.

Then he also gave him a Token that he was a true  
 Eccles. 12. 6. Messenger, saying, *I have broken thy golden Bowl, and loosed thy silver Cord.*

After this, Mr. *Ready-to-halt* called for his Fellow Pilgrims, and told them, saying, I am sent for, and God shall surely visit you also. So he desired Mr. *Valiant* to make his *Will*. And because he had nothing to bequeath to them that should survive him, but his *Crutches*, and his good *Wishes*, therefore thus he said.  
 Promises.  
 His Will. *These Crutches, I bequeath to my Son that shall tread in my steps; with an hundred warm wishes that he may prove better than I have done.*

Then he thanked Mr. *Great-heart* for his Conduct, and Kindness, and so addressed himself to his Journey. When he came at the brink of the River, he said, Now I shall have no more need of these *Crutches*, since yonder are Chariots and Horses for me to ride on. The last Words he was heard to say, were, *Welcome Life*. So he went his Way.

His last  
 Words.

Feeble-mind  
 Summoned.

After this, Mr. *Feeble-mind* had Tidings brought him, that the Post sounded his Horn at his Chamber Door. Then he came in and told him, saying, I am come to tell thee that thy Master has need of thee, and that in very little time thou must behold his Face in Brightness. And take this as a Token of the Truth of my Message.

Eccles. 12. 3. *Those that look out at the Windows shall be darkened.*

Then Mr. *Feeble-mind* called for his Friends, and told them what Errand had been brought unto him, and what Token he had received of the truth of the Message. Then he said, Since I have nothing to bequeath to any,

to what purpose should I make a Will? As for my *feeble Mind*, that I will leave behind me, for that I have no need of that in the place whither I go; nor is it worth bestowing upon the poorest Pilgrim: Wherefore when I am gone I desire, that you, Mr. *Valiant*, would bury it in a dunghill. This done and the Day being come, in which he was to depart, he entered the *River* as the rest. His last Words were, *Hold out Faith and Patience*. So he went over to the other Side.

*He Makes  
no Will.*

*His last  
words.*

When Days had many of them passed away, Mr. *Dispondency* was sent for. For a *Post* was come and brought this Message to him, *Trembling Man*, *These are to summon thee to be ready with thy King, by the next Lord's day, to shout for Joy for thy Deliverance from all thy Doubtings*.

*Mr. Dispond-  
ency's Sum-  
mons.*

And said the Messenger, That my Message is true, take this for a Proof; so he gave him *The Grasshopper* to be a Burthen unto him. Now Mr. *Dispondency's*

*Eccles. 12. 5.*

Daughter whose name was *Much-afraid*, said, when she heard what was done, that she would go with her Father. Then Mr. *Dispondency* said to his Friends; Myself, and my Daughter, you know what we have been, and how troublesomely we have behaved ourselves in every Company. My will and my Daughter's is, That

*His Daughter  
goes too.*

our *Disponds*, and slavish Fears, be by no man ever received, from the day of our *Departure*, for ever; For I know that after my Death they will offer themselves to others. For, to be plain with you, they are Ghosts, the which we entertained when we first began to be Pilgrims, and could never shake them off after. And they will walk about and seek Entertainment of the Pilgrims, but for our sakes shut ye the doors upon them.

*His Will.*

*His last Words.* When the time was come for them to depart, they went to the Brink of the *River*. The last Words of Mr. *Dispondency*, were, *Farewell Night, welcome Day*. His Daughter went through the *River* singing, but none could understand what she said.

*Mr. Honest Summoned.* Then it came to pass, a while after, that there was a *Post* in the Town that enquired for Mr. *Honest*. So he came to his House where he was, and delivered to his Hand these Lines: *Thou art Comanded to be ready against this Day seven-night, to present thyself before thy Lord, at his Father's House*. And for a Token that

Eccles. 12. 4. my Message is true, *All thy Daughters of Musick shall be brought low*. Then Mr. *Honest* called for his Friends,

*He makes no Will.* and said unto them, I Die, but shall make no Will. As for my Honesty, it shall go with me; let him that comes after be told of this. When the Day that he was to be gone was come, he addressed himself to go over the *River*. Now the *River* at that time overflowed the Banks in some places. But Mr. *Honest* in his lifetime had spoken to one *Good-conscience* to meet him there, the which he also did, and lent him his hand, and so helped him over. The last Words of Mr. *Honest* were, *Grace Reigns*. So he left the World.

*Mr. Valiant Summoned.* After this, it was noised abroad that Mr. *Valiant-for-truth* was taken with a Summons, by the same *Post* as the other; and had this for a Token that the Summons was true, *That his Pitcher was broken at the Fountain*.

Eccles. 12. 6. When he understood it, he called for his Friends, and told them of it. Then said he, I am going to my Father's, and tho' with great difficulty I am got hither, yet now I do not repent me of all the Trouble I have been at to arrive where I am. *My Sword*, I give to him that shall succeed me in my Pilgrimage, and my

*His Will.*

*Courage and Skill*, to him that can get it. My *Marks and Scars* I carry with me, to be a Witness for me, that I have fought his Battles, who now will be my Rewarder. When the Day that he must go hence, was come, many accompanied him to the River side, into which, as he went, he said, *Death, where is thy Sting?* And as he went down deeper, he said, *Grave, where is thy Victory?* His last words. So he passed over, and all the Trumpets sounded for him on the other side.

Then there came forth a Summons for Mr. *Stand-fast*, Mr. Stand-fast is Summoned (This Mr. *Stand-fast*, was he that the rest of the Pilgrims found upon his Knees in the *Inchanted Ground*.) For the *Post* brought it him open in his Hands. The Contents whereof were, *That he must prepare for a Change of Life, for his Master was not willing that he should be so far from him any longer.* At this Mr. *Stand-fast* was put into a muse; Nay, said the Messenger, you need not doubt of the Truth of my Message, for here is a Token of the Truth thereof, *Thy Wheel is broken at the Cistern.* Eccle. 12. 6. He calls for Mr. Great-heart. Then he called to him Mr. *Great-heart*, who was their Guide, and said unto him, Sir, Although it was not my hap to be much in your good Company in the days of my Pilgrimage, yet since the time I knew you, you have been profitable to me. When I came from home, I left behind me a Wife, and five small Children. His Speech to him. Let me entreat you, at your Return, (for I know that you will go, and return to your Master's House, in hopes that you may yet be a Conductor to more of the holy Pilgrims,) that you send to my Family, and let them be acquainted with all that hath, and shall happen unto me. His Errand to his Family. Tell them moreover, of my happy Arrival to this place, and of the present late blessed Condition that I am in. Tell them also of

*Christian* and *Christiana* his Wife, and how *She* and her Children came after her Husband. Tell them also of what a happy End she made, and whither she is gone. I have little or nothing to send to my Family, except it be Prayers, and Tears for them ; of which it will suffice, if thou acquaint them, if peradventure they may prevail. When Mr. *Stand-fast* had thus set things in order, and the time being come for him to haste him away ; he also went down to the River. Now there was a great Calm at that time in the River, wherefore Mr. *Stand-fast*, when he was about half way in, he stood a while and talked to his Companions that had waited upon him thither. And he said,

*His last words.*

Jos. 3. 17.

This River has been a Terror to many, yea the thoughts of it also have often frightened me. But now methinks I stand easy, my Foot is fixed upon that upon which the Feet of the Priests that bare the Ark of the Covenant stood while *Israel* went over this *Jordan*. The Waters indeed are to the Palate Bitter, and to the Stomach cold ; yet the thoughts of what I am going to, and of the Conduct that waits for me on the other side, doth lie as a glowing Coal at my Heart.

I see myself now at the *end* of my Journey, my *toil-some* days are ended. I am going now to see *that* Head that was crowned with Thorns, and *that* Face that was spit upon, for me.

I have formerly lived by Hear-say, and Faith, but now I go where I shall live by sight, and shall be with him, in whose Company I delight myself.

I have loved to hear my Lord spoken of, and wherever I have seen the print of his Shoe in the Earth, there I have coveted to set my Foot too.

His Name has been to me as a *Civit-box*, yea, sweeter

than all Perfumes. His Voice to me has been most sweet, and his Countenance, I have more desired than they that have most desired the Light of the Sun. His Word I did use to gather for my Food, and for Antidotes against my Faintings. He has held me, and I have kept me from mine Iniquities: Yea, my steps hath he strengthened in his Way.

Now while he was thus in Discourse, his Countenance changed, his *strongman* bowed under him, and after he had said, *Take me, for I come unto thee*, he ceased to be seen of them.

But glorious it was, to see how the open Region was filled with Horses and Chariots, with Trumpeters and Pipers, with Singers, and Players on stringed Instruments, to welcome the Pilgrims as they went up, and followed one another in at the beautiful Gate of the City.

As for *Christian's* children, the four Boys that *Christiana* brought with her, with their Wives and Children, I did not stay where I was, till they were gone over. Also since I came away, I heard one say, that they were yet alive, and so would be for the Increase of the Church in that place where they were for a time.

Shall it be my Lot to go that way again, I may give those that desire it, an Account of what I here am silent about; meantime I bid my Reader *Adieu*.





NOTES.



## NOTES.

### THE FIRST PART.

*Where was a Den.*—As explaining what he meant by this den, Bunyan added the words “The Gaol” to the margin of the third edition of 1679. It is now tolerably certain that the *Pilgrim's Progress* was written in the small town gaol on Bedford Bridge, during a brief imprisonment of six months in 1675-76, and not during Bunyan's twelve years' confinement in the county gaol from 1660 to 1672. There were two gatehouses on the bridge; the one to the north, which was not far from the centre of the bridge, was the one used as a prison. There were steps under the prison chamber leading down to a small island in the river Ouse. The gatehouses were taken down in 1765 and the old bridge itself in 1811. Page 9,  
line 2.

*He brake out with a lamentable cry; saying, what shall I do?* —Bunyan describes his own feeling of despair as one day he sat down upon a settle in Bedford streets and fell into a deep pause about the state to which his sin had brought him: “After long musing I lifted up my head, but methought I saw as if the sun that shineth in the heavens did grudge to give light, and as if the very stones in the street and tiles upon the houses did bend themselves against me.”—*Grace Abounding*, § 188. Page 9,  
line 9.

- Page 9,  
line 11. The passage beginning "In this plight," and ending with the words "What shall I do to be saved?" on p. 10, was first added to the second edition.
- Page 10,  
line 19. *Harsh and surly carriages.*—Carriage formerly meant that which was carried, the baggage. "The *carriages* of an army are termed impedimenta."—Thos. Fuller. It came thus to be applied to the manner in which one person carried himself, as we say, towards another. Elsewhere Bunyan speaks of "Some carriages of the Adversaries of God's Truth with me."
- Page 14,  
line 23. *An endless Kingdom.*—Similar descriptions of heaven to this given by Christian to Pliable are to be found in Bunyan's other works, *Saved by Grace* and *Israel's Hope Encouraged*.
- Page 15,  
line 2. *Scraphims and Cherubins.*—In common with the Authorised Version Bunyan adds the English plural to the Hebrew plural *-im* and the Chaldee plural *-in*.—Gen. iii. 24; Isa. vi. 6.
- Page 18,  
*et seq.* The whole passage relating to Worldly Wiseman was first added to the second edition.
- Page 19,  
line 22. *I beshrow him for his counsel.*—To *beshrew* (Middle English *bischrewen*) means to imprecate a curse on, but it is generally a mild form of imprecation. Florio derives the term from the shrew mouse, to which deadly qualities were once ascribed.
- Page 21,  
line 32. *Wot not what to do* = knew not, from A.S. *witan*, to know. Cf. Gen. xxi. 26; Phil. i. 22.
- Page 29,  
line 7. *Truly, said Christian.*—The whole of this passage, to p. 30, line 2, ending *in no wise are cast out*, is first found in the second edition.
- Page 29,  
line 9. *Betterment.*—Christian means that Pliable was no worse than himself. The word having a Latin termination is improperly formed. Cf. *jumblement*, *rabblement*.

*As I was musing in the midst of my dumps.*—*Dumps* was not always considered a burlesque expression for sorrow. It was formerly the received term for a melancholy strain of music. The singular, *dump*, occurs in the sense of a meditation. "He's in a deep dump now."—Beaumont and Fletcher. It was even applied in the sense of an elegy. Davis of Hereford has a poem entitled "A *Dump* upon the death of the most noble Henric Earle of Pembroke."—(Nares's *Glossary*.)

Page 29,  
line 27.

*He commanded his man to light the Candle.*—Heavenly illumination needful to spiritual penetration.

Page 31,  
line 18.

*The Man whose Picture this is.*—In this passage Bunyan was probably idealising his own friend and pastor John Gifford. It has been made the basis of the idea expressed in the statue erected at Bedford in 1874 to Bunyan himself.

Page 31,  
line 23.

*Parlour full of dust.*—Descriptive of the sinfulness of the flesh.

Page 32,  
line 13.

*Nothing left but Rags.*—The short-sighted wisdom of the world.

Page 33,  
line 28.

*The Clouds rackt at an unusual rate.*—Previous to the seventh edition the word was *rack*. Icelandic *rek*, drift, motion, to move on as the clouds do. *Rack*=a thin cloud, floating vapour. "Which moves the clouds above (which we call the racke) and are not perceived below."—Bacon. In the north the word is sometimes applied to a mist, but this probably by mistake for *reek*, which is a distinct word. The dream here described reminds us of the dreams with which Bunyan tells us his own childhood was visited.—*Grace Abounding*, §§ 5, 6.

Page 39,  
line 12.

*Simple, Sloth, and Presumption.*—The personifications of blindness to spiritual facts, procrastination in acting upon them, and daring in ignoring them.

Page 42,  
line 14.

Page 45,  
line 23.

*The Hill is called Difficulty.*—Familiar as the name of this hill has become, it was nameless in the first edition. By placing the Palace Beautiful at the top thereof Bunyan teaches that blessing is to be enjoyed after difficulty is surmounted.

Page 47,  
line 2.

*Running against him amain.*—All at once, with full power. This is a sea term. To strike *amain* is to let the top-sails fall at their full run, not gently. Cf. *abed, afoot, aground*.

Page 47,  
line 31.

*His foolish Fact.*—Fact is here used somewhat unusually in the sense of guilt. Taylor (1630) thus uses it also :—

“ For the not punishing this *fact* (almost)  
The tribe of Benjamin were slaine and lost.”

Page 48,  
line 6.

*If happily he might find his Roll.*—*Hap* or *happ*, fortune, chance (Scand.) *Happily* is here used corruptly for *haply*. It is thus found also in Shakspeare. “Thy country’s fate, which *happily*, foreknowing may avoid.”—*Hamlet*, I. 1.

Page 48,  
line 30.

*Catch't up*, laid hold of, seized. O. F. *cachier*, a dialectical variety of *chacier*; Low Lat. *caciare*; Ital. *cacciare*, to hunt, to chase. Compare also catch-word, catch-penny, and catch-corner, a child’s game.

Page 49,  
line 20.

*A very stately Palace, the name of which was Beautiful.*—The Jacobean mansion at Elstow, the enlargement of the old house of the Abbess of Elstow, was built by Sir Thomas Hillersden, and as the residence of the Lord of the Manor was one of the conspicuous features of the village. The beautiful porch at the main entrance was almost certainly the work of Inigo Jones. “The harmony of its proportions and the grace of its details show this little edifice to have been the work of a master-hand.” Standing back a little way from the high road to London, which ran through the village, its carriage-drive leading up to this finely-sculptured entrance, the manor-house was at its best in Bunyan’s Elstow days, and may have suggested to him the

conception of "that very stately Palace, the name of which was Beautiful, which stood just by the highway side." Ten years later he worked out this conception in a poetical "Discourse on the building, nature, excellency, and government of the House of God." This is a detailed description of the Christian Church, answering in many of its points to the account of the Palace Beautiful in the text:—

"The road to Paradise lies by her gate,  
Here pilgrims do themselves accommodate  
With bed and board, and do such stories tell  
As do for truth and profit all excel."

It is thought by some that Bunyan must have read the account of the "House of Holiness" in Spencer's *Faery Queen*, Book I. x. 3, 4.

Judge Hoar, Emerson, Hawthorne, and Thoreau are buried near to each other, beneath the same pine trees indeed, in the beautiful cemetery at Concord, Mass. Upon Judge Hoar's tombstone there is the inscription—"The Pilgrim they laid in a large upper Chamber, whose window opened towards the Sun-rising; the name of the Chamber was *Peace*, where he slept till break of day; and then he awoke and sang." In such a connection the words strike one as beautifully expressive of the rest of God, and the awakened life of the resurrection morn.

*They had shewed him the Rarities of that place.*—The whole of this passage, to "solace of Pilgrims" (page 59, line 19), formed the introductory sentences to Dean Stanley's Lectures at Oxford, as "containing a true description of the subjects, method, and advantages of the study of Ecclesiastical History."—Stanley's *Eastern Church*, p. xxiv.

Referring to the same course of Lectures at Oxford, Dean Stanley adds:—"When the course came to an end, and I wished to draw a picture of the prospects yet reserved for the

Page 58,  
line 13.

Page 58,  
line 24.

Page 60,  
line 9.

future of Christendom, I found again that the best words I could supply were those in which, on leaving the Beautiful House, Christian was shown in the distance the view of the Delectable Mountains" . . . "described in words too sacred in part, perhaps, for us to use, but not too sacred for the truth and the hope which I have humbly endeavoured to set before you." The passage quoted extends from page 60, line 9, to "there will make appear," line 26.—*Vide Stanley's Eastern Church*, p. lxxxii., and *Address at Bedford*, 1874, p. 54.

Page 64,  
line 17.

*Thou didst faint at first setting out*, etc.—This parley between Apollyon and Christian was largely anticipated in the first of Bunyan's prison books, a poetical work, entitled *Profitable Meditations*, London, 1661. The fourth section, comprising thirty-one stanzas, is entitled "A Discourse between Satan and the Tempted Soul."

Page 66,  
line 12.

*Brast* = to burst, to break. Mid. Eng. *berstan*, *brestan*. The Teutonic stem is *brast*. Chaucer tells how a fox "thurgh-out the hegges *brast* into the yard." This conflict with Apollyon was selected by Dean Stanley as the subject for the front bas-relief on the pedestal of the Bunyan statue at Bedford, and was executed with great vigour by Mr. Boehm, the sculptor.

Page 67,  
line 9.

*Affront* = encounter, lit. *ad frontem* = to stand face to face. To insult is a secondary meaning. "That affrontede me foull."—"*Piers Plowman*," xxiii. 5.

Page 68,  
line 7.

*Hobgoblins*, *Satyrs*, etc.—*Hob-goblin*, made up of Hob, a popular corruption of Robin, a clown, a rustic, a fairy; and *goblin*, Low Lat. *gobelinus*, a sprite, a demon. *Satyrs* is from Isa. xiii. 21 A.V., "Owls shall dwell there, and *satyrs* shall dance there."

Page 68,  
line 27.

*A very dangerous Quag*.—*Quag* for *quag-mire* = *quake-mire*, boggy, yielding ground.



*Giants Pope and Pagan.*—Roman Catholic Versions of the *Pilgrim's Progress* naturally leave out this reference to Giant Pope. A French edition thus revised was published in 1788, "avec approbation et permission," and signed by the Marquis de Villeron and Monseigneur Dumirail. Earlier still, in 1772, an edition inscribed with the approbation of "Genet, docteur de la maison et Société de Sorbonne," has Giant Pope left out, and prayers bound up with it to be said before and after mass, together with anthems to the Virgin. Page 72,  
line 9.

*Leered away* = sneaked away. "A leery fellow" is one who endeavours to escape observation; from the verb "to leer," to look obliquely. Page 75,  
line 5.

*Bravadoes*, vain boasts. Spanish *bravada*. Page 81,  
line 33.

*You lie at the catch*, i.e. you lie wait to entrap; from *caciare*, to chase. *Vide* note to page 48, line 30. Page 90,  
line 11.

*Vanity Fair.*—The City of Destruction and the Town of Vanity differ in that the former is related to a man's own personal religious life, while the latter shows how he in his awakened condition is regarded by the world around him. The one is central to the secret, the other to the external conflict. Vanity Fair, therefore, is some way on the journey, when the pilgrim, having had some spiritual training, sees the world in its true light. The fair which was the historical basis of Vanity Fair was probably that held for centuries at Sturbridge near Cambridge, and which, like the great fairs of Frankfort, Leipsic, and Novgorod, lasted for weeks. It was proclaimed by the Vice-Chancellor, and opened in state by the Mayor. It had its long line of booths named in rows after the forms of traffic there carried on; its Great One of the fair, and its court of Pie Powder (*pied poudrè*, i.e. dusty foot) where justice between buyer and seller was administered on the spot. It was a vast Page 97,  
line 14.

emporium of commerce for all parts of the world, and when business was over pleasure began, with its exhibition of drolls, legerdemain, mountebanks, giants, rope-dancers, and the like.

Page 99,  
line 17.

*Bedlams and Outlandish-men.*—*Bedlams*,<sup>s</sup> i.e. lunatics, a corruption from Bethlehem, meaning the hospital of St. Mary of Bethlehem, a royal foundation for the reception of lunatics, incorporated by Henry VIII. in 1547. *Outlandish*, foreign, not native. "A stranger, outlandish man or forrener."—*Nomenclator*. In Nehemiah xiii. 26 we have a reference to "outlandish women" in the same sense. The association of "grotesqueness" came later.

Page 102,  
line 14.

*All-wise dispose.*—In the sense of disposal. Milton speaks of "what the unsearchable *dispose* of Highest Wisdom brings about."—*Samson*.

Page 103,  
line 9.

*Pickthank*, a flatterer.

"The *Pickthank's* bannish'd the Ausonian gate,  
The lives of princes from their gifts take date."

Fletcher's *Poems*, p. 127.

Page 105,  
line 15.

*Vile Runagate.*—The Mid. Eng. *renecat*, was thought to mean run-a-gate (*gate*, a way) = runaway, but it really means apostate or villain. "A false knight and a renegade."—Gower, *Conf. Am.* vi. 2.

Page 105,  
line 32

*Rabblement.*—Halliwell gives *rabble*, to speak confusedly, and *rabblement*, a crowd or mob, so named from the noise they make. "The rabblement hooted and clapp'd their chopt hands."—*Julius Cæsar*, I. 2.

Page 109  
line 20.

*Mr. Any-thing.*—This character reappears in the *Holy War*. He is described as "a brisk man in the broil; but both sides were against him, because he was true to none."

*To jump in my Judgment.*—To fall in with ; exactly, just, Page 110,  
line 24.  
pat. “*Jump at this dead hour.*”—*Hamlet*, I. i. 65. “Both  
our inventions meet and *jump* in one.”—*Taming of the Shrew*,  
I. i. 295.

The whole account of the interview between By-ends and his Page 111,  
line 18.  
companions was first introduced in the third edition.

*Cousenage.*—Usually spelt *cozenage*, but really evolved from Page 111,  
line 30.  
*cousin*. Fr. *cousiner*, “to claim kindred for advantage, as he  
who to save charges in travelling goes from house to house as  
*cosin* to the honour of every one.”—Cotgrave. So in modern  
French, *cousiner* is to call cousin, to sponge, to live upon other  
people.—Hamilton and Legros.

*A stalking-horse.*—A horse, real or fictitious, by which a fowler Page 116,  
line 7.  
screens himself from the sight of the game. “What a slie  
buzzard it is! A man can scarce get a shoot at him with a  
*stalking horse*. He has been scar'd sure.”—Clarke's *P. P.*,  
1655.

*Simon the Witch.*—*Witch* has in some editions been altered Page 116,  
line 28.  
to *wizard*. But quite needlessly, for the word was not originally  
confined to the *female* exercise of magical arts.—Trench's  
*Glossary*. “There was a man in that citie whose name was  
Symount a *wicche*.—Acts viii. 9. Wiclif.

The whole of this passage relating to Lot's wife was first Page 119,  
line 27.  
inserted in the second edition.

*Her name was Diffidence.*—Diffidence is now rather a gentle Page 126,  
line 8.  
word, expressing a not unbecoming trust of one's own self, but  
it was once used in a much stronger sense as implying distrust  
of others, carried to the extent of withholding all faith from  
them, and being nearly allied to despair. “Needless diffi-  
dences, banishment of friends.”—*King Lear*, I. 2. Cf. Trench's  
*Glossary*.

Page 128,  
line 27. *A Swoond*.—A swoon or fainting fit. The final *d* is radical. A.S. *swindan*. "When that she *swounded* next for lak of blode."—Chaucer, *Squire's Tale*.

Page 132,  
line 31. *The names of the Shepherds were Knowledge, Experience, Watchful, and Sincere*.—There were four, as if to show that neither Knowledge, Experience, Watchfulness, nor Sincerity is sufficient alone—all must be combined.

Page 135,  
line 24. *Perspective Glass*.—*Perspective* embraced the idea both of the telescope and the microscope. Minshen (1627) speaks of "the *perspective* or optike art" in this broader sense. "Whereof, besides comets and new stars, *perspectives* begin to tell tales."—Sir T. Brown, *Hydrotaphia*. "A tiny mite, which we can scarcely see without a *perspective*."—Oldham's *Satires*. Whitlock (*Zootomia*, p. 535) uses the word in the same sense as Bunyan, as a spiritual telescope: "Look through faith's *perspective* with the magnifying end on invisibles (for such is its fame, it lesseneth visibles), and thou wilt see sights not more strange than satisfying."

Page 136,  
line 9. *So I awoke from my Dream*.—The meaning of this break is not quite clear. It is not required by the course of the narrative, with which it somewhat interferes. My own impression is, that it marks the point at which Bunyan had arrived in the story when he was released from prison after his short imprisonment of six months in 1675-76. If this be so, the next sentence, "And I slept and dreamed again, and saw the same two Pilgrims going down the mountains," would mark the resuming of the narrative after his release.

Page 139,  
line 17. *To scrabble on his way*.—*Scrabble* is a midland word, which means to contend against difficulties in obtaining a livelihood. "I have hard work to get a living, but I hope I shall manage to *scrabble* on."—Baker's *Glossary of Northants*. Evans give *scrattle* as the Leicestershire equivalent.

*Christian snibbeth his fellow.*—*Snib*, to check, scold, reprimand. An old form *sneb* or *snib of snub*. Mid. Eng. *sniben*. "Him woulden he snibben sharply for the nones." A very ancient word: "To *snybbyn* reprehendo."—*Promp. Parv.* "*Snybbyd* of my frendys."—Lydgate's *Minor Poems*, p. 256. Page 140,  
line 33,  
margin.

*That Caitiff did.*—The same word as *captive*, only that the latter comes directly from the Latin, and *caitiff* through Norman-French. "The rich Cræsus, *caitiff* in servage."—Chaucer, *The Knight's Tale*. Subordinately, a miserable man, a wretch. In provincial usage it sometimes means a cripple. Page 141,  
line 15.

*Heman.*—This name being unknown to some editor, was altered to Haman, but as this did not suit the context, it was boldly altered to Mordecai. It so appears in Southey's edition of 1830. Heman, of course, is right, and refers to the Ezrahite with whose wisdom Solomon's was compared (1 Kings iv. 31), and who, as the inscription shows, wrote one of our most plaintive Psalms, the 88th. Page 144,  
line 18.

*At their Whistle*, ready to come at call. Page 144,  
line 20.

*I saw then in my Dream*, etc.—The Inchaned Ground not far from the Delectable Mountains, for danger often lies close to blessing. Page 150,  
line 14.

In the detailed account of Hopeful's conversion, we have probably Bunyan's own experience. Page 151,  
line 15.

*Ask my fellow if I be a Thief.*—A proverbial expression, in which one thief appeals to another thief for testimony of his honesty. Page 160,  
line 13.

## THE SECOND PART.

Page 202,  
line 26.     *By root-of-Heart*, by rote, along a beaten track, with constant repetition, routine.

Page 206  
line 14.     *Christiana and Mercy*.—It has been suggested that in *Christiana Bunyan* idealised his second wife, Elizabeth, and in *Mercy* the wife of his youth at Elstow.

Page 208,  
line 33.     *Ascertained*, made certain ; *certus*, sure. This word has become weaker ; now it means to acquire a certain knowledge of a thing, but once it meant to render the thing itself certain. "The nearer we approached the more *ascertained* I was that he must have it under his arm."—Francion : "By hardening him in his sin to *ascertain* his destruction."—*South's Sermons*, v. 286.

Page 218,  
line 9.     *Did Plash them*.—*Plash, splash* (Swed. *plaska*), and variant forms are extensions from the base *plat*, and this again of *plak*, to strike (Lat. *plaga*, a blow). In Northamptonshire *plash* means to trim the sides of a hedge, to cut off the brushy wood and interweave branches.

"Cut vines and osier,  
*Plash* hedge of enclosure.—*Tusser*.

Page 227,  
line 25.     *Variety of Flowers*.—This beautiful passage was anticipated by Bunyan in a little work entitled *Christian Behaviour*, published early in his prison life, some twenty years before.

“When *Christians* stand every one in their places, and do the work of their relations, then they are like the flowers in the garden that stand and grow where the gardener hath planted them, and then they shall both honour the garden in which they are planted and the gardener that hath so disposed of them. From the hyssop on the wall to the cedar in Lebanon their fruit is their glory.”

*That soweth Cockle.*—A troublesome weed in cornfields, the *agrostemna githago* of Linnæus. “Sow’d cockle, reap’d no corn.”—*Love’s Labour Lost*, iv. 3. Page 229,  
line 20.

*Her Husband cried her down at the Cross.*—Refers to the custom of a husband publishing at the market cross that he would no longer be answerable for the debts of his wife. With the common people it was erroneously supposed to relieve a husband from the duty of maintaining his wife. Page 258,  
line 3.

*Ex Carne et Sanguine Christi.*—“Of the flesh and blood of Christ.” There is to this a characteristically modest note in the margin: “The Lattine I borrow.” Elsewhere he uses the expressions *ad infinitum*, *primum mobile*, and *probatum est*. Page 259,  
line 17.

*A pair of excellent Virginals.*—An old musical instrument, so called because played upon by young girls. Lat. *virginalis*, Fr. *virginal*, belonging to a virgin. It has been said that this name was given to it out of compliment to Queen Elizabeth, who was very fond of the instrument, and a skilful performer upon it. According to Canon Venables the “Virginal Book” composed for her by William Bird, the organist of Lincoln Cathedral, is still in existence. The name, however, was in existence as early as 1530. “A pair of virginals” is analogous in expression to “a pair of organs,” which was the common term for what we now call “an organ.” The virginal was an instrument of the spinet kind, but made rectangular, a like Page 264,  
line 18.

small pianoforte, while the spinet was nearly triangular in shape ; the wires of the spinet, moreover, were carried over a bent bridge, which modified their sounds, while those of the virginal went direct from their points of support to the screw-pegs, regularly decreasing in length from the deepest bass to the highest treble.—Nares's *Glossary*.

Page 265,  
line 23. *A Gold Angel*.—An ancient gold coin, varying in value from 6s. 8d. to 10s., and so called because bearing the figure of an angel. Angel gold was of a finer kind than crown gold. "What is an angel but a lawyer's fee."—*Wil's Recreations*, Epig. 594.

Page 272,  
line 4. *Even Hercules himself*.—One of the very few classical allusions made by Bunyan. In the *Holy War* he introduces the Roman Furiae or Dirae, Alecto, Tisephone, and Megaera, as the confederates of Diabolus, "for these," says he, "are the names of the dreadful Furies of Hell." He also makes Cerberus the Keeper of the gate of Hell, and Lord Python one of the heads of the army of Diabolus.

Page 273,  
line 33. *A great padding pace*.—*Pad*, a beaten footpath ; *foot-pad*, a thief on the high-road, one who goes upon the pad or footpath. Deriv. to travel on foot : "I shall pad it."—Baker's *Northants Glossary*.

Page 282,  
line 15. *Most an end—on end*, that is continually, from beginning to end.

Page 287,  
line 14. *Sackbut*.—A bass trumpet. The word is supposed by some to be a corruption of the Latin *sambuca* ; but the sackbut was a wind instrument, resembling the modern trombone, while the *sambuca* was a stringed instrument.

Page 295,  
line 12. *There was Ignatius*, etc.—These are references to Church History for which Bunyan was indebted to his favourite work, Fox's *Book of Martyrs*,



*Mr. Mnason stamped with his Foot.*—The common way of summoning servants before the introduction of bells. Page 311,  
line 26.

*Has Need of an Item.*—Halliwell gives a provincial use of *Item*, as meaning a hint. Page 312,  
line 23.

*Like the Wain, keep by the Pole.*—An allusion to the constellation known as the Great Bear, commonly called Charles's Wain. A line drawn through two of its stars points to the Pole Star. Page 323,  
line 14.

*A man of his Hands*—*i.e.* a man who knew how to use them in warfare. "Ay, and he's a tall fellow, and a *man of his hands* too."—*Wily Beg.*, Origin of Drama III. 349. Page 331,  
line 26.

*As poor as a Howlet*—*i.e.* the barn or white owl, a proverbial expression. Elsewhere Bunyan says of Badman and his wife that by their folly they brought their noble to ninepence and parted as poor as Howlets. Page 342,  
line 29.

*Madam Bubble.*—This vain world. Canon Venables in his notes quotes in illustration from Quarles's *Emblems*: Page 343,  
line 16.

" My soul, what's lighter than a feather? Wind.  
Than Wind? The fire. And what than fire? The mind.  
What's lighter than the mind A thought. Than thought?]  
This bubble world. What than this bubble? Naught."



## INDEX.

- ABRAHAM'S MOUNT, 264.  
 Adam, The first, 76, 308.  
*Affront*, 67, 364.  
*Amain*, 47, 362.  
 Anchor, The golden, 264.  
*Angel, A gold*, 265, 372.  
 Any-thing, Mr., 109, 366.  
 Apollyon, 62, 82, 97, 267, 270,  
 273, 364.  
 Apostacy, Town of, 138, 329.  
 Apples and Nuts, 298.  
 Arbour on the Hill, The, 46.  
 Armoury, The, 58.  
*Ascertained*, 208, 370.  
 Assault-lane, 304.  
 Atheist, 148.  
 Author's Apology, 1.  
  
 Bacon, Lord, 361.  
*Badman, Mr.*, vii., 373.  
 Baker's *Glossary*, 368.  
 Bath of Sanctification, The, 233.  
 Bat's-eyes, Mrs., 206.  
 Beaumont and Fletcher, 361.  
 Beautiful, The Palace, 49, 248,  
 285, 362.  
 Bedford Gaol, v., 9, 359.  
 Bedlam, 99, 100, 366.  
  
 Beelzebub's Castle, 28.  
 „ Garden, 218.  
*Beshrow*, 19, 360.  
*Betterment*, 29, 360.  
 Beulah, Land of, 170, 345.  
 Birds, The Country, 266.  
 Blindman, Mr., 106.  
 Bountiful, Mercy's sister, 257.  
*Bravadoes*, 81, 365.  
*Brast*, 66, 364.  
 Brisk, Mr., 256.  
 Britain Row, 98.  
 Broadway-gate, 138.  
 Brown's *Hydrotaphia*, 368.  
 Bubble, Madam, 343, 373.  
 Butcher and Sheep, The, 227.  
 By-ends, Mr., 108, 309, 367.  
 By-path Meadow, 123, 319.  
 By-way to Hell, A, 180, 326.  
  
*Caitiff*, 141, 369.  
 Carnal-delight, 104.  
 Carnal Policy, 18.  
*Carriages*, 10, 360.  
*Catch. To lie at the*, 90, 365.  
*Catch'd up*, 48, 362.  
 Catechised, The boys, 253.

- Celestial City, The, 141, 172, 175.  
 Charity, 51, 252.  
 Chaucer, 364, 368, 369.  
*Christian Behaviour*, 370.  
 Christiana's Departure, 349.  
 „ Dream, 200, 221.  
 Civility, Mr., 21, 25.  
*Cockle*, 229, 371.  
 Come wind, come weather, 336.  
 Conceit, Country of, 136.  
 Contrite, Mr., 311, 316.  
 Cornfield, The, 227.  
 Cotgrave, 367.  
*Cousenage*, 111, 367.  
 Coveting, County of, 111.  
 Cross, The, 41, 235.  
*Cross, To cry down at the*, 258, 371.  
 Crossing the River, 174.  
 Cruelty, Mr., 106.  
  
 Danger, The way, 46.  
 Dare-not-lie, Mr., 311, 316.  
 Dark-land, 331.  
 Davis of Hereford, 361.  
 Dead-man's-lane, 138.  
 Deceit, Town of, 76.  
 Delectable Mountains, The, 60, 131, 323, 364, 369.  
 Demas, 117, 317.  
 Den, The, 9.  
 Desire-of-Vain-glory, Lord, 104.  
 Despond, Slough of, 15, 17, 210, 282.  
 Destruction, City of, 10, 18, 27, 196, 280.  
 Difficulty, The Hill, 45, 242, 285, 362.  
  
*Diffidence*, 126, 320, 367.  
 Discontent, 78, 308.  
 Discretion, 51.  
 Dispondency, Mr., 321, 351.  
*Dispose*, 102, 366.  
 Doubting Castle, 125, 319, 321.  
 Dream of Judgment, The, 39, 224.  
 Dreamer awakes, The, 136, 368.  
 Dull, The young woman, 241.  
*Dumps*, 29, 361.  
  
 Ease, The plain called, 117.  
 Enmity, Mr., 106.  
 Entrance into the City, 179.  
 Envy, The witness, 103.  
 Error, The Hill called, 133.  
 Evangelist, 11, 22, 95.  
 Eve's Apple, 263.  
 Experience, 132, 327.  
  
 Facing-both-ways, Mr., 109.  
*Fact*, 47, 362.  
*Faëry Queen, The*, viii., 363.  
 Faint-heart, 138.  
 Fair-speech, The Town of, 109.  
 „ Lord, 109.  
 Faithful, 61, 70, 73.  
 „ Martyrdom of, 107, 309.  
 „ Trial of, 102.  
 Fear, Right, 166.  
 Fearing, Mr., 282, 304.  
 Feeble-mind, Mr., 302, 306, 350.  
 Feigning, Lady, 109.  
 Filth, Mrs., 208.  
 Fire unquenched, 35.  
 Flatterer, The, 146.  
 Fletcher's *Poems*, 366.

- Fool, One, 326.  
 Forgetful-green, 270.  
 Formalist, 43, 242.  
 Fox's *Book of Martyrs*, 295, 372.  
 Francion, 370.  
 French Row, 98.  
  
 Gaius mine host, 293.  
 Garden of Flowers, The, 227, 370.  
 German Row, 98.  
 Giant Despair, 129, 319.  
   ,, Grim, 246, 264.  
   ,, Maul, 276, 313.  
   ,, Pagan, 72.  
   ,, Pope, 72, 365.  
 Gifford, John, 361.  
 Godly-man, Mr., 325.  
 Going back, Causes of, 168, 169.  
 Good-confidence, 139.  
 Good-conscience, 352.  
 Good-will, 27.  
 Gower's *Confessio Amantis*, 366.  
*Grace Abounding*, 360, 361.  
 Graceless, 50.  
   ,, Town of, 167.  
 Great-grace, 139, 143, 324.  
 Great-heart, 234.  
 Greedy, Lord Having, 104.  
 Gripe-man, Mr., 111.  
 Guilt, 138.  
  
 Halliwell's *Dictionary*, 366, 373.  
*Happily*, 48, 362.  
 Hate-good, Lord, 102.  
 Hate-light, Mr., 106.  
 Heady, Mr., 106.  
 Heavenly Host, The, 177.  
 Heedless, 276, 339.  
  
 Heman, 144, 369.  
 Hen and Chickens, The, 226.  
 Hercules, 272, 372.  
 High-mind, Mr., 106.  
 Hoar's tombstone, 363.  
 Hobgoblins, 68, 286, 364.  
 Hold-the-world, Mr., 111.  
 Holy-man, Mr., 311, 316.  
*Holy War*, The, 366, 372.  
 Honest, Old, 279, 308, 312, 320, 341, 352.  
 Honesty, Town of, 167.  
 Hopeful, 108.  
 Hopeful's conversion, 108.  
*Howlet, As poor as a*, 342, 373.  
 Humble-mind, 249.  
 Humiliation, The Valley of, 61, 78, 267, 268, 285.  
  
 Ignatius, 295, 372.  
 Ignorance, 136, 158, 179.  
 Ill-favoured ones, Two, 218.  
 Ill-will, 325.  
 Implacable, Mr., 106.  
 Incharmed Ground, 150, 336, 369.  
 Inconsiderate, 330.  
 Inconsiderate, Mrs., 206.  
 Innocent, 223.  
 Interpreter's House, 30, 222, 284.  
*Israel's Hope Encouraged*, 360.  
 Italian Row, 98.  
*Item*, 312, 373.  
  
 Jacob's Ladder, 263.  
*Jump*, 110, 367.  
  
 Knowledge, 132, 327.

- Know-nothing, Mrs., 206.  
 Latin, Bunyan's, 259, 371.  
 Lechery, Lord, 104.  
 „ Mr., 208.  
*Leered*, 75, 365.  
 Legality, Mr., 20, 25.  
 Light-mind, Mrs., 206.  
 Linger-after-lust, 241.  
 Lions, The, 49, 71, 245, 285.  
 Little-faith, 138.  
 Live-loose, Mr., 106.  
 Looking-glass, The Shepherds',  
 327.  
 Lot's Wife, 119, 318.  
 Love-gain, 111.  
 Love-saint, Mr., 311.  
 Love-the-flesh, Mrs., 208.  
 Luxurious, Lord, 104.  
 Lyar, Mr., 106.  
 Lydgate's *Minor Poems*, 369.  
 Malice, Mr., 106.  
 Man, The Valiant, 36, 224.  
 Man in the Iron Cage, 37, 224.  
*Man of his hands*, A, 331, 373.  
 Man with the Muck-rake, 224.  
 Mastiff, The, 212, 216.  
 Matthew falls sick, 258.  
 Mercy, 206.  
 Mercy married, 299.  
 Milton's *Samson*, 366.  
 Mnason, Mr., 310, 372.  
 Money-love, Mr., 111.  
 Monster from the woods, The,  
 315.  
 Morality, Village of, 20.  
 Moses, 78.  
*Most an end*, 282, 372.  
 Mount Caution, 133.  
 „ Charity, 325.  
 „ Innocent, 325.  
 „ Marvel, 324.  
 „ Sinai, 21, 29.  
 Much-afraid, Miss, 321, 351.  
 Nares's *Glossary*, 361, 372.  
 Narrow Way, The, 31.  
 No-good, Mr., 106.  
 No-heart, One, 241.  
*Nomenclator*, 366.  
 Not-right, Mr., 305.  
 Obstinate, 12.  
 Oldham's *Satires*, 368.  
 Old-man, Lord, 104.  
*Padding pace*, 273.  
 Parlour full of dust, 32, 361.  
 Passion and Patience, 33, 361.  
 Peace, The Chamber of, 58, 250,  
 363.  
*Pèlerinage de l'Homme*, viii.  
 Penitent, Mr., 311, 316.  
*Perspective Glass*, The, 135, 368.  
*Pickthank*, 103, 104, 366.  
 Picture on the Wall, The, 31,  
 220.  
*Piers Plowman*, 364.  
 Piety, 51, 252.  
*Pilgrim's Progress*—  
 Additions to first edition of,  
 vi., 365, 367.  
 Date of publication of, v.  
 Early editions of, x.  
 Foreign Versions of, xii., 187,  
 365.  
 Illustrations of, xi.

- Spurious Second Part of, vii.  
Where written and how, v., 1,  
359.
- Slash*, 218, 370.
- Pliable, 12, 14, 18, 28, 74.
- Pocket-map, Great-heart's, 338.
- Polycarp, 295.
- Ponder, Nathaniel, v., viii.
- Pragmatick, 330.
- Prejudice, 325.
- Presumption, 42, 240, 361.
- Profitable Meditations*, 364.
- Promise, The Key of, 130.
- Quag*, 68, 364.
- Quarles's *Emblems*, 373.
- Rabblement*, 105, 366.
- Rack't*, 39, 361.
- Ready-to-halt, Mr., 307, 350.
- Reliever, The, 220.
- Riddles, 299, 300.
- Righteousness, Justifying, 236.
- River, The bridgeless, 173, 286.
- River of life, The, 122, 318.
- Robin and spider, The, 228.
- Roll, Christian's, 47, 245.
- Romanus, 295.
- Root-of-heart*, 202, 370.
- Sackbut*, The, 287, 372.
- Sagacity, Mr., 196.
- Save-all, Mr., 111.
- Save-self, 167.
- Saved by Grace*, 360.
- Saywell of Prating-row, 85.
- Scrabble*, 139, 367.
- Secret, 201.
- Self-will, Mr., 289.
- Shadow of Death, Valley of the,  
67, 272.
- Shakspeare, 362, 366, 367, 371.
- Shame, 79, 308.
- Shepherds, The, 132, 323, 327,  
368.
- Shepherd-boy, The, 269.
- Shining Ones, The three, 41.  
,, The two, 175.
- Short-wind, 241.
- Significant rooms, The, 224.
- Silver mine, The, 117, 318.
- Simon the witch, 116, 367.
- Simple, 43, 240, 361.
- Sincere, 132, 327.
- Sincere, Town of, 138.
- Skill, Mr., 258.
- Sleepy-head, 241.
- Sloth, 42, 240, 361.
- Slothful's Friend, The, 338.
- Slow-pace, 241.
- Smooth-man, Mr., 109.
- Snares, The, 276.
- Snibbeth*, 140, 369.
- Société de Sorbonne, 365.
- South's *Sermons*, 370.
- Spanish Mines, The, 208.  
,, Row, 98.
- Spider, The, 225.
- Spring at the foot of the Hill,  
The, 45, 242.
- Stalking-horse*, 116, 367.
- Standfast, Mr., 341, 353.
- Stanley's Lectures, Dean, 363.
- Stationers' Registers, v.
- Stupidity, The town of, 280  
304.
- Sturbridge Fair, 365.
- Superstition, 103, 104.

- Swound*, 128, 368.  
 Take-heed, 276.  
 Talkative, 82.  
 Taste-that-which-is-good, 294.  
 Temporary, 167.  
 Time-server, Lord, 109.  
 Timorous, 47, 49, 204, 245.  
     ,, Mrs., 204, 231.  
 Too-bold, 339.  
 Trench's *Glossary*, 367.  
 Turn-about, Lord, 109.  
 Turn-away, 138.  
 Turn-back, 167.  
 Two-tongues, 109.  
 Uncertain, Town of, 303.  
 Vain-confidence, 123,  
 Vain-hope, 179.  
 Valiant-for-truth, 329, 352.  
 Vanity Fair, 97, 286, 310, 365.  
*Virginals*, 264, 371.  
*Wain and Pole, The*, 323, 373.  
 Wanton, Madam, 75, 208, 308.  
 Want-wit, 326.  
 Watchful the porter, 50, 248.  
 Watchful the shepherd, 132,  
     327.  
*Whistle, At their*, 144, 369.  
 White, Robert, vii.  
 Whitlock's *Zootomia*, 368.  
 Wicket-gate, The, 27, 202, 211,  
     283.  
 Wild-head, 330.  
*Witch*, 116, 367.  
*Wit's Recreations*, 372.  
 Women and Christ, 296.  
 Worldly-Wiseman, Mr., 18, 25.  
*Wot*, 21, 360.

THE END.









